

CORTINA METHOD

CONVERSATIONAL  
**ITALIAN**  
IN 20 LESSONS

***Cortina Method Books***

---

FRENCH IN 20 LESSONS  
SPANISH IN 20 LESSONS  
GERMAN IN 20 LESSONS  
ITALIAN IN 20 LESSONS  
AMERICAN ENGLISH IN 20 LESSONS  
MODERN GREEK IN 20 LESSONS  
RUSSIAN IN 20 LESSONS  
INGLÉS EN 20 LECCIONES  
FRANCÉS EN 20 LECCIONES  
INGLÊS EM 20 LIÇÕES  
CONVERSATIONAL BRAZILIAN PORTUGUESE  
CONVERSATIONAL JAPANESE  
SPANISH CONVERSATIONAL GUIDE  
SPANISH IN SPANISH  
FRANÇAIS EN FRANÇAIS  
ENGLISH IN ENGLISH  
DEUTSCH AUF DEUTSCH  
ITALIANO IN ITALIANO

**CORTINA METHOD**

**CONVERSATIONAL  
ITALIAN  
IN 20 LESSONS**

**ILLUSTRATED**

*Intended for self-study and for use in schools*

With a Simplified System of Phonetic Pronunciation

Based on the Method of

**R. DIEZ DE LA CORTINA**

UNIVERSITIES OF MADRID AND BORDEAUX

AUTHOR OF THE CORTINA METHOD

ORIGINATOR OF THE PHONOGRAPHIC METHOD OF  
TEACHING LANGUAGES.

By

**MICHAEL CAGNO**



*An Owl Book*

**HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY**

New York

**CORTINA LEARNING INTERNATIONAL, INC.**

*Publishers* • WESTPORT, CT 06880

**Copyright © 1954, 1977  
by Cortina Learning International, Inc.  
All Rights Reserved**

**This material is fully protected under the terms of the Universal Copyright Convention. It is specifically prohibited to reproduce this publication in any form whatsoever, including sound recording, photocopying, or by use of any other electronic reproducing, transmitting or retrieval system. Violators will be prosecuted to the full extent provided by law.**

### **Cataloging Information**

**Cortina Method Italian in 20 Lessons, intended for self-study and for use in schools; with a simplified system of phonetic pronunciation, by Michael Cagno, based on the method of R. Diez de la Cortina. New York, R. D. Cortina Co., 1977.**

**336 p. illus. 21 cm.**

**1. Italian language—Conversation and phrase books. 2. Italian language—Grammar. I. Title.**

**PC1112.5.C3 1977 458.242 54-14366**

**ISBN 0-8327-0005-3 (hardbound)**

**ISBN 0-8327-0013-4 (paperback)**

**Printed in the United States of America  
HH Editions 9 8 7 6 5 4**

**9610-5.0**

# Introduction

## *How a Knowledge of Italian Can Help You*

NOW AS NEVER BEFORE alert Americans and other English-speaking people are learning the Italian language, and there are many reasons for the revival of interest in this most melodious and expressive tongue.

Italian has always been the language of the arts—of poetry, fiction, opera. Many of the great masterpieces of world literature were written in Italian—Dante's epic *Divine Comedy*, Boccaccio's lusty *Decameron*, Machiavelli's study of government, *The Prince*, the lyrics of Petrarch, to mention only a few. In recent years also there has been a great deal of literary activity in Italy and the many fine works written by such authors as Ignazio Silone, Alberto Moravia, Giuseppe Berto, Carlo Levi, and others make fascinating reading. With a knowledge of Italian these great works, old and new, now become available to you in the full flavor of the original language.

The very word "opera" is almost synonymous with the Italian language. An understanding of Italian will add a new dimension of pleasure when you hear such great musical masterpieces as Verdi's *La Traviata*, *Il Trovatore*, *Rigoletto*, *La Forza del Destino*, Donizetti's *Lucia*, Leoncavallo's *Pagliacci*, Puccini's *La Boheme*, *Madame Butterfly*, and *Tosca*.

## **6 THE CORTINA METHOD**

Since World War II Italy has produced many great motion pictures which have been shown widely throughout the English-speaking world. Your understanding of Italian will enable you to enjoy to the fullest the fine nuances of the dialogue and the subtleties of character and humor instead of depending on the brief, often inadequate English subtitles.

Italy has always been a popular country with tourists, but now it is a "must" for anyone who visits Europe. Its great cities—Rome, Naples, Florence, and Milan—with their beautiful buildings, fascinating history, taste-tempting restaurants, and the enchanting countryside, make a visit to Italy a cherished memory. And when you visit Italy, you will find your knowledge of the native tongue a source of unending satisfaction and pleasure. You will be able to become more intimate with the Italian people, you will be welcomed as a cultured friend, not merely as a tourist. You will be invited into Italian homes. And you will find also that your knowledge of Italian saves you money when you deal with tradespeople, hotel keepers, ticket sellers, etc.

One should not forget also that Italy has become increasingly important as a commercial country. More and more people in the English-speaking countries are having business dealings with Italians. Italy now exports many products, including handicrafts, automobiles and machines, foods and wines, and, in turn, buys many products for import. Knowing how to deal with Italians in their native language is a decided advantage for businessmen and others who have commercial relations with Italy.

In short, your study of Italian will bring you many hours of pleasure in your cultural pursuits, and will also have numerous practical advantages.

# Preface

**IN 1882, THE CORTINA ACADEMY OF LANGUAGES** was founded in the United States by Count Cortina. Besides engaging professors for all the modern languages (French, Spanish, German, Italian, and English) Count Cortina himself, personally, gave language instruction for many years. From this actual teaching experience, Professor Cortina developed a new simplified method that became an instant success. It has never been surpassed since. For the past 70-odd years the method has been constantly refined and improved from the Academy's long experience in teaching languages, and in terms of the changing needs of the present-day language student. It is now known all over the world as **THE CORTINA METHOD**.

Because of the success of and the demand for Cortina instruction from students who could not attend classes, the Academy was forced to publish Cortina lessons in book form. Well over two million Cortina language books have been sold, and they are a clear testimonial to the ease with which students have learned a new language through **THE CORTINA METHOD**.

Many thousands of students have learned a new language by this method at home, in their spare time. Many others have used **THE CORTINA METHOD** in schools and colleges throughout the United States and South America.

You may ask: "What is the secret of **THE CORTINA METHOD**'s

## 8 THE CORTINA METHOD

success? How is it different from other ways to learn a language?" One of the main reasons is that the lessons are devoted to everyday topics which encourage the student to learn. The lessons begin with subjects that we all used as children when we learned our native tongue. For instance, right from the start, the first lessons teach you the same words that a child first speaks: *Mother, father, brother, sister*, as well as everyday words relating to meals, drinks, clothing, and so on. These words are easily put to use at once and are much more interesting than the abstract and academic words a student is usually asked to learn. Knowing that he can put these words to immediate use adds color and excitement to language study and keeps the interest of the student at a high level throughout his language-learning experience.

### Features of This New Edition

The Editors have included two new features in this edition which will also be found of great help to the student:

First, the format of the lessons has been changed to allow for the inclusion of carefully chosen illustrations. The drawings have been arranged to highlight the subject matter of the lessons and thus will greatly aid the student in memorizing the foreign words through the graphic representation.

Second, a complete REFERENCE GRAMMAR has been appended at the back of the book so that the student may refer to any part of speech he wishes as he advances in his studies. The necessary grammar for the lessons is included in the footnotes, lesson by lesson, for the student's convenience.

In addition, practical bi-lingual dictionaries have been included which contain not only all of the words of the twenty lessons but also many other useful words as well.



# How To Study

Language is habit. We are constantly expressing thoughts and ideas in speech, from habit, without paying any particular attention to the words, phrases, or idioms we use. When we say "*How do you do,*" "*It's fine today,*" "*I've had a wonderful trip,*" we do so spontaneously. We are merely repeating a speech pattern we have used so many times before that it has become automatic—a habit. Repetition, therefore, is the basis of language learning; and consequently it is extremely important that the student acquire the correct Italian pronunciation at the very beginning so that he learns the right speech habits.

For this purpose a basic feature of the CORTINA METHOD is the emphasis on *speaking* the language. At the outset we provide a GUIDE TO ITALIAN PRONUNCIATION. It explains how to pronounce Italian sounds, words, and phrases through simple phonetic symbols based on English spelling, with special explanations of how to articulate those sounds which occur only in the Italian language. In Lessons 1-16 the entire Italian vocabularies and conversations are transcribed in these symbols. Using them as a guide, the student will be able to read each entire lesson aloud, and he should do so as many times as necessary to be able to read the Italian text aloud easily and correctly. Through this practice, not only will the student attain fluency, but he will eventually be able to express his ideas in Italian just as easily and effortlessly as he does in English.

**LESSON ARRANGEMENT.** The lessons are arranged so that the student can follow them easily. For each of the first sixteen lessons there is (a) a vocabulary of important words of a general character, (b) a specific vocabulary covering the topic of the lesson, and (c) dialogues showing how these vocabularies are used in everyday conversation. To the right of each word or sentence is given the phonetic spelling so that the student can pronounce them correctly, and in the next column is given the English translation of the Italian text.

The student should start each lesson by memorizing as much of the general vocabulary as possible. Then, in turning to the conversation that follows, he will complete his mastery of these words by actually using them *to express ideas*. The conversational sentences should be read, making general reference to the translation of each sentence. *Learn* the thoughts that the Italian sentence conveys

rather than a word-for-word translation. The lesson has been mastered when the student can read the lesson aloud without reference to either the PRONUNCIATION or TRANSLATION columns.

The best way to express your thoughts in your new language is to try to use the basic speech patterns illustrated by the sentences of the lessons with a few variations as, for example, substituting one verbal form for another, and one noun for another, etc. Try also to imagine true-to-life situations and the way you would react to them conversationally, but don't try to learn too many basic speech patterns at once. Try to digest and master a few at a time.

Don't be afraid of making mistakes! It is only natural to make errors in spelling and grammar when you write down your translations. Your mistakes are really of great value to you, because they reveal your weak spots. Then you can eliminate them by consulting the grammar section and, of course, the spelling in the book. In this way, you see that when you are in doubt, it is actually of greater benefit to you to *guess wrong* than to *guess right*—because in the latter case you may not know *why* your solution is correct.

As you proceed from lesson to lesson, don't neglect to review, review, *and review again* the material of the previous lessons. Constant review and repetition will not only help you to retain what you have learned, but will also give you an ever firmer grasp of the language, enabling you at the end to use it spontaneously.

The last four lessons differ in form. On the assumption that the student has mastered the basic elements of Italian, they consist of dialogues (with footnotes) centering around topics of cultural, historical, and practical interest. All the words used are given in the ITALIAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY in the back of the book.

The grammatical explanations in the FOOTNOTES are of great importance to the student and close attention should be paid to them. They also clear up many of the idiomatic difficulties and are very helpful because they give other illustrations of the language in actual use. For more elaborate grammatical explanation of any particular lesson the student can refer to the PLAN FOR STUDY which precedes the complete REFERENCE GRAMMAR.

Remember that there is no better way to learn a language than the way children learn—by speaking it. The CORTINA METHOD is based upon this principle with necessary modifications to adjust this natural method to the adult mind. With a little application you will have a lot of fun learning this way. What a satisfaction it will be to have *this important second language* at your command!

# Table of Contents

	<b>PAGE</b>
Introduction	5
Preface	7
How to Study	9
Guide to Italian Pronunciation	19

## Vocabularies and Conversations

<b>FIRST LESSON</b>	<b><i>The Family • Nationalities • Languages</i></b>	
	Vocabularies	26
	Conversation	28
<b>SECOND LESSON</b>	<b><i>Foods and Meals</i></b>	
	Vocabularies	34
	Conversation	36
<b>THIRD LESSON</b>	<b><i>Clothing and Footwear</i></b>	
	Vocabularies	42
	Conversation	44

## 12 THE CORTINA METHOD

	PAGE
<b>FOURTH LESSON</b> <i>Means of Transportation</i>	
Vocabularies	50
Conversation	52
<b>FIFTH LESSON</b> <i>Numbers • Fractions • Counting</i>	
Vocabularies	58
Conversation	60
<b>SIXTH LESSON</b> <i>Days • Months • Seasons</i>	
Vocabularies	64
Conversation	66
<b>SEVENTH LESSON</b> <i>Telling Time: The Watch • The Time</i>	
Vocabularies	72
Conversation	74
<b>EIGHTH LESSON</b> <i>About Business</i>	
Vocabularies	80
Conversation	82
<b>NINTH LESSON</b> <i>At the Restaurant</i>	
Vocabularies	88
Conversation	90
<b>TENTH LESSON</b> <i>The House and Furniture</i>	
Vocabularies	96
Conversation	98
<b>ELEVENTH LESSON</b> <i>About the Weather</i>	
Vocabularies	104
Conversation	106

		PAGE
<b>TWELFTH LESSON</b>	<b><i>The Tailor • The Dressmaker • Fashion</i></b>	
	Vocabularies	112
	Conversation	114
<b>THIRTEENTH LESSON</b>	<b><i>The City</i></b>	
	Vocabularies	120
	Conversation	122
<b>FOURTEENTH LESSON</b>	<b><i>A Visit to the Doctor</i></b>	
	Vocabularies	128
	Conversation	130
<b>FIFTEENTH LESSON</b>	<b><i>Renting a Room • Toilet Articles</i></b>	
	Vocabularies	136
	Conversation	138
<b>SIXTEENTH LESSON</b>	<b><i>Commercial Relations</i></b>	
	Vocabularies	144
	Conversation	146

### Dialogues

<b>SEVENTEENTH LESSON</b>	<b><i>In the Home of Friends in Naples</i></b>	152
<b>EIGHTEENTH LESSON</b>	<b><i>In Rome, the Eternal City</i></b>	162
<b>NINETEENTH LESSON</b>	<b><i>Florence, the Cradle of the Arts</i></b>	172
<b>TWENTIETH LESSON</b>	<b><i>Traveling in Northern Italy</i></b>	182

## REFERENCE GRAMMAR

	<b>PAGE</b>
Plan for Study	192
Analytical Table of Contents	194

### THE ARTICLE

*§1 The Definite Article	199
§2 Special Uses of the Definite Article	200
§3 Omission of the Definite Article	201
§4 The Indefinite Article	202
§5 Omission of the Indefinite Article	203
§6 The Contractions	203

### THE NOUN

§7 The Gender of Nouns	204
§8 The Plural of Nouns	207
§9 Augmentatives and Diminutives	211

### THE ADJECTIVE

§10 Classes and Forms of the Adjective	212
§11 Position of Adjectives	213

\* § is the symbol for paragraph.

	PAGE
§12 Plural of Adjectives	214
§13 Demonstrative Adjectives	214
§14 Indefinite Adjectives	215
§15 Interrogative Adjectives	215
§16 The Possessive Adjectives	216
§17 Comparison of Adjectives	219
§18 Some Irregular Adjectives	223

### THE PRONOUN

§19 Personal Subject Pronouns	224
§20 Direct Object Pronouns	225
§21 Indirect Object Pronouns	226
§22 Disjunctive Pronouns	227
§23 Interrogative Pronouns	228
§24 Relative Pronouns	229
§25 Demonstrative Pronouns	231
§26 Indefinite Pronouns	231
§27 Possessive Pronouns	232
§28 Reflexive Pronouns	232
§29 The Double Pronouns	233

### THE ADVERB

§30 Classes of Adverbs	234
§31 Formation of Adverbs	236
§32 Comparison of Adverbs	236

### THE PREPOSITION

§33 The Preposition <i>a</i>	237
§34 The Preposition <i>da</i>	239
§35 The Preposition <i>di</i>	241

## 16 THE CORTINA METHOD

	<b>PAGE</b>
§36 Other Common Prepositions	<b>243</b>
§37 Repetition of Prepositions	<b>244</b>

### THE CONJUNCTION

§38 Coordinating Conjunctions	<b>244</b>
§39 Subordinating Conjunctions	<b>245</b>

### THE INTERJECTION

§40 Some Common Interjections	<b>245</b>
-------------------------------	------------

### THE VERB

§41 The Transitive Verbs	<b>246</b>
§42 The Intransitive Verbs	<b>246</b>
§43 The Infinitive	<b>247</b>
§44 The Gerund	<b>249</b>
§45 The Participle	<b>249</b>
§46 The Conjugation of Verbs	<b>251</b>
§47 Conjugation of the Verbs <i>Essere</i> and <i>Avere</i>	<b>251</b>
§48 The First Conjugation	<b>256</b>
§49 The Second Conjugation	<b>259</b>
§50 The Third Conjugation	<b>261</b>
§51 Verbs with the Auxiliary <i>Essere</i>	<b>264</b>
§52 The Reflexive Verbs	<b>266</b>
§53 Impersonal Verbs	<b>268</b>
§54 The Present Indicative Tense	<b>269</b>
§55 The Present Perfect Tense	<b>269</b>
§56 The Past Definite Tense	<b>270</b>
§57 The Past Anterior Tense	<b>271</b>
§58 The Imperfect Indicative Tense	<b>271</b>
§59 The Pluperfect Indicative Tense	<b>272</b>



	<b>PAGE</b>
<b>§60 The Future Tense</b>	<b>272</b>
<b>§61 The Future Perfect Tense</b>	<b>274</b>
<b>§62 The Present Conditional Tense</b>	<b>275</b>
<b>§63 The Past Conditional Tense</b>	<b>275</b>
<b>§64 The Imperative Mood</b>	<b>276</b>
<b>§65 The Subjunctive Mood</b>	<b>277</b>
<b>§66 Servile Verbs</b>	<b>282</b>
<b>List of Irregular Verbs</b>	<b>284</b>
<b>List of Common Italian Proverbs</b>	<b>293</b>
<b>Some Common Idioms</b>	<b>296</b>

## **Dictionaries**

<b>Italian-English Dictionary</b>	<b>299</b>
<b>English-Italian Dictionary</b>	<b>320</b>

# GUIDE TO Italian Pronunciation

**ITALIAN SPELLING IS highly phonetic; that is, letters and combinations of letters almost always represent the same sounds, as contrasted with English, where a single letter or combination of letters may represent three, four, or more sounds. For the student of Italian the phonetic character of Italian spelling means that he need merely familiarize himself with the basic sounds which the spellings stand for. From there he can proceed to pronounce almost any Italian word correctly.**

In this book we use a simplified scheme of indicating the pronunciation of Italian letters and letter combinations. This is based on common English sounds wherever possible. The sounds in the following list should be learned first before proceeding to the lessons themselves. Syllable divisions are indicated by a hyphen (-) and accented syllables are printed in small capitals; thus, in the word *stanza*, meaning "room," the stress would fall on the first syllable, as indicated in "STAHN-tsah."

## The Vowels

Vowels in Italian are pronounced fully and distinctly, and are never slurred.

ITALIAN SPELLING	SOUND	ITALIAN EXAMPLE	PHONETIC SYMBOL
a	Like the <i>a</i> in <i>far</i> .	scala (SKAH-lah) stairs	ah
e	Like the <i>e</i> in <i>let</i> , but slightly towards the <i>a</i> of <i>ate</i> .	pera (PEH-rah) pear	eh

## 20 THE CORTINA METHOD

ITALIAN SPELLING	SOUND	ITALIAN EXAMPLE	PHONETIC SYMBOL
i	Like the <i>i</i> of <i>machine</i> .	amico (ah-MEE-koh) friend	ee
o	Like the <i>o</i> of <i>fort</i> .	porto (POHR-toh) port	oh
u	Like the <i>oo</i> in <i>fool</i> .	muto (MOO-toh) mute	oo

### The Consonants

<b>b</b>	As in English.	basta (BAH-stah) enough	<b>b</b>
<b>c</b>	1. Before <i>a</i> , <i>o</i> , and <i>u</i> , hard, like <i>k</i> , as in <i>cat</i> .	cane (KAH-neh) dog	<b>k</b>
	2. Before <i>e</i> and <i>i</i> , soft, like <i>ch</i> , as in <i>chin</i> .	cena (CHEH-nah) supper	<b>ch</b>
<b>ch</b>	Occurs only before <i>e</i> or <i>i</i> , to harden the <i>c</i> into a <i>k</i> sound.	anche (AHN-keh) also	<b>k</b>
	NOTE: When <i>chi</i> is followed by a vowel, the <i>i</i> is pronounced like a very light <i>y</i> , as in <i>cute</i> , <i>cure</i> .	chiave (KYAH-veh) key	<b>ky</b>
<b>d</b>	As in English, but with the tongue touching the upper teeth.	dove (DOH-veh) where	<b>d</b>
<b>f</b>	As in English.	fine (FEE-neh) end	<b>f</b>
<b>g</b>	1. Before <i>a</i> , <i>o</i> , and <i>u</i> , hard, as in <i>game</i> , <i>go</i> .	gamba (GAHM-bah) leg	<b>g</b>
	2. Before <i>e</i> and <i>i</i> , soft, as in <i>gentle</i> , <i>gem</i> .	gelo (JEH-loh) frost	<b>j</b>
<b>gh</b>	Occurs only before <i>e</i> and <i>i</i> , to harden the <i>g</i> .	righe (REE-geh) rulers	<b>g</b>
	NOTE: When <i>ghi</i> is followed by a vowel, the <i>i</i> is pronounced like a very light <i>y</i> .	ghiotto (GYOHT-toh) glutton	<b>gy</b>
<b>gl</b>	Usually pronounced like the <i>lli</i> in <i>billion</i> before <i>i</i> .	moglie (MOH-l'yeh) wife	<b>l'y</b>
	NOTE: In a very few words, <i>gli</i> has the same sound as in the English word <i>glib</i> .	glicerina (glee-cheh-REE-nah) glicerine negligente (neh-glee-JEHN-teh) negligent	<b>gl</b>
<b>gn</b>	Similar to, but stronger than the <i>ni</i> in <i>onion</i> and the <i>ny</i> in <i>canyon</i> .	agnello (ah-N'VEHL-loh) lamb	<b>n'y</b>

ITALIAN SPELLING	SOUND	ITALIAN EXAMPLE	PHONETIC SYMBOL
<b>h</b>	Always silent. It occurs in very few words.	<b>hanno</b> (AHN-noh) they have	—
<b>[j]</b>	Does not exist in the Italian alphabet.		
<b>[k]</b>	Does not exist in the Italian alphabet.		
<b>l</b>	As in English.	<b>mela</b> (MEH-lah) apple	<b>l</b>
<b>m</b>	As in English.	<b>mano</b> (MAH-noh) hand	<b>m</b>
<b>n</b>	As in English.	<b>naso</b> (NAH-soh) nose	<b>n</b>
<b>p</b>	As in English.	<b>pane</b> (PAH-neh) bread	<b>p</b>
<b>qu</b>	Like <i>qu</i> in <i>quality, quick</i> .	<b>quindi</b> (KWEEN-dee) there-fore	<b>kw</b>
<b>r</b>	Trilled by vibrating the tongue slightly against the base of the upper front teeth.	<b>Roma</b> (ROH-mah) Rome	<b>r</b>
<b>s</b>	1. Unvoiced, as in <i>sound</i> . 2. Voiced, as in <i>pose</i> . NOTE A: Many Italians pronounce this sound not quite as a pure <i>s</i> , but with a slight leaning toward the unvoiced <i>s</i> . NOTE B: At the beginning of a word, when <i>s</i> is followed by <i>b, d, g, gh, l, m, n, r, or v</i> , it is pronounced like <i>z</i> .	<b>solo</b> (SOH-loh) alone <b>casa</b> (KAH-zah) house	<b>s</b> <b>z</b>
<b>sc</b>	1. Before <i>e</i> or <i>i</i> , like <i>sh</i> , as in <i>shell</i> . 2. Before <i>a, o, u</i> , and <i>h</i> , like <i>sk</i> , as in <i>skill</i> .	<b>scelta</b> (SHEHL-tah) choice <b>scala</b> (SKAH-lah) stairs	<b>sh</b> <b>sk</b>
<b>t</b>	As in English, but with the tip of the tongue touching the upper teeth.	<b>tale</b> (TAH-leh) such	<b>t</b>
<b>v</b>	As in English.	<b>voto</b> (VOH-toh) vote	<b>v</b>
<b>[w]</b>	Does not exist in the Italian alphabet.		
<b>x</b>	Like the <i>x</i> in <i>box</i> . Rarely used, chiefly in words of Latin and Greek origin.		<b>ks</b>

## 22 THE CORTINA METHOD

ITALIAN SPELLING	SOUND	ITALIAN EXAMPLE	PHONETIC SYMBOL
[y]	Does not exist in the Italian alphabet.		
z	1. Unvoiced, like the <i>ts</i> in <i>pots</i> . 2. Voiced, like the <i>ds</i> in <i>buds</i> .	stanza (STAHN-tzah) room pranzo (PRAHN-dzoh) dinner	ts dz

### Diphthongs

A diphthong is a combination of two vowels pronounced as one syllable. There are three classes of diphthongs in Italian:

A. Those in which the first of the two vowels is stressed. We shall separate the two vowels by an apostrophe as a reminder that they are to be pronounced in one breath, without a break, even though the sound of the first vowel is stronger than the second:

ai	Similar to the <i>i</i> of <i>high</i> .	parlai (PAHR-LAH'y) I spoke	AH'y
ao	Say "ah" and elide it to an "oh" sound.	Paolo (PAH'oh-loh) Paul	AH'oh
au	Similar to the "ow" of <i>cow</i> .	cauto (KAH'oo-toh) cautious	AH'oo
ea	No English equivalent. A combination of <i>eh</i> and <i>ah</i> .	idea (ee-DEH'ah) idea	EH'ah
ei	Like the <i>ay</i> in <i>day</i> .	lei (LAY) you	AY
eo	No English equivalent. A combination of <i>eh</i> and <i>oh</i> .	ebreo (eh-BREH'oh) Hebrew	EH'oh
eu	No English equivalent. A combination of <i>eh</i> and long <i>oo</i> .	neutro (NEH'oo-troh) neuter	EH'oo
ia	No English equivalent. A combination of <i>ee</i> and <i>ah</i> .	mia (MEE'ah) my	EE'ah
ie	No English equivalent. A combination of <i>ee</i> and <i>eh</i> .	bugie (boo-JEE'eh) lies	EE'eh
ii	No English equivalent. Like a drawn-out <i>ee</i> sound.	finii (fee-NEE'y) I finished	EE'y
io	No English equivalent. A combination of <i>ee</i> and <i>oh</i> .	Dio (DEE'oh) God	EE'oh

ITALIAN SPELLING	SOUND	ITALIAN EXAMPLE	PHONETIC SYMBOL
oe	No English equivalent. A combination of <i>oh</i> and <i>eh</i> .	eroe (eh-ROH'eh) hero	OH'eh
oi	Similar to the <i>oy</i> of <i>boy</i> .	noi (NOY) we	OY
ua	No English equivalent. A combination of long <i>oo</i> and <i>ah</i> .	sua (SOO'ah) his, her	OO'ah
ue	No English equivalent. A combination of long <i>oo</i> and <i>eh</i> .	due (DOO'eh) two	OO'eh
ui	Similar to the <i>ewy</i> of <i>chewy</i> , but without the "w" sound.	fui (FOO'y) I was	OO'y
uo	No English equivalent. A combination of long <i>oo</i> and <i>oh</i> .	duo (DOO'oh) duet	OO'oh

B. Those diphthongs in which the first of the individual vowel sounds is made part of the second, which gets the major part of the sound:

ia	No English equivalent. A combination of initial <i>y</i> and <i>ah</i> .	piatto (PYAHT-toh) dish	YAH
ie	Similar to the <i>ye</i> of <i>yet</i> , but more extended.	ieri (YEH-ree) yesterday	YEH
io	Similar to the <i>yo</i> of <i>yodel</i> .	biondo (BYOHN-doh) blonde	YOH
iu	Similar to <i>you</i> .	fiume (FYOO-meh) river	YOO
ua	Like the <i>wa</i> of <i>swallow</i> .	guanti (GWAHN-tee) gloves	WAH
ue	Like the <i>ue</i> of <i>quell</i> .	questo (KWEH-stoh) this	WEH
ui	Like the <i>uee</i> of <i>queen</i> .	quindici (KWEEN-dee-chee) fifteen	WEE
uo	Like the <i>uo</i> of <i>quote</i> .	uomo (WOH-moh) man	WOH

C. Those diphthongs in which neither vowel sound is stressed. These appear in unaccented syllables. They are indicated as in B above, but in lower case letters. Examples:

- sedia (seh-dyah) chair
- vietato (vych-TAH-toh) forbidden
- quindicina (kween-dee-CHEE-nah) fortnight

## 24 THE CORTINA METHOD

We shall not consider *ia*, *io*, and *iu* as diphthongs when they are preceded by *c* or *g* inasmuch as the *i* is used to give the letters *c* and *g* a soft sound, as explained above.

### Triphthongs

A triphthong is a combination of three vowels pronounced as one syllable.

<b>iei</b>	A combination of initial <i>y</i> and <i>ay</i> .	<b>miei</b> (M'YAY) my	<b>'YAY</b>
<b>uoi</b>	A combination of <i>w</i> and <i>oy</i> .	<b>tuoi</b> (TWOY) your	<b>WOY</b>

### Double Consonants

Double consonants in Italian have a stronger sound than single consonants. In our phonetic transcription, the first of the double consonants is written at the end of the preceding syllable. Examples:

<b>penna</b> (PEH-nah) pain;	<b>penna</b> (PEHN-nah) pen
<b>caro</b> (KAH-roh) dear;	<b>carro</b> (KAHR-toh) car, cart

A double *c* before *e* or *i* is pronounced like the *tch* in *watch*. A double *g* before *e* or *i* is pronounced like the *dg* in *budge*. In the phonetic system this sound is represented by *dj*. A double *z* is not indicated. The symbol for the single *z* is used.

### Accent

In Italian the accented syllable is usually the next to the last one, called the penult:

<b>tesoro</b> (teh-ZOH-roh) treasure
<b>trovare</b> (troh-VAH-reh) to find

However, there are many words which do not follow this rule. Some words are accented on the final syllable, in which case they usually take a grave accent ( ` ) on the vowel of that syllable:

<b>facoltà</b> (fah-kohl-TAH)	<b>pietà</b> (pyeh-TAH) pity
-------------------------------	------------------------------

This accent mark is also used to distinguish between words of similar spelling but different meaning:

<b>te</b> you; <b>tè</b> tea	<b>la</b> the; <b>là</b> there
<b>ancora</b> (ahn-KOH-rah) yet;	<b>àncora</b> (AHN-koh-rah) anchor

Keep in mind that the stressed syllable in Italian has a longer and louder (almost explosive) sound than the others.

**ITALIAN IN 20 LESSONS**



**Vocabularies and  
Conversations**






# Prima Lezione

FIRST LESSON (PREE-mah leh-TSYOH-neh)

## Vocabolario per Questa Lezione VOCABULARY FOR THIS LESSON (voh-kah-boh-LAH-ryoh pehr KWE-stah leh-TSYOH-neh)

io desidero <sup>1</sup> (EE'oh deh-ZEE-deh-roh)	I desire, I wish
desidera lei? (deh-ZEE-deh-rah LAY)	do you want, do you wish?
egli desidera (EH-l'yee deh-ZEE-deh-rah)	he wants, he wishes
molto (MOHL-toh)	much, a great deal, very
perfettamente (pehr-feht-tah-MEHN-teh)	perfectly
un'automobile (oon-ah'oo-toh-MOH-bee-leh)	an automobile
domani (doh-MAH-nee) tomorrow	partire (pah-TEE-reh) to leave
solo (SOH-loh) alone	presto (PREH-stoh) soon, early
con (kohn) with	soltanto (sohl-TAHN-toh) only
ma (mah) but	o (oh) or
anche (AHN-keh) also	bene (BEH-neh) well
un <sup>2</sup> aeroplano (oon ah'eh-roh-PLAH-noh) an airplane	
un viaggio (oon vee-AH-djoh) a trip	
un piroscafo (oon pee-ROH-skah-foh) a boat	
un po' <sup>3</sup> (oon POH) a little, some	
prende lei? (PREHN-deh LAY) do you take?	
io prendo (EE'oh PREHN-doh) I take	
gli <sup>4</sup> affari <sup>5</sup> (l'yee ahf-FAH-ree) business	
il <sup>4</sup> treno (eel Treh-noh) the train	
interessante (een-teh-rehs-SAHN-teh) interesting	
parlarlo <sup>6</sup> (pah-RAHR-loh) to speak it	
la mattina (lah maht-TEE-nah) the morning	
imparare (eem-pah-RAH-reh) to learn	
abitare (ah-bee-TAH-reh) to live, to dwell	
il mio <sup>7</sup> (eel MEE'oh) my, mine	dove (DOH-veh) where
la mia (lah MEE'ah) my, mine	dov'è? (doh-VEH) where is?
il suo <sup>8</sup> (eel soo'oh) your, his, her	chi (kee) who
la sua (lah soo'ah) your, his, her	andare <sup>9</sup> (ahn-DAH-reh) to go
perchè (pehr-KEH) because	che (keh) that, which
perchè? (pehr-KEH) why?	quando (KWAHN-doh) when

(lah fah-MEE-l'yah) **LA FAMIGLIA**

**THE FAMILY**

<b>l' uomo</b> (LWOH-moh)	the man
<b>uomini</b> (WOH-mee-nee)	men
<b>la donna</b> (lah DOHN-nah)	woman
<b>il marito</b> (eel mah REE-toh)	husband
<b>la moglie</b> (lah MOH-l'yeh)	wife
<b>il padre</b> (eel PAH-dreh)	father
<b>la madre</b> (lah MAH-dreh)	mother
<b>il figlio</b> (eel FEE-l'yoh)	son
<b>il fratello</b> (eel frah-TEHL-loh)	brother
<b>la sorella</b> (lah soh-REHL-lah)	sister
<b>il cognato</b> (eel koh-N'YAH-toh)	brother-in-law
<b>la cognata</b> (lah koh-N'YAH-tah)	sister-in-law
<b>un bambino</b> (oon bahm-BEE-noh)	a child (m.)
<b>una bambina</b> (oo-nah bahm-BEE-nah)	a child (f.)
<b>un ragazzo</b> (oon rah-GAH-tsoh)	a boy
<b>una ragazza</b> (oo-nah rah-GAH-tsah)	a girl
<b>un ragazzino</b> <sup>10</sup> (oon rah-gah-TSEE-noh)	a little boy
<b>una ragazzina</b> (oo-nah rah-gah-TSEE-nah)	a little girl

<b>signor</b> (see-N'YOHR)	mister
<b>signore</b> (see-N'YOH-reh)	sir, gentleman
<b>signori</b> (see-N'YOH-reeh)	gentlemen



**Le Nazionalità e Le Lingue • Nationalities and Languages**  
(leh nah-tsyoh-nah-lee-TAH eh leh LEEN-gweh)

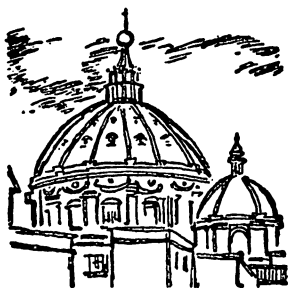
NAZIONALITA	PAESE (country)	LINGUA
<b>un italiano</b> (ee-tah-LYAH-noh)	<b>Italia</b> (ee-TAH-lyah)	<b>l'italiano</b>
an Italian	Italy	Italian
<b>un inglese</b> (een-GLEH-zeh)	<b>Inghilterra</b> (een-gil-TEH-rah)	<b>l'inglese</b>
an Englishman	England	English
<b>un francese</b> (frahN-CHEH-zeh)	<b>Francia</b> (FRAHN-chah)	<b>il francese</b>
a Frenchman	France	French
<b>un tedesco</b> (teh-DEH-skoh)	<b>Germania</b> (jer-MAHN-yah)	<b>il tedesco</b>
a German	Germany	German
<b>uno spagnuolo</b> (spah-N'YWOH-loh)	<b>Spagna</b> (SPAH-n'yah)	<b>lo spagnuolo</b>
a Spaniard	Spain	Spanish
<b>un belga</b> (BEHL-gah)	<b>Belgio</b> (BEHL-joh)	
a Belgian	Belgium	
<b>un russo</b> (ROOS-soh)	<b>Russia</b> (ROO-s'yah)	<b>il russo</b>
a Russian	Russia	Russian
<b>un americano</b> (ah-meh-ree-KAH-noh)	<b>America</b> (ah-MEH-ree-kah)	<b>l'inglese</b>
an American	America	English

## CONVERSATION

- 1 Io desidero . . .
- 2 Che desidera,<sup>12</sup> signore?
- 3 Io desidero parlare<sup>13</sup> italiano.
- 4 Chi desidera parlare italiano?
- 5 Egli desidera parlare italiano.



- 6 Lei<sup>15</sup> desidera parlare la lingua inglese?
- 7 Sì, signore, io desidero parlarla.<sup>14</sup>
- 8 Parla lei francese?<sup>16</sup>
- 9 Io parlo italiano e anche francese.
- 10 Desidera lei parlarmi<sup>17</sup> in italiano?



- 11 Io desidero molto parlarle,<sup>18</sup> ma io non<sup>19</sup> parlo italiano molto bene.
- 12 Lei parla inglese perfettamente.
- 13 No, signore, io lo<sup>20</sup> parlo un po' soltanto.

- 14 Perché desidera imparare l'italiano lei?<sup>15</sup>
- 15 Perché io desidero abitare in Italia.

---

FOOTNOTES: 1. The infinitive of this verb is *desiderare*, a regular verb of the first conjugation. All first conjugation verbs end in *-are*. Here is the complete present tense: *io* (I) *desidero*; *tu* (you, familiar) *desideri*; *lei* (you, polite), *egli* (he), *ella* (she) *desidera*; *noi* (we) *desideriamo*; *voi* (you, familiar plural) *desiderate*; *loro* (you, polite plural), *essi* (they, masculine plural), *esse* (they, feminine plural) *desiderano*. There is only one form of the present in Italian. Thus, *io desidero* means "I wish," "I am wishing," "I do wish." 2. *Un* (a, an) is one of the indefinite articles. The other indefinite articles are: *una, un'* (fem.); *uno* (masc.), before a singular noun beginning with *z* or *s-impura* (*s* followed by a consonant); *dei* (some, masc. pl.); *delle* (some, fem. pl.); *degli* (some, masc. pl.) before nouns beginning with *z, s'impura*, or a vowel. 3. *Un po'* becomes *un po' di* when

## PRONUNCIATION

## TRANSLATION

1 EE'oh deh-ZEE-deh-roh . . .	I wish . . .
2 keh deh-ZEE-deh-rah, see-N'YOH-reh?	What do you wish, sir?
3 EE'oh deh-ZEE-deh-roh pahR-LAH-reh ee-tah-LYAH-noh.	I wish to speak Italian.
4 KEE deh-ZEE-deh-rah pahR-LAH-reh ee-tah-LYAH-noh?	Who wishes to speak Italian?
5 EH-l'yee deh-ZEE-deh-rah pahR-LAH-reh ee-tah-LYAH-noh.	He wishes to speak Italian.
6 LAY deh-ZEE-deh-rah pahR-LAH-reh lah LEEN-gwah een-GLEH-zeh?	Do you wish to speak the English language?
7 SEE, see-N'YOH-reh, EE'oh deh-ZEE-deh-roh pahR-LAHR-lah.	Yes, sir, I wish to speak it.
8 PAHR-lah LAY frahn-CHEH-zeh?	Do you speak French?
9 EE'oh PAHR-loh ee-tah-LYAH-noh eh AHN-keh frahn-CHEH-zeh.	I speak Italian and French also.
10 deh-ZEE-deh-rah LAY pahR-LAHR-mee een ee-tah-LYAH-noh?	Do you wish to speak to me in Italian?
11 EE'oh deh-ZEE-deh-roh MOHL-toh pahR-LAHR-leh, mah EE'oh nohn PAHR-loh ee-tah-LYAH-noh MOHL-toh BEH-neh.	I want very much to speak to you, but I don't speak Italian very well.
12 lay PAHR-lah een-GLEH-zeh pehr-feht-tah-MEHN-teh.	You speak English perfectly.
13 NOH, see-N'YOH-reh, EE'oh loh PAHR-lo oon POH sohl-TAHN-toh.	No, sir, I speak it only a little.
14 pehr-KEH deh-ZEE-deh-rah eem-pah-RAH-reh lee-tah-LYAH-noh lay?	Why do you wish to learn Italian?
15 pehr-KEH EE'oh deh-ZEE-deh-roh ah-bee-TAH-reh een ee-TAH-lyah.	Because I wish to live in Italy.

followed by a noun. 4. The definite article "the" has several forms in Italian: *il* (masc.); *la* (fem.); *l'* (before a masc. or fem. noun beginning with a vowel); *lo* (before a masc. noun beginning with *z* or *s-impura*); *i* (masc. pl.); *le* (fem. pl.); *gli* (masc. pl. before *z*, *s-impura*, or a vowel). 5. Note that "business" in Italian is plural. 6. *Parlarlo* is a combination of *parlare* and *lo*. *Lo* is a direct object pronoun meaning "it" and is attached to the infinitive, which drops the final *e*. All other direct and indirect object pronouns, except *loro*, are likewise attached to the infinitive. See also Note 20. 7. Notice that in Italian the words for "my" (*il mio*, *la mia*, *i miei*, *le mie*) are preceded by the definite article. However, *il* and *la* are omitted if the words *mio* or *mia* are used before a noun denoting a relative or a member of the family. Ex.: *mio padre*, *mia zia*, *mio figlio*. 8. The possessive

- 16 Abita negli<sup>21</sup> Stati Uniti la sua famiglia?  
 17 No, signore, la mia famiglia abita nel<sup>22</sup> Canada.  
 18 Dove abita sua sorella?  
 19 Mia sorella e mio fratello abitano nel<sup>23</sup> Belgio.  
 20 È italiana sua moglie?



- 21 No, signore, mia moglie è francese.<sup>24</sup>  
 22 È italiano suo figlio?  
 23 Sì, signore, mio figlio è italiano.  
 24 Chi è italiano?  
 25 Mio cugino è italiano.

- 26 Desidera andare in Italia?<sup>25</sup>  
 27 No, egli desidera andare negli Stati Uniti.  
 28 Prende<sup>24</sup> il treno per<sup>25</sup> andare in Francia?  
 29 No, per andare in Francia io prendo il piroscafo o l'aeroplano.  
 30 Desidera fare un viaggio<sup>26</sup> in automobile suo padre?

adjectives *il suo, la sua, i suoi, le sue* mean "your, his, her." The possessive adjective always agrees with the "thing" possessed. The definite articles *il* and *la* are omitted as explained in Note 7. 9. *Andare* is an irregular verb and is not conjugated like *desiderare*. Its present tense is *io vado; tu vai; lei, egli, ella va; noi andiamo; voi andate; loro, essi, esse vanno*. 10. The suffixes *-ino* and *-ina* are often used in Italian to denote smallness and grace. 11. Nouns and adjectives denoting nationality or language are not capitalized in Italian. Nouns of countries are, however, capitalized. 12. The word *lei* is omitted because the word *signore* makes the meaning clear. 13. *Parlare* alone means "to speak;" therefore no preposition is needed before it. 14. In questions, the subject (noun or pronoun) may be placed immediately after the verb or at the end of the sen-

- 16 AH-bee-tah NEH-l'yee STAH-tee OO-NEE-tee lah soo'ah fah-MEE-l'yah? Does your family live in the United States?
- 17 NOH, see-N'YOH-reh, lah MEE'ah fah-MEE-l'yah AH-bee-tah nehl cah-nah-DAH. No, sir, my family lives in Canada.
- 18 DOH-veh AH-bee-tah soo'ah soh-REHL-lah? Where does your sister live?
- 19 MEE'ah soh-REHL-lah eh MEE'oh frah-TEHL-loh AH-bee-tah-noh nehl BEHL-joh. My sister and my brother live in Belgium.
- 20 EH ee-tah-LYAH-nah soo'ah MOH-l'yeh? Is your wife Italian?
- 21 NOH, see-N'YOH-reh, MEE'ah MOH-l'yeh EH frahn-CHEH-zeh. No, sir, my wife is French.
- 22 EH ee-tah-LYAH-noh soo'oh FEE-l'yoh? Is your son Italian?
- 23 SEE, see-N'YOH-reh, MEE'oh FEE-l'yoh EH ee-tah-LYAH-noh. Yes, sir, my son is Italian.
- 24 kee EH ee-tah-LYAH-noh? Who is Italian?
- 25 MEE'oh koo-JEE-noh EH ee-tah-LYAH-noh. My cousin is Italian.
- 26 deh-ZEE-deh-rah ahn-DAH-reh een ee-TAH-lyah? Does he wish to go to Italy?
- 27 NOH, EH-l'yee deh-ZEE-deh-rah ahn-DAH-reh NEH-l'yee STAH-tee OO-NEE-tee. No, he wishes to go to the United States.
- 28 PREHN-deh eel TREH-noh pehr ahn-DAH-reh een FRAHN-chah? Do you take the train to go to France?
- 29 NOH, pehr ahn-DAH-reh een FRAHN-chah EE'oh PREHN-doh eel pee-ROH-skah-foh oh lah'eh-roh-PLAH-noh. No, to go to France I take the boat or the airplane.
- 30 deh-ZEE-deh-rah FAH-reh oon vee-AH-djoh een ah'oo-toh-MOH-bee-leh soo'oh PAH-dreh? Does your father want to take an automobile trip (*literally*, a trip in automobile)?

tence. However, sometimes it is left before the verb, the inflection of the voice indicating that it is a question. 15. See Note 6. 16. When the name of a language follows any form of the verb *parlare* the definite article is not used. All other verbs, however, require the article. 17. *Mi* is both a direct and an indirect object pronoun. It means "me" or "to me." 18. *Le* is an indirect object pronoun and means "to you" or "to her." 19. In Italian a verb is made negative by putting *non* before it. 20. *Lo* in this case means "it." (It also means "him.") It is a direct object pronoun. All direct and indirect object pronouns, except *loro*, precede any form of a verb except the infinitive (see Note 6), the present participle, and some forms of the imperative. 21. *Negli* is a contraction of *in* and *gli*. Most masculine names of countries require the definite article after the preposition *in*.

## 32 THE CORTINA METHOD

31 Sì, signore, il viaggio in automobile è molto interessante.

32 Quando parte<sup>27</sup> il treno?

33 Il treno parte di<sup>28</sup> mattina.

34 Perché desidera andare in Inghilterra?

35 Io desidero andarci<sup>29</sup> per affari.

36 Desidera andarci solo?

37 No, io desidero andarci con la mia famiglia.

38 Perché desidera andarci con la sua famiglia?

39 Perché io non desidero viaggiare solo.

40 Quando parte sua madre?

41 Mia madre desidera partire subito.

42 Mio zio abita in Inghilterra.

43 È inglese suo zio?

44 No, signore, egli è spagnuolo.

45 Mia zia è russa.



46 Parla ella la lingua russa?

47 Sì, la<sup>30</sup> parla. Parla lei il russo?

48 No, signore, ma è una lingua molto interessante.

49 Io desidero imparare l'inglese.

---

22. *Nel* is a contraction of *in* and *il*. *Canadà* is masculine. See Note 21. 23. Adjectives ending in *e* are both masculine and feminine. Those ending in *o* are masculine and form the feminine by changing *o* to *a*. 24. The infinitive of this verb is *prendere*, which is a verb of the second conjugation. The present tense is: *io prendo; tu prendi; lei, egli, ella prende; noi prendiamo; voi prendete; loro, essi, esse prendono*. 25. If "to" can be replaced by "in order to," it is translated as *per* before an infinitive. 26. *Fare un viaggio* is an idiom. Literally it means "to make a trip." *Fare* is an irregular verb. Its present tense is: *io faccio; tu fai; lei,*

- 31 SEE, see-N'YOH-reh, eel vee-AH-djoh een ah'oo-toh-MOH-bee-leh EH MOHL-to een-teh-rehs-SAHN-teh.
- 32 KWAN-doh PAHR-teh eel TREH-noh?
- 33 eel TREH-noh PAHR-teh dee maht-TEE-nah.
- 34 pehr-KEH deh-ZEE-deh-rah ahn-DAH-reh een een-geel-TEHR-rah?
- 35 deh-ZEE-deh-roh ahn-DAHR-chee pehr ahf-FAH-tee.
- 36 deh-ZEE-deh-rah ahn-DAHR-chee SOH-loh?
- 37 NOH, EE'oh deh-ZEE-deh-toh ahn-DAHR-chee kohn lah MEE'ah fah-MEE-l'yah.
- 38 pehr-KEH deh-ZEE-deh-rah ahn-DAHR-chee kohn lah soo'ah fah-MEE-l'yah?
- 39 pehr-KEH EE'oh nohn deh-ZEE-deh-roh vee-ah-DJAH-reh SOH-loh.
- 40 KWAHN-doh PAHR-teh soo'ah MAH-dreh.
- 41 MEE'ah MAH-dreh deh-ZEE-deh-rah pahr-TEE-reh soo-bee-toh.
- 42 MEE'oh DZEE'oh AH-bee-tah een een-geel-TEHR-rah.
- 43 EH een-GLEH-zeh soo'oh DZEE'oh?
- 44 NOH, see-N'YOH-reh, EH-l'yee EH span-N'YWOH-loh.
- 45 MEE'ah DZEE'ah EH ROOS-sah.
- 46 PAHR-lah EHL-lah lah LEEN-gwah ROOS-sah?
- 47 SEE, lah PAHR-lah. PAHR-lah LAY eel ROOS-soh?
- 48 NOH, see-N'YOH-reh, mah EH oonah LEENN-gwah MOHL-toh een-teh-rehs-SAHN-teh.
- 49 EE'oh deh-ZEE-deh-roh eem-pah-RAH-reh leen-GLEH-zeh.
- Yes, sir, the automobile trip is very interesting.
- When does the train leave?  
The train leaves in the morning.
- Why do you wish to go to England?  
I wish to go there on business (*lit.*, for business).
- Do you wish to go there alone?  
No, I wish to go there with my family.
- Why do you wish to go there with your family?  
Because I don't wish to travel alone.
- When does your mother leave?  
My mother wants to leave soon.
- My uncle lives in England.  
Is your uncle English?  
No, sir, he is Spanish.
- My aunt is Russian.  
Does she speak Russian?  
Yes, she speaks it (*lit.*, she it speaks). Do you speak Russian?  
No, sir, but it is a very interesting language.
- I want to learn English.

*egli, ella fa; noi facciamo; voi fate; loro, essi, esse fanno.* 27. The infinitive of this verb is *partire*, a regular verb of the third conjugation. The present tense is: *io parto; tu parti; lei, egli, ella parte; noi partiamo; voi partite; loro, essi, esse partono.* 28. *Di* means "of." Used with *mattina*, however, it means "in the." 29. *Ci* is an adverbial pronoun meaning "there," and, like other pronouns, it is attached to the infinitive. 30. *La* in this case means "it" (fem.). See Note 2.





# Seconda Lezione

SECOND LESSON (seh-KOHN-dah leh-TSYOH-neh)

## Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

la sala da <sup>1</sup> pranzo (SAH-lah dah PRAHN-dzoh)	dining room
di buon'ora <sup>2</sup> (dee bwohn-OH-rah)	early
generalmente (jeh-neh-rah-LEHN-teh)	ordinarily
accompagnare (ahk-kohm-pah-N'YAH-reh)	to accompany

dolce (DOHL-cheh)	sweet, soft
amaro (ah-MAH-roh)	bitter
c'è (ch eh)	there is

la tazza (TAH-tzah)	cup
il gusto (GOO-stoh)	taste
ci sono (chee SOH-noh)	there are

mi dispiace <sup>3</sup> (mee dee-SPYAH-cheh)	I am sorry
vuole? <sup>4</sup> (vwoh-leh)	will you, do you want?
io devo <sup>5</sup> (EE'oh DEH-voh)	I must, I have to

grazie (GRAH-tsee'eh)	thank you	prima <sup>7</sup> (PREE-mah)	before
tardi (TAHR-dee)	late	dopo <sup>7</sup> (DOH-poh)	after
io bevo <sup>6</sup> (BEH-voh)	I drink	adesso (ah-DEHS-soh)	now
vendere (VEHN-deh-reh)	to sell	a (ah)	to, at
il prezzo (PREH-tsoh)	price	le piace? <sup>8</sup> (leh PYAH-cheh)	do you like?
più (pyoo)	more	da (dah)	from
buono (BWOH-noh)	good	invece <sup>8</sup> (een-VEH-cheh)	instead

io posso <sup>9</sup> (POHS-soh)	I can, I may, I am able to
mi piace <sup>10</sup> (mee PYAH-cheh)	I like
abbastanza (ahb-bah-STAHN-tzah)	enough

il bicchiere (beek-KYEH-reh)	glass	il cappello (kahp-PEHL-loh)	hat
mangiare (mahn-JAH-reh)	to eat	comprare (kohm-PRAH-reh)	to buy
la via (lah VEE'ah)	street	preferire (preh-feh-REE-reh)	to prefer

I CIBI ed I PASTI

FOODS AND MEALS

(ee CHEE-bee ed ee PAH-stee)

il pasto (PAH-stoh)	meal
il pranzo <sup>11</sup> (PRAHN-dzoh)	dinner
la cena (CHEH-nah)	supper
la colazione (koh-lah-TSYOH-neh)	breakfast, lunch
la colazione del mezzogiorno	lunch
(... dehl meh-dzoh-JOHR-noh)	

l'acqua (LAHK-kwah)	water	la carne (KAHR-neh)	meat
il vino (VEE-noh)	wine	la pecora (PEH-koh-rah)	sheep
il latte (LAHT-teh)	milk	il maiale (mah-YAH-leh)	pork
il caffè (kahf-FEH)	coffee, cafe	il bue (BOO'eh)	ox, beef
il tè (teh)	tea	la vitella (vee-TEHL-lah)	veal

il pollo (POHL-loh)	chicken
il pollo arrosto (ahr-ROH-stoh)	roast chicken
il pollo alla cacciatora (kah-chah-TOH-rah)	chicken fricassee
l'agnello (lah-N'YEHL-loh)	lamb

la costoletta (koh-stoh-LEHT-tah)	chop
il castrato (kah-STRAH-toh)	mutton
l'arrosto (lahr-ROH-stoh)	roast
arrostito (ahr-roh-STEE-toh)	roasted
il prosciutto (proh-SHOOT-toh)	Italian ham
il burro (BOOR-roh)	butter



i legumi (leh-GOO-mee)	vegetables	la torta (TOHR-tah)	cake, pie
duro (DOO-roh)	tough, hard	fritto (FREET-toh)	fried
il brodo (BROH-doh)	thin soup	il pesce (PEH-sheh)	fish
il dolce (DOHL-cheh)	dessert	il pane (PAH-neh)	bread

ben cotto (behn KOHT-toh)	well cooked
la marmellata (mahr-mehl-LAH-tah)	jam
il panino <sup>12</sup> (pah-NEE-noh)	roll
il formaggio (fohr-MAH-djoh)	cheese
un uovo bollito (WOH-voh bohl-LEE-toh)	a soft-boiled egg
la verdura <sup>13</sup> (vehr-DOO-rah)	green vegetables
la frutta <sup>14</sup> (FROOT-tah)	fruit
lo zucchero (DZOOK-keh-roh)	sugar

la cioccolata (chohk-koh-LAH-tah)	chocolate
di ottima <sup>15</sup> qualità (dee OHT-tee-mah kwah-lee-TAH)	of excellent quality
a prezzi moderati (ah FREH-tsee moh-deh-RAH-tee)	reasonably priced

## CONVERSATION

1 Io faccio colazione.<sup>16</sup>

2 A che ora fa colazione lei?

3 Faccio<sup>17</sup> colazione di buon'ora.



4 In che<sup>18</sup> consiste generalmente la sua colazione?

5 La mia colazione generalmente consiste di una tazza di caffelatte<sup>19</sup> o di cioccolata, ed<sup>20</sup> un panino con marmellata.

6 Andiamo<sup>21</sup> nella sala da pranzo.

7 Desidera mangiare adesso o prima di partire?

8 Preferisco mangiare più tardi.<sup>22</sup>

9 Che cosa mangia a pranzo?

10 Il martedì,<sup>23</sup> generalmente, io mangio due costolette di vitella o di agnello ben cotte.

---

FOOTNOTES: 1. *Lit.*, the hall for dinner. 2. *Lit.*, of a good hour. This is an idiom. An idiom is a unique expression to which the general rules of grammar do not apply. An idiom is not to be translated literally. 3. *Lit.*, it is displeasing to me. 4. This is a form of the present of the verb *volere*, an irregular verb, whose present is: *io voglio; tu vuoi; lei, egli, ella vuole; noi vogliamo; voi volete; loro, essi, esse vogliono.* 5. This is a form of the verb *dovere*, an irregular verb, whose present is: *io devo, tu devi, lei deve, noi dobbiamo, voi dovete, loro devono.* NOTE: Inasmuch as the verb forms for *lei, egli, ella* and *loro, essi, esse* are the same, only the *lei* and *loro* forms will be given from now on. 6. The infinitive of *bevo* is *bere*, but the present tense, which is regular, is conjugated from the old form *bevare*. 7. *prima* and *dopo* are followed by *di* when a noun, pronoun, or verb follows. 8. *invece* is followed by *di* before a noun, pronoun, or verb. 9. This is a form of *potere*, an irregular verb, whose present is: *io posso, tu puoi,*

PRONUNCIATION

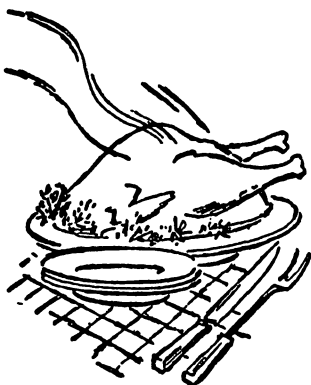
TRANSLATION

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1 EE'oh FAH-tchoh koh-lah-TSYOH-neh.</p>   | <p>I have breakfast.</p>   |
| <p>2 ah keh OH-rah fah koh-lah-TSYOH-neh LAY?</p>   | <p>At what time do you have breakfast?</p>   |
| <p>3 EE'oh FAH-tchoh koh-lah-TSYOH-neh dee bwoh-NOH-rah.</p>  | <p>I have breakfast early.</p>   |
| <p>4 een keh kohn-SEE-steh jeh-neh-rahl-MEHN-teh lah soo'ah koh-lah-TSYOH-neh?</p>  | <p>What does your breakfast generally consist of (<i>lit.</i>, in)?</p>                                |
| <p>5 lah MEE'ah koh-lah-TSYOH-neh jeh-neh-rahl-MEHN-teh kohn-SEE-steh dee oo-nah TAH-tsah dee kahf-feh-LAHT-teh oh dee chok-koh-LAH-tah, ed oon pah-NEE-noh kohn mahr-mehl-LAH-tah.</p> | <p>My breakfast generally consists of a cup of coffee with milk, or chocolate and a roll with jam.</p> |
| <hr/>   |  |
| <p>6 ahn-DYAH-moh NEHL-lah SAH-lah dah PRAHN-dzoh.</p>  | <p>Let us go into the dining room.</p>   |
| <p>7 deh-ZEE-deh-rah mahn-JAH-reh ah-DEHS-soh oh FREE-mah dee pahf-TEE-reh?</p>   | <p>Do you wish to eat now or before leaving?</p>   |
| <p>8 preh-feh-REE-skoh mahn-JAH-reh FYOO TAHR-dee.</p>  | <p>I prefer to eat later.</p>  |
| <p>9 keh KOH-zah MAHN-jah ah PRAHN-dzoh?</p>  | <p>What do you have for dinner (<i>lit.</i>, eat at dinner)?</p>                                       |
| <p>10 eel mahr-teh-DEE, jeh-neh-rahl-MEHN-teh EE'oh MAHN-joh DOO'eh koh-stoh-LEHT-teh dee vee-TEHL-lah oh dee ah-N'YEHL-loh behn KOHT-teh.</p>  | <p>On Tuesdays, ordinarily, I eat two veal or lamb chops well done (<i>lit.</i>, cooked).</p>          |

---

*lei può, noi possiamo, voi potete, loro possono.* 10. *Lit.*, it is pleasing to me. 11. Normally *il pranzo* is the noon meal. However, if it is not a complete dinner the expression *colazione* or *colazione del mezzogiorno* is used. 12. *Panino* is a diminutive form of *pane* (bread). *Lit.*, it means "little bread." 13. *Verdura* is a generic word to indicate any green vegetable or vegetables. 14. *La frutta* means "the fruit" or "fruits of a tree." In a figurative sense *il frutto* and *i frutti* are used. 15. *Ottimo* (fem. *ottima*) is the absolute superlative form of *buono*. See Reference Grammar. 16. *Fare colazione* is an idiom. 17. Notice the omission of the subject pronoun *io*. Subject pronouns are often omitted in Italian. 18. *In che lit.* means "in what." 19. *Caffelatte* is composed of *caffè* and *latte*. Notice *caffè* loses its accent mark. In Italian accents are used only on the final vowel of a word. 20. The conjunction *e* usually becomes *ed* before a vowel. 21. This is the *noi* form of the imperative of *andare*. The personal pronouns are omitted in the

11 A mezzogiorno io non faccio un pranzo<sup>24</sup> completo. Mangio soltanto un uovo<sup>25</sup> bollito ed un po' di verdura, o del<sup>26</sup> prosciutto con insalata.



12 Non le piace<sup>27</sup> la carne di maiale?<sup>28</sup>

13 Sì, ma preferisco<sup>29</sup> il castrato.<sup>30</sup>

14 Posso offrirle del pollo arrosto? Questo pollo è molto tenero.

15 Grazie, ma prima prenderò<sup>31</sup> un po' di minestrone<sup>32</sup> invece dell'<sup>33</sup> antipasto.<sup>34</sup>

16 Questo arrosto di bue non è molto tenero.

17 Il pesce, invece, è veramente squisito.

18 Che desidera a pranzo?

19 Carne, insalata, pane e burro.<sup>35</sup>

20 E poi?

21 Non so.<sup>36</sup> Che cosa mi consiglia lei?

---

imperative. 22. *Più tardi* is a comparative form. In Italian the comparative is formed by adding *più* (more) or *meno* (less) before an adverb or an adjective. 23. Before days of the week *il* means "on." It indicates habitual occurrence. 24. *Faccio un pranzo* is an idiom. The verb *pranzare* may be used instead. 25. The plural of *l'uovo* is *le uova*. 26. *del* is a contraction of *di* and *il*. It means "some" or "of the." 27. Literal meaning of *le piace* is "it is pleasing to you." It also means "she likes." 28. *Lit.*, meat of pig. 29. *Preferisco* is a form of the present of *preferire*, a regular *-isco* verb of the third conjugation (see Reference Grammar). The present is: *io preferisco, tu preferisci, lei preferisce, noi preferiamo, voi preferite, loro preferiscono*. 30. *Il castrato*. Notice that the definite article is used when a noun is used in a general sense. 31. This is a

- 11 ah meh-dzoh-JOHR-noh EE'oh  
nohn FAH-choh oon FRAHN-dzoh  
kohm-PLÉH-toh. MAHN-joh sohl-  
TAHN-toh oon WOH-voH bohl-LEE-  
toh ed oon POH dee vehr-DOO-rah,  
oh dehl proh-SHOOT-toh kohn  
een-sah-LAH-tah. At noon I don't have a complete  
dinner. I eat only a boiled egg  
and some green vegetables, or  
some Italian ham with salad.
- 12 nohn leh PYAH-cheh lah KAHR-  
neh dee mah-YAH-leh? Don't you like pork?
- 13 SEE, mah preh-feh-REE-skoh eel  
kah-STRAH-toh. Yes, but I prefer mutton.
- 14 POHS-soh ohf-FREER-leh dehl POHL-  
loh ahr-ROH-stoh? KWEH-stoh  
POHL-loh EH MOHL-toh TEH-neh-  
roh. May I offer you some roast chick-  
en? This chicken is very tender.
- 15 GRAH-tsyeh, mah FREE-mah prehn-  
deh-ROH oon POH dee mee-neh-  
STROH-neh een-VEH-cheh dehl-  
lahn-tee-PAH-stoh. Thank you, but first I shall have  
some minestrone soup instead  
of the appetizer.
- 16 KWEH-stoh ahr-ROH-stoh dee BOO'-  
eh nohn EH MOHL-toh TEH-neh-  
roh. This roast beef is not very tender.
- 17 eel PEH-sheh, een-VEH-cheh, EH  
veh-rah-MEHN-teh skwee-ZEE-toh. The fish, on the other hand, is  
really delicious.
- 18 keh deh-ZEE-deh-rah ah FRAHN-  
dzoh? What do you wish to have for  
dinner?
- 19 KAHR-neh, een-sah-LAH-tah, PAH-  
neh eh BOOR-roh. Meat, salad, bread and butter.
- 20 eh POY? And then? (What next?)
- 21 nohn SOH. keh KOH-zah mee kohn-  
SEE-l'yah LAY? I don't know. What do you sug-  
gest (*lit.*, What do you advise  
me)?

---

form of the future of *prendere*: *io prenderò, tu prenderai, lei prenderà, noi prenderemo, voi prenderete, loro prenderanno*. The endings, *erò, erai, erà, eremo, erete, eranno*, are the same for all regular verbs of the first and second conjugations. 32. *Minestrone* is a very thick soup made with several vegetables. 33. *Dell'* is a contraction of *di* and *l'* and means "some" or "of the." 34. *Antipasto* (*lit.*, before meal) is a delectable dish usually consisting of lettuce, tomato, peppers, beets, salami, anchovies, cheese, etc. 35. The partitive articles such as "some, any," etc., are often omitted for the sake of simplicity, especially when words are used in a series. 36. *So* is a form of the irregular verb *sapere*, whose present is: *io so, tu sai, lei sa, noi sappiamo, voi sapete, loro sanno*. 37. *Abbiamo* is a form of the irregular verb *avere* whose present is: *io ho, tu hai, lei ha, noi abbiamo, voi*

22 Abbiamo<sup>37</sup> del formaggio fresco e piccante, della frutta secca e dei pasticcini.



23 Preferisco pane e formaggio.

24 Desidera del tè?

25 No, dopo il pasto preferisco prendere una tazza di caffè.

26 Beve vino durante il pasto?

27 Generalmente bevo un bicchiere di vino e un bicchier<sup>38</sup> d'acqua.

28 È abbastanza dolce il caffè, o è ancora un po' amaro?

29 È abbastanza dolce, grazie.

30 Vuole accompagnarvi a teatro<sup>39</sup> dopo il pranzo?

31 Mi dispiace moltissimo doverla lasciare, ma debbo<sup>40</sup> comprare un cappello.

32 In questa strada c'è una buona cappelleria.

33 Si vendono<sup>41</sup> dei<sup>42</sup> buoni cappelli là?

34 Sì, signore, i cappelli sono di ottima qualità ed i prezzi ragionevoli.<sup>43</sup>

---

*avete, loro hanno.* 38. The final *e* is often dropped for the sake of euphony. 39. *A teatro*. An idiom. It means "to the theater." 40. *Debbo* is an alternate form for *devo*. See Note 5. 41. *Si vendono* is an impersonal expression. *Vendono* agrees with *cappelli*. *Lit.*, are good hats sold there. 42. *Dei* is a contraction of

- 22 a**h**-b**YAH**-moh dehl fohr-mah-  
d**JOH** FREH-skoh eh peek-KAHN-  
teh, DEHL-lah FROOT-tah SEHK-kah  
eh day pah-stee-CHEE-nee.
- 23 preh-feh-REE-skoh PAH-neh eh  
fohr-mah-D**JOH**.
- 24 deh-ZEE-deh-rah dehl TEH?
- 25 NOH, DOH-poh eel PAH-stoh preh-  
feh-REE-skoh PREHN-deh-reh oo-  
nah TAH-tsah dee kahf-FEH.
- 26 BEH-veh VEE-noh doo-RAHN-teh  
eel PAH-stoh?
- 27 jeh-neh-rah**L**-MEHN-teh BEH-voh  
oon beek-KYEH-reh dee VEE-noh  
eh oon beek-KYEH**R** DAHK-kwah.
- 28 EH a**h**-b**ah**-STAHN-tsah DOHL-cheh  
eel kahf-FEH, oh EH a**h**n-KOH-rah  
oon POH ah-MAH-roh?
- 29 EH a**h**-b**ah**-STAHN-tsah DOHL-  
cheh, GRAH-tsyeh.
- 30 v**WOH**-leh a**h**k-kohm-pah-N'YAH**R**-  
mee ah teh-AH-troh DOH-poh eel  
FRAHN-dzoh?
- 31 mee dee-SPYAH-cheh mohl-TEES-  
see-moh doh-VEHR-lah lah-SHAH-  
reh, mah DEHB-boh kohm-FRAH-  
reh oon kahp-PEHL-loh.
- 32 een KWEH-stah STRAH-dah CHEH  
oo-nah B**WOH**-nah kahp-pehl-leh-  
REE-ah.
- 33 see VEHN-doh-noh day B**WOH**-nee  
kahp-PEHL-lee LAH?
- 34 SEE, see-N'YOH-reh, ee kahp-PEHL-  
lee SOH-noh dee OHT-tee-mah  
kwah-lee-TAH ed ee PREH-tsee  
rah-joh-NEH-voh-lee.
- We have some fresh, sharp cheese,  
dry fruit, and pastry.
- I prefer bread and cheese.
- Do you want tea?
- No, after the meal I prefer to  
have (*lit.*, take) a cup of coffee.
- Do you drink wine with your  
meal (*lit.*, during the meal) ?
- Ordinarily I drink a glass of wine  
and a glass of water.
- Is the coffee sweet enough, or is  
it still a little bitter?
- It is sweet enough, thank you.
- Do you wish to go to the theater  
with me (*lit.*, accompany me) ?
- I am very sorry I have to leave  
you, but I must buy a hat.
- In this street there is a good hat  
store.
- Do they sell good hats there?
- Yes, sir. The hats are of excellent  
quality and the prices reason-  
able.

**di** and **i**. It means "some" or "of the." 43. *Ragionevoli* is an adjective. Most adjectives in Italian follow the noun they modify and agree with it in gender and number.





# Terza Lezione

THIRD LESSON (TEHR-tsah leh-TSYOH-neh)

## Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

**quanto costa?** (KWahn-toh koh-stah)

**a buon mercato**<sup>1</sup> (ah BWOHN mehr-KAH-toh)

**aver bisogno di**<sup>2</sup> (ah-VEHR bee-ZOH-n'yoh dee)

**è necessario**<sup>3</sup> (EH neh-chehs-SAH-ryoh)

**non è vero?**<sup>4</sup> (nohn EH VEHR-roh)

**beninteso** (behn-een-TEH-zoh)

how much does it cost?

cheap, inexpensive

to need

it is necessary

is it not so?

of course

**il denaro** (deh-NAH-roh) money

**costare** (koh-STAH-reh) to cost

**caro** (KAH-roh) dear,  
expensive



**il giorno** (JOHR-noh) day

**buon**<sup>5</sup> **giorno** good day,

(bwohn . . .) hello

**la sera** (SEH-rah) evening

**la serata**<sup>6</sup> (seh-RAH-tah) evening,

evening party

**buona sera** (BWOH-

nah . . .)

good

evening

**la notte** (NOHT-teh)

night

**buona notte** (BWOH-

nah . . .)

good night

**il negozio** (neh-GOH-tsyoh)

**il passeggio** (pahs-SEH-djoh)

**cupo** (KOO-poh)

**differente**<sup>7</sup> (deef-feh-REHN-teh)

**elegante** (eh-leh-GAHN-teh)

**ecco** (EHK-koh)

store

the walk, walking

dark, deep (in reference to color)

different

elegant, stylish

here is, there is, here are, there are

**alto** (AHL-toh)

**basso** (BAHS-soh)

**corto** (KOHR-toh)

**largo** (LAHR-goh)

**stretto** (STREHT-toh)

high, tall

low, short

short

large, wide

narrow, tight

**lungo** (LOON-goh)

**lo stesso** (STEHs-soh)

**troppo** (TROHP-poh)

**alcuni** (ahl-KOO-nee)

**alcune** (ahl-KOO-neh)

long

same

too much

some (*m.*)

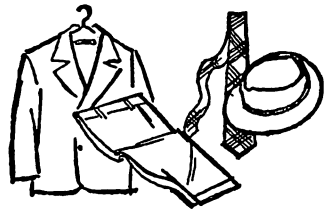
some (*f.*)

**VESTIARIO e CALZATURE**

**CLOTHING AND FOOTWEAR (veh-stee'AH-ryoh eh kahl-tsah-TOO-reh)**

<b>il vestito</b> (veh-STEE-toh)	suit	<b>la veste</b> (VEH-steh)	dress
<b>la giacca</b> (JAHK-kah)	jacket	<b>il guanto</b> (GWAHN-toh)	glove
<b>la manica</b> (MAH-nee-kah)	sleeve	<b>la maglia</b> (MAH-l'yah)	sweater
<b>la calza</b> (KAHL-tsah)	stocking	<b>la pelle</b> (PEHL-leh)	leather, skin
<b>la scarpa</b> (SKAHR-pah)	shoe	<b>la seta</b> (SEH-tah)	silk

<b>il cappello</b> (kaph-PEHL-loh)	hat
<b>il berretto</b> (behr-REHT-toh)	cap
<b>la cravatta</b> (krah-VAHT-tah)	necktie
<b>la camicia</b> (kah-MEE-chah)	shirt
<b>il panciotto</b> (pahn-CHOHT-toh)	vest
<b>i calzoni</b> (kahl-TSOH-nee)	trousers
<b>il soprabito</b> (soh-PRAH-bee-toh)	overcoat



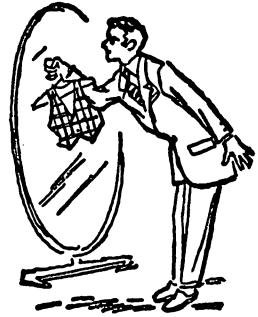
<b>il polsino</b> (pohl-SEE-noh)	cuff (of a shirt)
<b>il fazzoletto</b> (fah-tsoh-LEHT-toh)	handkerchief
<b>il calzino</b> (kahl-TSEE-noh)	sock
<b>la pantofola</b> (pahn-TOH-foh-lah)	slipper
<b>la gonnella</b> (gohn-NEHL-lah)	skirt
<b>la camicetta</b> (kah-mee-CHEHT-tah)	blouse

<b>l'impermeabile</b> (leem-pehr-meh-AH-bee-leh)	raincoat
<b>la biancheria intima</b> <sup>8</sup> (byahn-keh-REE'ah EEN-tee-mah)	underwear
<b>le mutande</b> (moo-TAHN-deh)	underwear, shorts
<b>la sottana</b> (soht-TAH-nah)	slip, petticoat
<b>la panciera</b> (pahn-CHYEH-rah)	girdle
<b>il reggipetto</b> (reh-djee-PEHT-toh)	brassiere
<b>la borsetta</b> (bohr-SEHT-tah)	handbag
<b>il portamonete</b> <sup>9</sup> (pohr-tah-moh-NEH-teh)	change purse
<b>l'abito a giacca</b> (LAH-bee-toh ah JAHK-kah)	tailored suit (for a woman)
<b>il tessuto</b> (tehs-SOO-toh)	cloth, fabric
<b>la stoffa</b> (STOHF-fah)	material, cloth

<b>il cotone</b> (koh-TOH-neh)	cotton	<b>il tacco</b> (TAHK-koh)	heel
<b>la lana</b> (LAH-nah)	wool	<b>il colore</b> (koh-LOH-reh)	color
<b>il feltro</b> (FEHL-troh)	felt	<b>analogo</b> (ah-NAH-loh-goh)	matching
<b>la suola</b> (SWOH-lah)	sole	<b>il velo</b> (VEH-loh)	veil

## CONVERSATION

- 1 Buon giorno, signore. Buona sera, signora. Buona notte, bambino mio.
- 2 Di che cosa parlavano<sup>10</sup> quando io sono entrato?<sup>11</sup>
- 3 Parlavamo di vestiario e di calzature.
- 4 Lei ha<sup>12</sup> un vestito che le sta<sup>13</sup> a pennello.<sup>14</sup>
- 5 Grazie. La stoffa è buona, ma la giacca mi sembra troppo lunga ed il panciotto troppo corto.
- 6 Le vanno bene<sup>15</sup> i calzoni?
- 7 Sì, i calzoni mi vanno benissimo.
- 8 Ho bisogno d'un<sup>16</sup> soprabito, d'un cappello e d'un paio<sup>17</sup> di guanti.
- 9 In questo negozio può<sup>18</sup> comprare tutto quello di cui<sup>19</sup> ha bisogno: cravatte, fazzoletti, camicie e calzini.



### 10 Ha anche bisogno di mutande?

FOOTNOTES: 1. *A buon mercato* is an idiom. *Mercato* means "market." 2. *Aver bisogno di*, "to have need of," is an idiom. The word *di* is used when a noun, pronoun, or verb follows. 3. *È necessario*—"it is necessary." The word *it* is not translated when it is the subject of a verb. 4. The Italian expression *non è vero* is used to translate such English expressions as "isn't it true," "isn't that so," "aren't we," etc. The expected answer is "yes." 5. *Buon* is one of the adjectives which normally precedes the noun. Notice that *buono* becomes *buon* before a singular masculine noun. 6. *La serata* instead of *la sera* is used to express the duration of the evening, or the events which took place in the course of the evening. 7. Adjectives which end in *e* are both masculine and feminine. 8. *La biancheria intima*. *Lit.*, the intimate linens. 9. *Portamonete* is composed of the words *porta* (carries) and *monete* (coins). 10. This is a form of the imperfect of the

## PRONUNCIATION

- 1 bwohn JOHR-noh, see-n'YOH-reh.  
BWOH-nah SEH-rah, see-n'YOH-rah.  
BWOH-nah NOHT-teh, bahm-BEE-  
noh MEE'oh.
- 2 dee keh COH-zah pahr-LAH-vah-  
noh KWAHN-doh EE'oh SOH-noh  
ehn-TRAH-toh?
- 3 pahr-lah-VAH-moh dee veh-stee'  
AH-ryoh eh dee kahl-tсах-TOO-reh.
- 4 lay AH oon veh-STEE-toh keh leh  
STAH ah pehn-NEHL-loh.
- 5 GRAH-tsyeh. lah STOHF-fah EH  
BWOH-nah, mah lah JAHK-kah mee  
SEHM-brah TROHP-poh LOON-gah  
ed eel pahn-CHOHT-toh TROHP-  
poh KOHR-toh.
- 6 leh VAHN-noh BEH-neh ee kahl-  
TSOH-nee?
- 7 SEE, ee kahl-TSOH-nee mee VAHN-  
no beh-NEES-see-moh.
- 8 oh bee-ZOH-n'yoh doon soh-PRAH-  
bee-toh, doon kahp-PEHL-loh eh  
doon PAH-yoh dee GWAHN-tee.
- 9 een KWEH-stoh neh-GOH-tsyoh  
PWOH kohm-PRAH-reh TOOT-toh  
KWEHL-loh dee KOOY ah bee-ZOH-  
n'yoh: krah-VAHT-teh, fah-tsoh-  
LEHT-tec, kah-MEE-cheh eh kahl-  
TSEE-nee.
- 10 ah AHN-keh bee-ZOH-n'yoh dee  
MOO-TAHN-deh?

## TRANSLATION

- Good day, sir. Good evening,  
madam. Good night, my child.
- What were you talking about  
when I came in?
- We were talking about clothes  
and footwear.
- You have a suit which fits you  
perfectly.
- Thank you. The material is good,  
but the coat seems too long to  
me, and the vest too short.
- Do the trousers fit you well?
- Yes, the trousers fit me very well.
- I need an overcoat, a hat, and a  
pair of gloves.
- In this store you can buy every-  
thing you need: neckties, hand-  
kerchiefs, shirts, and socks.
- Do you need underwear also?

first conjugation: *io parlavo, tu parlavi, lei parlava, noi parlavamo, voi parlavate, loro parlavano*. For the use of this tense see Reference Grammar. 11. This is a form of the present perfect (*passato prossimo*). It is used to express an action which took place recently. *Entrare* is one of the few verbs which takes the present of *essere* (to be) as an auxiliary. The great majority of verbs take instead the present of *avere* (to have). See Note 12. 12. This is a form of the present of *avere*: *io ho, tu hai, lei ha, noi abbiamo, voi avete, loro hanno*. REMINDER: the *h* is silent. 13. *Stare* is a form of the irregular verb *stare* (to stay), whose present is: *io sto, tu stai, lei sta, noi stiamo, voi state, loro stanno*. 14. *Le sta a pennello* is an idiom and requires the indirect object. *Le* therefore is an indirect object pronoun, meaning "to you" The word *pennello* means "a painter's brush." 15. *Le vanno bene* is an idiom, and requires the indirect object. 16. *d'un* is a contraction of *di un*. The

11 Sì, ne<sup>20</sup> ho bisogno.

12 I polsini di questa camicia sono troppo lunghi.<sup>21</sup>

13 Desidero comprare un abito a giacca per mia moglie.

14 Che tessuto preferisce?

15 Preferisco un buon tessuto che non costi<sup>22</sup> troppo.



16 Desidera una gonnella ed una camicetta analoghe?

17 Beninteso. Le preferisco di un colore unito, ma cupo.

18 Abbiamo degli<sup>23</sup> abiti da<sup>24</sup> sera e dei vestiti da<sup>24</sup> passeggio molto eleganti.

19 Quanto costa questo cappello di feltro?

20 Questo cappello è caro, ma questo berretto è a buon mercato.

21 La signorina Borgese desidera comprare una sottana e delle<sup>25</sup> calze, non è vero?

22 Sì, ed ho anche bisogno di una panciera e di un reggipetto.

---

apostrophe is used in lieu of the first vowel to avoid two vowels coming together. This process is called apocoptation. 17. The plural of *paio* is *paia*. Ex: *due paia di scarpe*—"two pairs of shoes." 18. *Può* is a form of the irregular verb *potere*, whose present is: *io posso, tu puoi, lei può, noi possiamo, voi potete, loro possono*. 19. *Di cui ha bisogno*. *Lit.*, of which you have need. *Cui* is always preceded by a preposition, unless it means "whose,"—in which case it is preceded by the definite article. Ex.: *Il signore il cui figlio è qui*—"The gentleman whose son is here."

- 11 SEE neh oh bec-ZOH-n'yoh. Yes, I need some.
- 12 ee pohl-SEE-nee dee KWEHS-tah The cuffs of this shirt are too kah-MEE-chah SOH-noh TROHP-poh long.  
LOON-gee.
- 13 deh-ZEE-deh-roh kohm-PRAH-reh I wish to buy a tailored suit for oon AH-bee-toh ah JAHK-kah pehr my wife.  
MEE'ah MOH-l'yeh.
- 14 keh tehs-SOO-toh preh-feh-REE- What material do you prefer?  
sheh?
- 15 preh-feh-REE-skoh oon BWOHN I prefer a good material which is tehs-SOO-toh keh nohn KOH-stee not too expensive.  
TROHP-poh.
- 16 deh-ZEE-deh-rah oo'nah gohn- Do you wish a matching skirt and NEHL-lah ed oo'nah kah-mee blouse?  
CHEHT-tah ah-NAH-loh-geh?
- 17 beh-neen-TEH-zoh. leh preh-feh- Of course. I prefer them in the REE-skoh dee oon koh-LOH-reh oo- same color, but deep.  
NEE-toh mah KOO-poh.
- 18 ahb-BYAH-moh DEH-l'yee AH-bee- We have some very elegant eve- tee dah SEH-rah eh day veh-STEE- ning dresses and street clothes.  
tee dah pahs-SEH-djoh MOHL-toh eh-leh-GAHN-tee.
- 19 KWAHN-toh KOH-stah KWEH-stoh How much does this felt hat cost? kahp-PEHL-loh dee FEHL-troh?
- 20 KWEH-stoh kahp-PEHL-loh EH KAH- This hat is expensive, but this cap roh, mah KWEH-stoh behr-REHT- is cheap.  
toh eh ah BWOHN mehr-KAH-toh.
- 21 lah see-n'yoh-REE-nah bohr-JEH- Miss Borgese wishes to buy a slip zeh deh-ZEE-deh-rah kohm-PRAH- and some stockings, doesn't reh oo-nah soht-TAH-nah eh DEHL- she?  
leh KAHL-tseh, nohn eh VEH-roh?
- 22 SEE, cd oh AHN-keh bec-ZOH-n'yoh Yes, and I also need a girdle and dee oo-nah pahn-CHEH-rah eh dee a brassiere.  
oon reh-djee-PEHT-toh.

---

20. *Ne* is a direct object pronoun meaning "of it, of them, some, some of it, some of them." Like other direct object pronouns it precedes the verb. 21. Words ending in *go* and *ga* normally take an *h* before the *e* or *i* of the plural. 22. *Costi* is a form of the present subjunctive of *costare*. The subjunctive in this case is used after an indefinite antecedent. See Reference Grammar. 23. *degli* is a contraction of *di* and *gli* and means "some" or "of the." 24. *da sera* (for use in the evening); *da passeggio* (used for walking). This is a special use of the word *da*, which nor-

48 THE CORTINA METHOD

23 Può dirmi dove posso comprare delle scarpe?

24 C'è un negozio di calzature all'angolo di questa strada che ha un vasto assortimento.

25 La signora Bianchi desidera comprare delle scarpe da ballo con tacchi<sup>26</sup> alti e soles sottili.<sup>27</sup>



26 E noi vogliamo comprare un paio di scarpe da passeggio e delle pantofole.

27 Queste scarpe sono un po' troppo strette. Potrebbe darmene un altro paio di un numero<sup>28</sup> più grande?

28 Certo, signora. Eccole.<sup>29</sup> Queste le vanno molto bene.

29 Desidera una borsetta in pelle?

30 Sì, vorrei<sup>30</sup> una borsetta con un portamonete per gli spiccioli,<sup>31</sup> perchè non ho dove metterli.<sup>32</sup>

---

mally means "from" or "at" (person's home, office, shop, etc.). 25. *delle* is a contraction of *di* and *le* and means "some" or "of the." 26. *Tacchi* is the plural of *tacco*. A great many words ending in *co* change to *chi* in the plural. 27. The singular of *sottili* is *sottile*. Nouns and adjectives ending in *e* change *e* to *i* to form the plural. 28. *Numero* ordinarily means "number." In this case it means

- 23 PWOH DEER-mee DOH-veh POS-soh  
kohm-PRAH-reh DEEHL-leh SKAHR-  
peh?
- 24 CHEH oon neh-GOH-tsyoh dee kahl-  
tsah-TOO-reh ahl-LAHN-goh-loh  
dee KWEH-stah STRAH-dah keh ah  
oon VAH-stoh ahs-sohr-tee-MEHN-  
toh.
- 25 lah see-N'YOH-rah BYAHN-kee deh-  
ZEE-deh-rah kohm-PRAH-reh DEHL-  
leh SKAHR-peh dah BAHL-loh kohn  
TAHR-kee AHL-tee eh SWOH-leh  
soht-TEE-lee.
- 26 eh noy voh-L'YAH-moh kohm-  
PRAH-reh oon PAH-yoh dee SKAHR-  
peh dah pahs-SEH-djoh eh DEHL-  
leh pahh-TOH-foh-leh.
- 27 KWEH-steh SKAHR-peh SOH-noh  
oon POH TROHP-poh STREHT-teh.  
poh-TREHB-beh DAHR-meh-neh  
oon AHL-troh PAH-yoh dee oon  
NOO-meh-roh PYOO GRAHN-deh?
- 28 CHEHR-toh, see-N'YOH-rah. EHK-  
koh-leh. KWEH-steh leh VAHN-noh  
MOHL-toh BEH-neh.
- 29 deh-ZEE-deh-rah oo-nah bohr-  
SEHT-tah een PEHL-leh?
- 30 SEE, vohr-RAY oo-nah bohr-SEHT-  
tah kohn oon pohr-tah-moh-NEH-  
teh pehr I'yee SPEE-tchoh-lee,  
pehr-KEH nohn oh DOH-veh MEHT-  
tehr-lee.
- Can you tell me where I can buy  
some shoes?
- There is a shoe store at the corner  
of this street which has a large  
assortment.
- Mrs. Bianco wishes to buy some  
dancing shoes with high heels  
and thin soles.
- And we want to buy a pair of  
walking shoes and some slip-  
pers.
- These shoes are a little too tight.  
Could you give me another  
pair a size larger?
- Of course, madam. Here they are.  
These fit you very well.
- Do you wish a leather handbag  
(*lit.*, a handbag in leather)?  
Yes, I should like a handbag with  
a purse for my change, because  
I don't have a place to put it  
(*lit.*, I don't have where to put  
them).

---

"size." 29. *Eccole*—"here they are" (*lit.*, here are they). The *le* is a direct object pronoun. 30. *Vorrei* is a form of the conditional of the verb *volere* (to want). 31. *Spiccioli* is always used in the plural. 32. *Non ho dove metterli*. Notice the idiomatic construction of this sentence.





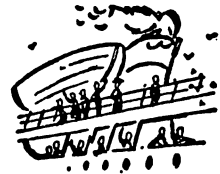
# Quarta Lezione

FOURTH LESSON (KWAHR-tah leh-TSYOH-neh)

## Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

<b>domani mattina</b> (doh-MAH-nee maht-TEE-nah)	tomorrow morning
<b>domani sera</b> (doh-MAH-nee SEH-rah)	tomorrow evening
<b>per piacere</b> (pehr pyah-CHEH-reh)	please
<b>vuole avere la bontà<sup>1</sup></b> (VVOH-leh ah-VEH-reh lah bohn-TAH)	will you be kind enough
<b>trovarsi<sup>2</sup></b> (troh-VAHR-see)	to be, to be located
<b>un chilo<sup>3</sup>, un chilogrammo</b> (kee-loh-GRAHM-moh)	a kilogram

<b>imbarcarsi</b> (cem-bahr-KAHR-see)	to embark, sail
<b>l'arrivo</b> (lahr-REE-voh)	arrival
<b>la partenza</b> (pah-TEHN-tsay)	departure
<b>visitare</b> (vee-zee-TAH-reh)	to visit
<b>veramente</b> (veh-rah-MEHN-teh)	really, truly



<b>si trova</b> (see TROH-vah)	is located	<b>il tempo</b> (TEHM-poh)	time,
<b>subito</b> (soo-bee-toh)	quickly		weather
<b>allora</b> (ahl-LOH-rah)	then	<b>a tempo</b> (ah TEHM-poh)	on time
<b>pesare</b> (pch-ZAH-reh)	to weigh	<b>il corso</b> (KOHR-soh)	boulevard
<b>già</b> (JAH)	already	<b>valido</b> (VAH-lee-doh)	valid



<b>un aeroporto</b> (ah'eh-roh-POHR-toh)	an airport
<b>atterrare</b> (aht-tchr-RAH-reh)	to land
<b>decollare</b> (deh-kohl-LAH-reh)	to take off (aviation)
<b>non ancora</b> (ahn-KOH-rah)	not yet

<b>la piazza</b> (PYAH-tsay)	square	<b>sapere</b> (sah-PEH-reh)	to know
<b>il nord</b> (NOHRD)	north		(how)
<b>primo</b> (FREE-moh)	first	<b>io so</b> (SOH)	I know
<b>presto</b> (PREH-stoh)	soon	<b>il paese</b> (pah-EH-zeh)	country
<b>altro</b> (AHL-troh)	other	<b>poichè</b> (poy-KEH)	since
		<b>pronto</b> (PROHN-toh)	ready

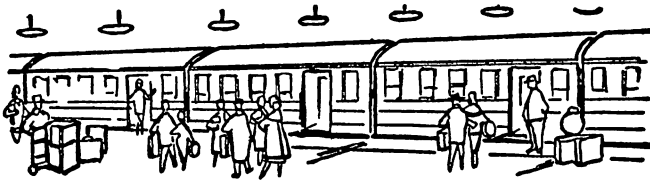
## MEZZI DI TRASPORTO

## MEANS OF TRANSPORTATION

(MEH-dzee dee trah-SPOHR-toh)

il treno (TREH-noh)	train
la stazione (stah-TSYOH-neh)	station
il biglietto (bee-L'YEHT-toh)	ticket
la carrozza (kahr-ROH-tsah)	railroad car
la ferrovia <sup>4</sup> (fehr-roh-VEE'ah)	railroad
l'orario (loh-RAH-ree'oh)	timetable

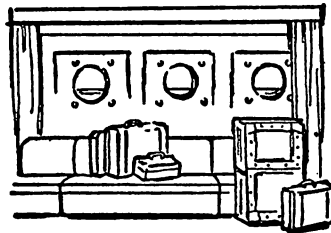
il bagaglio (bah-GAH-l'yee)	baggage
la ricevuta dei bagagli (lah ree-cheh-vooh-tah . . .)	baggage check
or lo scontrino (skohn-TREE-noh)	
depositare (dch-poh-zee-TAH-reh)	to check, deposit
il deposito dei bagagli (deh-POH-zee-toh . . .)	baggage room



lo scompartimento (skohm-pahr-tee-MEHN-toh)	compartment
andata e ritorno <sup>5</sup> (ahn-DAH-tah eh ree-TOHR-noh)	round-trip
un'agenzia di viaggi (oo-nah-jehn-TSEE'ah dee VYAH-djee)	a travel agency
un autobus (AH'oo-toh-boos)	a bus
prenotare (preh-noh-TAH-reh)	to reserve
lo sportello dei biglietti (loh spohr-TEHL-loh DAY)	
bee-L'YEHT-tee) or la biglietteria (bee-l'yeh-tah-REE'ah)	ticket window

il baule (bah-oo-leh)	trunk
la valigia (vah-LEE-jah)	valise
il vapore (vah-POH-reh)	steamboat
la cabina (kah-BEE-nah)	cabin
il porto (POHR-toh)	port
il molo (MOH-loh)	pier
il pilota (pee-LOH-tah)	pilot

il tram, tranvai (TRAHM, TRAHN-vah'y)	street car
la bicicletta (bee-chee-KLEH-tah)	bicycle



il motore (moh-TOH-reh)	motor
un tassì (tahs-SEE)	a taxi

CONVERSATION

1 Mi vuol<sup>o</sup> dire dov'è la stazione, per piacere?

2 Ci sono diverse stazioni. Dove deve andare?

3 Devo andare a Milano.

4 Per<sup>7</sup> andare a Milano deve prendere il treno alla Stazione Centrale.

5 A che ora parte il primo treno?

6 Il primo treno parte di mattina<sup>8</sup> presto.

7 Allora bisognerà<sup>9</sup> prendere un tassì per arrivare più presto, perchè gli autobus passano raramente a quell'ora.

8 Sono pronti i suoi bagagli?

9 Sì, le mie valigie ed i miei bauli sono già alla stazione.

10 Vuole avere la bontà di dirmi dov'è la biglietteria?

11 Quanto costa un biglietto di terza classe<sup>10</sup> per Milano, andata e ritorno?




---

FOOTNOTES: 1. *Lit.*, "will you have the kindness." *Bontà* is followed by the word *di* before the infinitive. 2. *Trovarsi* is a reflexive verb. *Lit.*, it means "to find oneself." The present tense is: *io mi trovo, tu ti trovi, lei si trova, noi ci troviamo, voi vi trovate, loro si trovano*. The reflexive pronouns always precede the verb, except when the infinitive form is used, in which case the reflexive pronouns are attached to it. Almost any verb can be made reflexive if it makes sense. At times the Italian expression may be reflexive whereas the English equivalent

## PRONUNCIATION

- 1 mee vWOHL DEE-reh doh-VEH lah stah-TSYOH-neh, pehr pyah-CHEH-reh?
- 2 chee SOH-noh dee-VEHR-seh stah-TSYOH-nee. DOH-veh DEH-veh ahn-DAH-reh?
- 3 DEH-voH ahn-DAH-reh ah mee-LAH-noh.
- 4 . . . PREHN-deh-reh eel TREH-noh AHL-lah stah-TSYOH-neh chehn-TRAH-leh.
- 5 ah keh OH-rah PAHR-teh eel FREE-moh TREH-noh?
- 6 . . . PAHR-teh dee maht-TEE-nah PREH-stoh . . .
- 7 ahl-LOH-rah bee-zoh-n'yeh-RAH PREHN-deh-reh oon tahs-SEE pehr ahr-ree-VAH-reh PYOO PREH-stoh, pehr-KEH l'yee AH'oo-toh-boos PAHS-sah-noh rah-rah-MEHN-teh ah kwehl-LOH-rah.
- 8 SOH-noh PROHN-tee ee SWOY bah-GAH-l'yee?
- 9 SEE, leh MEE'eh vah-LEE-jeh ed ee M'YAY bah-OO-lee SOH-noh JAH AHL-lah stah-TSYOH-neh.
- 10 vWOH-leh ah-VEH-reh lah bohntah dee DEER-mee doh-VEH lah bee-l'yeh-t-teh-REE'ah?
- 11 KWahn-toh KOH-stah oon bee-L'YEHT-toh dee TEHR-tseh KLAHS-seh pehr mee-LAH-noh, ahn-DAH-tah eh ree-TOHR-noh?

## TRANSLATION

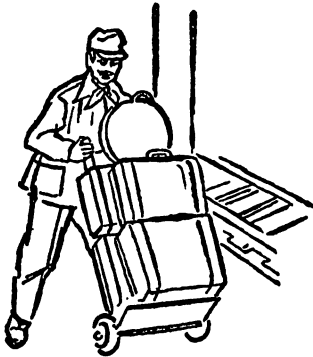
- Will you please tell me where the station is.
- There are several stations. Where must you go?
- I must go to Milan.
- To go to Milan you must take the train at the Central Station.
- At what time does the first train leave?
- The first train leaves early in the morning.
- Then we will have to take a taxi to arrive early, because the buses run infrequently at that hour.
- Is your baggage ready?
- Yes, my suitcases and my trunks are already at the station.
- Will you kindly tell me where the ticket office is?
- How much does a third class round-trip ticket to (*lit.*, for) Milan cost?

---

is not, as in this case. See Reference Grammar. 3. A kilogram is a little over two pounds, and is the standard weight in Italy. 4. *Ferrovia* is composed of two words: *ferro* and *via*. *Lit.* "road of iron." 5. *Andata e ritorno* is an idiom. *Lit.* "going and returning." 6. *Vuol* is *vuole* without the final *e*, which is usually dropped before another verb for the sake of euphony. 7. *Per* before an infinitive means "in order to." 8. *Di mattina* is an idiom which means "in the morning." Likewise we have *di giorno*, *di sera*, *di notte*, etc. 9. *Bisognerà* is a form of the

12 Per quanto tempo è valido questo biglietto?

13 Un biglietto di andata e ritorno è valido per trenta giorni.



14 Dov'è il deposito di bagagli?<sup>11</sup>  
Voglio depositare i miei baui.

15 Mi vuol dare, per piacere, lo  
scontrino dei miei bagagli?

16 Ecco la sua ricevuta, signora  
Bianchi.

17 Quanto pesa il mio baule?

18 Il suo baule pesa cinquanta chili.

19 Mettiamoci in vettura<sup>12</sup> poichè il treno sta per<sup>18</sup>  
partire.

20 Ecco un buon sedile in uno scompartimento di terza.  
Per favore,<sup>14</sup> ha l'orario ferroviario?

21 No, ma so che il treno arriverà<sup>15</sup> domani mattina alle<sup>16</sup>  
otto.

22 Allora arriveremo in tempo per prendere il vapore.

23 Ha prenotato<sup>17</sup> la<sup>18</sup> cabina?

---

future of *bisognare*. This verb is normally used only in the third person.  
10. There are three classes on Italian trains. The third class is the least expensive.  
11. The singular of *bagagli* is *bagaglio*. Words ending in *io* drop the *o* in the plural, unless the *i* is stressed, in which case you change *o* to *i*. Ex.: *zio* (uncle), *zii*.  
12. In a general sense *vettura* means any sort of conveyance. In reference to a train it means "a railroad car." 13. *Stare per* is an idiom meaning "to be about to." 14. *Per favore* is used interchangeably with *per piacere*. 15. *Arriverà* is a future form of *arrivare*: *io arriverò, tu arriverai, lei arriverà, noi arriveremo, voi arriverete, loro arriveranno*. All first and second conjugation regular verbs form

- 12 pehr KWahn-toh TEHM-poh EH VAH-lee-doh KWEH-stoh bee-  
L'YEHT-toh? For how long (*lit.*, how much time) is this ticket valid?
- 13 . . . ahn-DAH-tah eh ree-TOHR-noh EH VAH-lee-doh pehr TREHN-tah JOHR-nee. A round-trip ticket is valid for thirty days.
- 14 doh-VEH eel deh-POH-zee-toh dee bah-GAH-l'yee? VOH-l'yoh deh-poh-zee-TAH-reh ee M'YAY bah-oo-lee. Where is the baggage room? I want to check my trunks.
- 15 mee VWOHL DAH-reh . . . skohn-tree-noh day M'YAY bah-GAH-l'yee? Will you please give me my baggage check.
- 16 EHK-koh lah soo'ah ree-cheh-VOO-tah, see-N'YOH-rah BYAHN-kee. Here is your check, Mrs. Bianchi.
- 17 KWahn-toh PEH-zah eel MEE'oh bah-oo-leh? How much does my trunk weigh?
- 18 eel soo'oh bah-oo-leh PEH-zah cheen-KWahn-tah KEE-lee. Your trunk weighs fifty kilograms.
- 19 meht-TYAH-moh-chee een veht-TOO-rah poy-KEH eel TREH-noh stah pehr pahr-TEE-reh. Let's get on the train since it is about to leave.
- 20 EHK-koh oon BWOHN seh-DEE-leh een oo-noh skohm-pahr-tee-MEHN-toh dee TEHR-tsah. pehr fah-VOH-reh, ah loh-RAH-ryoh fehr-roh-VYAH-ryoh? Here is a good seat in a third-class compartment. Do you have the timetable, please?
- 21 NOH, mah SOH keh eel TREH-noh ahr-ree-veh-RAH doh-MAH-nee maht-TEE-nah AHL-leh OHT-toh. No, but I know that the train will arrive tomorrow morning at eight.
- 22 ahl-LOH-rah ahr-ree-veh-REH-moh een TEHM-poh pehr PREHN-deh-reh eel vah-POH-reh. Then we shall arrive on time to take the boat.
- 23 ah preh-noh-TAH-toh lah kah-BEE-nah? Have you reserved a cabin?

---

the future in the same manner; that is, by adding the endings *erò, erai, erà, eremo, erete, eranno* to the stem of the verb. 16. *Alle* is a contraction of *a* and *le*. In Italian the definite article is used before the hours, whereas in English it is not. 17. *Ha prenotato* is a form of the present perfect of *prenotare*. The past participle of the first conjugation verbs ends in *ato* and is preceded by the present of the auxiliary verb *avere*. See Note 11, Lesson 3. 18. The definite article is used before *cabina* because in this case it refers to a definite cabin, your cabin.

**56 THE CORTINA METHOD**

**24** Non ancora, ma spero trovarne<sup>19</sup> una libera<sup>20</sup> anche senza prenotazione.

**25** Il signor Bianchi va a Londra in aereo.<sup>21</sup>

**26** Veramente? Mi piacerebbe<sup>22</sup> fare un viaggio in aereo.

**27** Vorrei visitare l'aeroporto prima d'imbarcarmi.<sup>23</sup>

**28** Benissimo. Visiteremo l'aeroporto da dove partono gli aeroplani transatlantici.



---

**19.** Like the other object pronouns *ne* is attached to the infinitive. **20.** *Libera* normally means "free." In this case it means "available." **21.** It is common use to say *in aereo* rather than *in aeroplano*. **22.** *Piacerebbe* is a form of the condi-

- 24 nohn ahn-KOH-rah, mah SPEH-roh troh-VAHR-neh oo-nah LEE-beh-rah AHN-keh SEHN-tsah preh-noh-tah-TSYOH-neh.
- 25 eel see-N'YOHR BYAHN-kee vah ah LOHN-drah een ah-EH-reh'oh.
- 26 veh-rah-MEHN-teh? mee pyah-cheh-REHB-beh FAH-reh oon VYAH-djoh een ah-EH-reh'oh.
- 27 VOHR-RAY vee-zee-TAH-reh lah'eh-roh-POHR-toh FREE-mah deem-bahr-KAHR-mee.
- 28 beh-NEES-see-moh. vee-zee-teh-REH-moh lah'eh-roh-POHR-toh dah DOH-veh PAHR-tohnoh l'yee ah'eh-roh-FLAH-nee trahn-saht-LAHN-tee-chee.
- Not yet, but I hope to find one available even without a reservation.
- Mr. Bianchi is going to London by plane.
- Really? I should like to take a trip by (*lit.*, in) plane.
- I should like to visit the airport before sailing.
- Very well. We shall visit the airport from which (*lit.*, where) the transatlantic planes leave.

---

tional of *piacere*. This verb is used mostly in the third person. 23. *Imbarcarsi* is a reflexive verb. Like other pronouns *mi* (myself) is attached to the infinitive.





# Quinta Lezione

## Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

sa lei? (sah LAY)	do you know?	una volta (VOHL-tah)	once, one time
quale (KWAH-leh)	which	il doppio (DOHP-pyoh)	double
spesso (SPEHS-soh)	often	fino a (FEE-noh ah)	up to, until, as far as
più (PYOO)	more	ci (CHEE)	there (place already mentioned)
meno <sup>1</sup> (MEH-noh)	less	là (LAH)	there
tanto (TAHN-toh)	so much, as much		
contare (kohn-TAH-reh)	to count		
il quaderno (kwah-DEHR-noh)	notebook		
la prima volta (FREE-mah . . .)	the first time		
l'ultima volta (LOOL-tee-mah . . .)	the last time		
press'a poco <sup>2</sup> (prehs-sah-POH-koh)	just about		
una quindicina (kween-dee-CHEE-nah)	two weeks, ( <i>lit.</i> , fifteen days)		
una ventina (vehn-TEE-nah)	about twenty		
un centinaio (chehn-tee-NAH'yoh)	about a hundred		



## I NUMERI CARDINALI

### THE CARDINAL NUMBERS

(ee noo-meh-ree kahr-dee-NAH-lee)

- |                               |                                       |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 0. zero (DZEH-roh)            | 8. otto (OHT-toh)                     |
| 1. uno (OO-noh), una (OO-nah) | 9. nove (NOH-veh)                     |
| 2. due (DOO'eh)               | 10. dieci (DYEH-chee)                 |
| 3. tre (TREH)                 | 11. undici (OON-dee-chee)             |
| 4. quattro (KWAHT-troh)       | 12. dodici (DOH-dee-chee)             |
| 5. cinque (CHEEN-kweh)        | 13. tredici (TREH-dee-chee)           |
| 6. sei (SAY)                  | 14. quattordici (kwaht-TOHR-dee-chee) |
| 7. sette (SEHT-teh)           | 15. quindici (KWEEN-dee-chee)         |

## I NUMERI CARDINALI

(CONTINUED)

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 16. sedici (SEH-dee-chee)               | 28. ventotto (vehn-TOHT-toh)          |
| 17. diciassette (dee-chahs-SEHT-teh)    | 29. ventinove (vehn-tee-NOH-veh)      |
| 18. diciotto (dee-CHOHT-toh)            | 30. trenta (TREHN-tah)                |
| 19. diciannove (dee-chahn-NOH-veh)      | 31. trentuno (trehn-TOO-noh)          |
| 20. venti (VEHN-tee)                    | 32. trentadue (trehn-tah-DOO'eh)      |
| 21. ventuno (vehn-TOO-noh)              | 40. quaranta (kwah-RAHN-tah)          |
| 22. ventidue (vehn-tee-DOO'eh)          | 50. cinquanta (cheen-KWAHN-tah)       |
| 23. ventitrè (vehn-tee-TREH)            | 60. sessanta (sehs-SAHN-tah)          |
| 24. ventiquattro (. . . KWAHT-troh)     | 70. settanta (seht-TAHN-tah)          |
| 25. venticinque (. . . -CHEEN-kweh)     | 80. ottanta (oht-TAHN-tah)            |
| 26. ventisei (vehn-tee-SAY)             | 90. novanta (noh-VAHN-tah)            |
| 27. ventisette (vehn-tee-SEHT-teh)      |                                       |
| 100. cento <sup>3</sup> (CHEHN-toh)     | 200. duecento (doo'eh-CHEHN-toh)      |
| 101. cento uno (CHEHN-toh OO-noh)       | 210. duecento dieci (. . . DYEh-chee) |
| 123. cento ventitrè (. . vahn-tee-TREH) | 400. quattrocento (kwaht-troh . . .)  |
| 869. ottocento sessantanove             | 7900. sette mila novecento            |
| 1000. mille <sup>4</sup>                | 50,000. cinquanta mila                |
| 1492. mille quattrocento novantadue     | 100,000. cento mila                   |
| 2000. due mila <sup>5</sup>             | 1,000,000. un milione <sup>6</sup>    |

## I Numeri Ordinali

### THE ORDINAL NUMBERS

(ee NOO-meh-ree ohr-dee-NAH-lee)

primo (PREE-moh)	first	sesto (SEH-stoh)	sixth
secondo (seh-KOHN-doh)	second	settimo (SEHT-tee-moh)	seventh
terzo (TEHR-tsoh)	third	ottavo (oht-TAH-voh)	eighth
quarto (KWAHR-toh)	fourth	nono (NOH-noh)	ninth
quinto (KWEEN-toh)	fifth	decimo (DEH-chee-moh)	tenth
	undicesimo <sup>7</sup> (oon-dee-CHEH-zee-moh)		eleventh
	dodicesimo (doh-dee-CHEH-zee-moh)		twelfth

## Le Frazioni

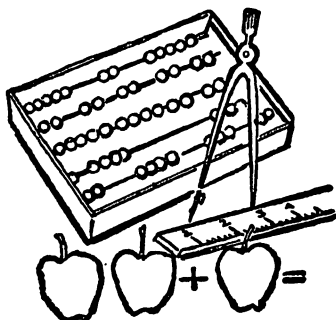
### THE FRACTIONS

(leh frah-TSYOH-nee)

la metà (meh-TAH), mezzo (MEH-dzoh)	half
un terzo (oon TEHR-tsoh)	a third
un quarto (oon KWAHR-toh)	one fourth
tre quarti (TREH KWAHR-tee)	three quarters
un quindicesimo (oon kween-dee-CHEH-zee-moh)	one fifteenth

## CONVERSATION

- 1 Sa<sup>8</sup> contare lei?
- 2 Sì, so contare.
- 3 Vuole contare, per piacere?
- 4 Sì. Uno, due, tre, quattro, cinque.
- 5 Lei ha contato da uno a cinque.



- 6 Sa<sup>8</sup> contare da uno a cento la signorina Romano?
- 7 Sì, signore, io so contare da uno a cento.
- 8 Quali<sup>9</sup> sono i numeri ordinali, signor Lanza?
- 9 I numeri ordinali sono: primo, secondo, terzo, quarto, quinto, eccetera.

10 Ho dieci libri. Quanti libri ha lei?

11 Ne<sup>10</sup> ho la metà. Ne ho cinque.

12 Allora lei ha tanti<sup>11</sup> libri quanti<sup>11</sup> ne ho io, non è vero?

13 No, io ho meno libri di<sup>12</sup> lei.

14 La signorina Ferrara ha tre cappelli ed io non ne ho che<sup>13</sup> uno.

15 Ella ha più cappelli di me.<sup>14</sup>

---

FOOTNOTES: 1. *Più* and *meno* are followed by *di* before a number, a noun, or a pronoun. 2. *Press'a poco* is an idiom. 3. *Cento* (one hundred) does not take *un* before it. *Cento* does not change its form. 4. *Mille* (one thousand) does not take *un* before it. 5. Note that the plural of *mille* is *mila*.

PRONUNCIATION

- 1 sah kohn-TAH-reh LAY?
- 2 SEE, EE'oh soh kohn-TAH-reh.
- 3 VWOH-leh kohn-TAH-reh, pehr pyah-CHEH-reh?
- 4 SEE. OO-noh, DOO'eh, TREH, KWAHT-troh, CHEEN-kweh.
- 5 LAY ah kohn-TAH-toh dah oo-noh ah CHEEN-kweh.
  
- 6 sah kohn-TAH-reh dah oo-noh ah CHEHN-toh lah see-n'yoh-REE-nah roh-MAH-noh?
- 7 SEE, see-N'YOH-reh, EE'oh soh kohn-TAH-reh dah oo-noh ah CHEHN-toh.
- 8 KWAH-lee SOH-noh ee NOO-meh-ree ohr-dee-NAH-lee, see-N'YOHR LAHN-tzah?
- 9 . . . FREE-moh, seh-KOHN-doh, TEHR-tsoh, KWAHR-toh, KWEEN-toh, eh-CHEH-teh-rah.
- 10 EE'oh OH DYEH-chee LEE-bree. KWAHN-tee LEE-bree AH LAY?
  
- 11 EE'oh neh OH lah meh-TAH. neh OH CHEEN-kweh.
- 12 ahl-LOH-rah lay AH TAHN-tee LEE-bree KWAHN-tee neh OH EE'oh, nohn EH VEH-toh?
- 13 NOH, EE'oh OH MEH-noh LEE-bree dee LAY.
- 14 lah see-n'yoh-REE-nah fehr-RAH-rah AH TREH kahp-PEHL-lee ed EE'oh NOHN neh OH keh oo-noh.
- 15 EHL-lah AH PYOO kahp-PEHL-lee dee MEH.

TRANSLATION

- Do you know how to count?  
Yes, I know how to count.  
Will you count, please?  
Yes. One, two, three, four, five.  
You have counted from one to five.
- Does Miss Romano know how to count from one to one hundred?  
Yes, sir, I know how to count from one to one hundred.
- What are the ordinal numbers, Mr. Lanza?  
The ordinal numbers are: first, second, third, fourth, fifth, etc.
- I have ten books. How many books have you?  
I have half as many (*lit.*, the half of them). I have five.  
Then you have as many books as I, don't you (*lit.*, isn't that true)?  
No, I have fewer (*lit.*, less) books than you.  
Miss Ferrara has three hats and I have only one.  
She has more hats than I.

---

6. Note that *un milione*, unlike *cento* and *mille*, does take *un* in front of it. 7. Beginning with *undici*, the ordinal numbers in Italian are formed by dropping the final vowel of the number and adding *-esimo*. However, numbers ending in *trè* drop the accent but not the *e*. Ex.: *ventitrè* becomes *ventitreesimo*. 8. Any

16 Una volta io ho comprato una ventina di camicie.



17 E perchè tante?<sup>15</sup> La prossima volta non ne compri<sup>16</sup> tante.

18 L'ultima volta che<sup>17</sup> sono<sup>18</sup> stato<sup>19</sup> a Torino ho comprato un bel<sup>20</sup> vestito in quella bella<sup>20</sup> città.

19 Io sono stato a Torino almeno venti volte.

20 Questa volta voglio andare a Genova.

21 Un biglietto ferroviario per la Svizzera<sup>21</sup> costa il doppio di quello per Bologna, non è vero?

22 Sì, press'a poco. E il viaggio da Genova a Venezia costa quasi lo stesso che<sup>22</sup> un viaggio a Firenze.

---

form of *sapere* followed by an infinitive means "to know how." 9. The singular of *quali*, an interrogative adjective, is *quale* (masc. and fem.). *Quale* and *quali* are also interrogative pronouns. 10. *Ne*, meaning "of it, of them, some, any, etc." is never omitted in Italian, whereas its English equivalent often is omitted. 11. *Tanto* and *quanto* are used in the comparative of equality. They agree with the noun to which they refer. 12. The word "than" is usually translated by *di* before a noun, pronoun, or number. 13. *Non . . . (verb) . . . che* is an idiomatic expression meaning "only." *Soltanto*, *solo*, or *solamente* can be used instead of *non . . . che*. 14. *Me* is a pronoun which follows a preposition, unlike the direct and indirect object pronouns. Pronouns unrelated to the verb are called disjunctive pronouns. See Reference Grammar. 15. Notice that *tante* agrees with *camicie*,

- 16 oo-na VOHL-tah EE'oh OH kohm-PRAH-toh oo-nah vehn-TEE-nah dee kah-MEE-cheh. Once I bought about twenty shirts.
- 17 eh pehr-KEH TAHN-teh? lah PROH-see-mah VOHL-tah NOHN neh KOHM-pree TAHN-teh. And why so many? Next time don't buy so many.
- 18 LOOL-tee-mah VOHL-tah keh SOH-noh STAH-toh ah toh-REE-noh oh kohm-PRAH-toh oon behl veh-STEE-toh een KWEHL-lah BEHL-lah cheet-TAH. The last time I went to Turin I bought a fine suit in that beautiful city.
- 19 EE'oh SOH-noh STAH-toh ah toh-REE-noh ahl-MEH-noh VEHN-tee VOHL-teh. I have been in Turin at least twenty times.
- 20 KWEH-stah VOHL-tah VOH-l'yoh ahn-DAH-reh ah JEH-noh-vah. This time I want to go to Genoa.
- 21 oon bee-L'YEHT-toh fehr-roh-VYAH-ryoh pehr lah ZVEE-tseh-rah KOH-stah eel DOHP-pyoh dee KWEHL-loh pehr boh-LOH-n'yah, nohn EH VEH-roh? A railroad ticket for Switzerland costs twice as much (*lit.*, double) as one (*lit.*, that) for Bologna, doesn't it?
- 22 SEE, prehs-sah-POH-koh. eh eel VYAH-djoh dah JEH-noh-vah ah veh-NEH-tsyah KOH-stah KWAH-zee loh STEHS-soh keh oon VYAH-djoh ah fee-REHN-tseh. Yes, just about. And the trip from Genoa to Venice costs almost as much (*lit.*, the same) as a trip to Florence.

---

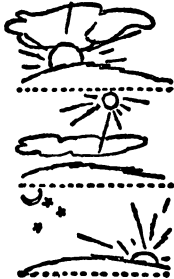
which is feminine plural. 16. *Compri* is the *lei* form of the imperative of *comprare*. 17. The relative pronoun *che* (that) is never omitted in Italian, as it frequently is in English. 18. *Sono* is a form of the present of *essere* (to be): *io sono, tu sei, lei è, noi siamo, voi siete, loro sono*. 19. *Sono stato* is a form of the present perfect of *essere*, which takes its own present tense as an auxiliary. In verbs conjugated with *essere* the past participle agrees with the subject. Ex.: *ella è stata* (she has been or was). 20. *bel* is used before a singular masculine noun if it does not begin with *z, s-impura*, or a vowel. The feminine form is always *bella*. 21. *La Svizzera* (Switzerland): In Italian names of countries are preceded by the definite article. 22. *Che* is used here in a comparative of equality, and means "as."



## Sesta Lezione

### Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

<b>il freddo</b> (FREHD-doh)	the cold	<b>il sole</b> (SOH-leh)	the sun
<b>fa freddo</b> <sup>1</sup> (fah . . .)	it (the weather) is cold	<b>ieri</b> (YEH-ree)	yesterday
<b>il caldo</b> (KAHL-doh)	the heat	<b>l'altro ieri</b> (LAHL-troh...)	day before yesterday
<b>fa caldo</b> (fah KAHL-doh)		<b>il</b> (the weather) is warm, hot	
<b>fa bel</b> <sup>2</sup> tempo (fah behl TEHM-poh)		<b>il</b> the weather is fine	
<b>dopodomani</b> (doh-poh-doh-MAH-nee)		<b>il</b> the day after tomorrow	
<b>la giornata</b> (johr-NAH-tah)		<b>il</b> the day (in its duration)	
<b>oggi</b> (OH-djee)	today	<b>mite</b> (MEE-teh)	mild
<b>domani</b> (doh-MAH-nee)	tomorrow	<b>durare</b> (DOO-RAH-reh)	to last
<b>l'alba</b> (LAHL-bah)	dawn	<b>nè . . . nè</b> (NEH . . . NEH)	neither . . . nor



<b>il levar del sole</b> <sup>3</sup> (leh-VAHR dehl SOH-leh)	sunrise
<b>il mattino</b> (maht-TEE-noh)	morning
<b>mezzogiorno</b> (meh-dzoh-JOHR-noh)	noon
<b>il pomeriggio</b> (poh-meh-REE-joh)	afternoon
<b>il tramonto</b> (trah-MOHN-toh)	sunset
<b>il sole tramonta</b> (SOH-leh trah-MOHN-tah)	the sun is setting
<b>mezzanotte</b> ( <i>fem.</i> ) (meh-dzah-NOHT-teh)	midnight

<b>la settimana</b> (seht-tee-MAH-nah)	week
<b>la settimana scorsa</b> <sup>4</sup> (seht-tee-MAH-nah SKOHR-sah)	last week
<b>la settimana prossima</b> <sup>4</sup> (. . . PROHS-see-mah)	next week
<b>il mese prossimo</b> (MEH-zeh PROHS-see-moh)	next month
<b>il mese scorso</b> (. . . SKOHR-soh)	last month
<b>un giorno di vacanza</b> <sup>5</sup> (oon JOHR-noh dee vah-KAHN-tsah)	a holiday
<b>il clima</b> <sup>6</sup> (KLEE-mah)	climate

## I GIORNI • I MESI • LE STAGIONI<sup>7</sup>

THE DAYS, THE MONTHS,  
THE SEASONS

(ee JOHR-nee, ee MEH-zee,  
leh stah-JOH-nee)

### I GIORNI

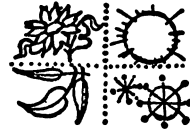
<b>lunedì</b> <sup>8</sup> (loo-neh-DEE)	Monday	<b>venerdì</b> (veh-nehr-DEE)	Friday
<b>martedì</b> (mahr-teh-DEE)	Tuesday	<b>sabato</b> (SAH-bah-toh)	Saturday
<b>mercoledì</b> (mehr-koh-leh-DEE)	Wednesday	<b>domenica</b> (doh-MEH-nee-kah)	Sunday
<b>giovedì</b> (joh-veh-DEE)	Thursday		

### I MESI

<b>gennaio</b> (jehn-NAH-yoh)	January	<b>settembre</b>	September
<b>febbraio</b> (fehb-BRAH-yoh)	February	(seht-TEHM-breH)	
<b>marzo</b> (MAHR-tsoh)	March	<b>ottobre</b>	October
<b>aprile</b> (ah-PREE-leh)	April	(ohT-toH-breH)	
<b>maggio</b> (MAH-djoh)	May	<b>novembre</b>	November
<b>giugno</b> (JOO-n'yoh)	June	(noH-VEHM-breH)	
<b>luglio</b> (LOO-l'yoh)	July	<b>dicembre</b>	December
<b>agosto</b> (ah-GOH-stoh)	August	(dee-CHEHM-breH)	

### LE STAGIONI

<b>la primavera</b> <sup>9</sup> (lah pree-mah-VEH-rah)	spring
<b>l'estate</b> ( <i>fem.</i> ) (leh-STAH-teh)	summer
<b>l'autunno</b> (lah'oo-TOON-noh)	autumn
<b>l'inverno</b> (leen-VEHR-noh)	winter



<b>il tempo</b> (TEHM-poh)	weather
<b>fa cattivo tempo</b> (kaht-TEE-voh . . .)	the weather is bad
<b>il sole brilla</b> (eel soh-leh BREEL-lah)	the sun is shining
<b>il mese</b> (MEH-zeh)	month
<b>l'anno</b> (LAHN-noh)	year
<b>il secolo</b> (SEH-koh-loh)	century
<b>il riposo</b> (ree-POH-zoh)	rest (repose)
<b>si compone</b> (see kohm-POH-neh)	is composed, it is composed
<b>cominciare</b> (koh-meen-CHAH-reh)	to begin
<b>che cosa è?</b> (keh KOH-zah EH)	what is?
<b>cioè</b> (choh'EH)	that is, that is to say



CONVERSATION

- 1 Come si compone la giornata?
- 2 La giornata si compone del mattino,<sup>10</sup> del pomeriggio e della sera.
- 3 Il mattino dura fino a mezzogiorno. Il pomeriggio dura fino al tramonto.
- 4 Quando comincia la sera?



5 Generalmente parlando, la sera comincia dopo il tramonto.

6 Che cosa è l'alba?

7 L'alba è il primo chiarore<sup>11</sup> dopo la notte, e precede lo spuntar del sole.<sup>12</sup>

8 Quanti giorni ci sono in una settimana?

9 La settimana è composta<sup>13</sup> di sette giorni.

10 Quale giorno della settimana è questo?

11 Oggi è lunedì,<sup>14</sup> che è il primo giorno della settimana. L'ultimo giorno della settimana è domenica, che è un giorno di vacanza e di riposo.

12 Che giorno sarà domani?

---

FOOTNOTES: 1. *Fa* (from the verb *fare*) is here used impersonally. *Lit.*, "it makes cold." This impersonal form is used in several expressions relating to the weather. 2. *Bel* (beautiful) is the form used before a singular masculine noun. After a noun it becomes *bello*. The feminine form is always *bella*. 3. *Lit.*, the rising of

## PRONUNCIATION

## TRANSLATION

- 1 KOH-meh see kohm-POH-neh lah johr-NAH-tah? How is the day divided (*lit.*, composed)?
- 2 . . . dehl maht-TEE-noh, dehl poh-meh-REE-djoh eh DEHL-lah SEH-rah. The day is composed of the morning, the afternoon, and the evening.
- 3 eel maht-TEE-noh DOO-rah FEE-noh ah meh-dzoh-JOHR-noh. eel poh-meh-REE-djoh DOO-rah FEE-noh ahl trah-MOHN-toh. The morning lasts until noon. The afternoon lasts until sunset.
- 4 KWAHN-doh koh-MEEN-chah lah SEH-rah? When does the evening begin?
- 5 jeh-neh-rah!-MEHN-teh pah-LAHN-doh, lah SEH-rah koh-MEEN-chah DOH-poh . . . Generally speaking, the evening begins after sunset.
- 6 keh KOH-zah EH LAHL-bah? What is dawn?
- 7 LAHL-bah EH eel FREE-moh kyah-ROH-reh DOH-poh lah NOHT-teh, eh preh-CHEH-deh loh spoon-TAHR dehl SOH-leh. Dawn is the first light after the night and precedes sunrise.
- 8 KWAHN-tee JOHR-nee chee SOH-noh een OO-nah seht-tee-MAH-nah? How many days are there in a week?
- 9 lah seht-tee-MAH-nah EH kohm-POH-stah dee SEHT-teh JOHR-nee. The week is composed of seven days.
- 10 KWAH-leh JOHR-noh DEHL-lah seht-tee-MAH-nah EH KWEH-stoh? What day of the week is this?
- 11 OH-djee EH loo-neh-DEE, keh EH eel FREE-moh . . . LOOL-tee-moh . . . doh-MEH-nee-kah, . . . dee vah-KAHN-tsah eh dee ree-POH-zoh. Today is Monday, which is the first day of the week. The last day of the week is Sunday, which is a day of vacation and rest.
- 12 keh JOHR-noh sah-RAH doh-MAH-nee? What day will it be tomorrow?

---

the sun. 4. The words *scorsa* and *prossima* may either follow or precede the noun. 5. *Lit.*, a day of vacation. 6. Although the great majority of words ending in *a* are feminine, there are several that are masculine. *Clima* is one of these. 7. Days, months, and seasons are not capitalized in Italian. 8. The days

13 Domani sarà martedì e dopodomani sarà mercoledì.

14 È stato mercoledì ieri?

15 No, signore, è stata<sup>15</sup> domenica e l'altro ieri è stato<sup>15</sup> sabato.

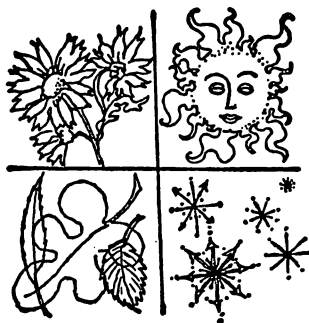
16 Mi può dire come si divide l'anno?

17 L'anno si divide in dodici mesi.

18 Che mese è questo?

19 Questo è il mese di settembre, il mese prossimo sarà ottobre, ed il mese scorso è stato <sup>16</sup> agosto.

20 Qual'è il primo mese dell'anno?



21 Il primo mese dell'anno è gennaio.

22 Quante stagioni ci sono in un anno?

23 L'anno ha quattro stagioni: la primavera, l'estate, l'autunno e l'inverno.

24 Quali sono i mesi della primavera?

25 I mesi della primavera sono: marzo, aprile e maggio.

---

of the week are masculine, except *domenica*, which is feminine. 9. The names of the seasons require the definite article before them. 10. *Il mattino* or *la mattina*. The masculine form is more properly used when referring to the light, or atmospheric conditions, or when used figuratively, as in *il mattino della vita* (the morning of life). 11. *Chiarore* is a synonym for *luce* (fem.). 12. *Lo*

- 13 doh-MAH-nee sah-RAH mahr-teh-DEE eh doh-poh-doh-MAH-nee sah-RAH mehr-koh-leh-DEE. Tomorrow will be Tuesday and the following day (*lit.*, after tomorrow) will be Wednesday.
- 14 EH STAH-toh mehr-koh-leh-DEE YEH-ree? Was yesterday Wednesday?
- 15 . . . EH STAH-tah doh-MEH-nee-kah, eh LAHL-troh YEH-ree eh STAH-toh SAH-bah-toh. No, sir, it was Sunday, and the day before (*lit.*, the other yesterday) was Saturday.
- 16 mee FWOH DEE-teh KOH-meh see dee-VEE-deh LAHN-noh? Can you tell me how the year is divided?
- 17 LAHN-noh see dee-VEE-deh een DOH-dee-chee MEH-zee. The year is divided into twelve months.
- 18 keh MEH-zeh EH KWEH-stoh? What month is this?
- 19 KWEH-stoh EH eel MEH-zeh dee seht-TEHM-breh, eel MEH-zeh PROHS-see-moh sah-RAH oht-TOH-breh ed eel MEH-zeh SKOHR-soh eh STAH-toh ah-GOH-stoh. This is the month of September, next month will be October, and last month was August.
- 20 kwah-LEH eel FREE-moh MEH-zeh dehl-LAHN-noh? Which is the first month of the year?
- 21 eel FREE-moh MEH-zeh dehl-LAHN-noh EH jehn-NAH-yoh. The first month of the year is January.
- 22 KWAHN-teh stah-JOH-nee chee SOH-noh een OON AHN-noh? How many seasons are there in a year?
- 23 LAHN-noh ah KWAHT-troh stah-JOH-nee: lah pree-mah-VEH-rah, leh-STAH-teh, lah'oo-TOON-noh eh leen-VEHR-noh. The year has four seasons: spring, summer, autumn, and winter.
- 24 KWAH-lee SOH-noh ee MEH-zee DEHL-lah pree-mah-VEH-rah? What are the months of spring?
- 25 . . . MAHR-tsoh, ah-FREE-leh eh MAH-djoh. The months of spring are: March, April, and May.

---

*spuntar del sole* literally means "the appearing of the sun." 13. *E composta* is a synonym for *si compone*. 14. In Italy Monday is considered the first day of the week. 15. See Note 19, Lesson 5. 16. The present perfect is used here because *il mese scorso* is a recent occurrence.

**70 THE CORTINA METHOD**

**26** Fa bel tempo o cattivo tempo in questa stagione?

**27** Nella primavera generalmente fa bel tempo ed il clima è mite, cioè non fa nè troppo freddo, nè troppo caldo.

**28** Quali sono i mesi dell'estate?

**29** I mesi dell'estate sono: giugno, luglio e agosto.

**30** Fa freddo in questa stagione?

**31** No, signore, d'estate fa sempre caldo.

**32** Quanti anni ci sono in un secolo?

**33** In un secolo ci sono cento anni.

- 26 fah behl TEHM-poh oh kaht-TEE-  
voh TEHM-poh een KWEH-stah  
stah-JOH-neh? Is the weather good or bad in this  
season?
- 27 . . . jeh-neh-rahl-MEHN-teh fah  
behl TEHM-poh ed eel KLEE-mah  
EH MEE-teh, choh'EH nohn fah  
NEH TROHP-poh FREHD-doh NEH  
TROHP-poh KAHL-doh. In the spring the weather is gen-  
erally good and the climate is  
mild, that is to say, it's neither  
too cold nor too hot.
- 28 KWAH-lee SOH-noh ee MEH-zee  
dehl-leh-STAH-teh? What are the months of summer?
- 29 . . . JOO-n'yoh, LOO-l'yoh eh ah-  
GOH-stoh. The months of summer are: June,  
July, and August.
- 30 fah FREHD-doh een KWEH-stah  
stah-JOH-neh? Is it cold in this season?
- 31 NOH, see-N'YOH-reh, deh-STAH-teh  
fah SEHM-preh KAHL-doh. No, sir, in the summer (*lit.*, of  
summer) it is always hot.
- 32 KWAHN-tee AHN-nee chee SOH-noh  
een oon SEH-koh-loh? How many years are there in a  
century?
- 33 . . . CHEHN-toh AHN-nee. In a century there are one hun-  
dred years.



## Settima Lezione

### Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

<b>un amico</b> (ah-MEE-koh) a friend ( <i>masc.</i> )	<b>infatti</b> (een-FAHT-tee) in fact
<b>un'amica</b> (ah-MEE-kah) a friend ( <i>fem.</i> )	<b>troppo</b> (TROHP-poh) too, too much
<b>nuovo</b> (NWOH-voh) new	<b>si chiama</b> <sup>1</sup> (KYAH-mah) is called, his (her) name is
<b>ancora</b> (ahn-KOH-rah) yet, still	<b>pulire</b> (poo-LEE-reh) to clean

<b>l'indirizzo</b> (leen-dee-REE-tsoh)	address
<b>per meno</b> (pehr MEH-noh)	for less
<b>un agente di polizia</b> <sup>2</sup> (ah-JEHN-teh dee poh-lee-TSEE-ah)	a policeman
<b>un carabiniere</b> <sup>3</sup> (kah-rah-bee-NYEH-reh)	a military policeman

<b>riparare</b> (ree-pah-RAH-reh)	to repair
<b>esaminare</b> (eh-zah-mee-NAH-reh)	to examine
<b>sostituire</b> (soh-stee-too'EE-reh)	to replace
<b>indicare</b> (een-dee-KAH-reh)	to indicate, point
<b>caricare</b> (kah-ree-KAH-reh)	to wind (a watch)



<b>c'è un guasto</b> (CHEH oon GWAH-stoh)	there is something out of order
<b>a servirla</b> <sup>4</sup> (sehr-VEER-lah)	at your service!
<b>bisogna che</b> (bee-ZOH-n'yah keh)	it is necessary that
<b>il resto</b> (REH-stoh)	the rest, remainder

<b>rotto</b> (ROHT-toh)	broken	<b>caro</b> (KAH-roh)	dear,
<b>sporco</b> (SPOHR-koh)	dirty		expensive
<b>scusi!</b> (SKOO-zee)	excuse me!	<b>fra, tra</b> (frah, trah)	between,
<b>va bene!</b> (vah BEH-neh)	all right!		among

## L'OROLOGIO • L'ORA

## THE WATCH, THE TIME

(loh-roh-LOH-joh, LOH-rah)

<b>l'orologio</b> (loh-roh-LOH-joh)	watch, clock
<b>un orologio da<sup>5</sup> polso</b> (dah POHL-soh)	a wrist watch
<b>un orologio a<sup>6</sup> pendolo</b> (ah PEHN-doh-loh)	a wall clock (pendulum)
<b>un orologio a<sup>6</sup> sveglia</b> (ah ZVEH-l'yah)	an alarm clock
<b>un orologio d'oro<sup>7</sup></b> (DOH-roh)	a gold watch
<b>un orologio da<sup>5</sup> tasca</b> (dah TAH-skah)	a pocket watch
<b>un orologiaio</b> (oh-ro-loh-JYAH-yoh)	a watchmaker
<b>un'orologeria</b> (oo-noh-roh-loh-jeh-REE-ah)	a watchmaker's shop
<b>il quadrante</b> (kwah-DRAHN-teh)	face (of a watch)
<b>la lancetta</b> (lahn-CHEHT-tah)	hand (of a watch)
<b>il meccanismo</b> (mehk-kah-NEE-zmoh)	movement
<b>il secondo</b> (seh-KOHN-doh)	second
<b>il minuto</b> (mee-NOO-toh)	minute
<b>l'ora</b> (LOH-rah)	hour
<b>il vetro</b> (VEH-troh)	glass, crystal
<b>la molla</b> (MOHL-lah)	spring
<b>il rubino</b> (ROO-BEE-noh)	ruby, jewel
<b>va<sup>8</sup> avanti</b> (vah ah-VAHN-tee)	it is right (of a watch)
<b>va<sup>8</sup> indietro</b> (vah een-DYEH-troh)	it is slow (of a watch)
<b>non funziona</b> (nohn foon-TSYOH-nah)	it is out of order
<b>si è fermato<sup>9</sup></b> (see EH fehr-MAH-toh)	it has stopped
<b>va<sup>8</sup> bene</b> (vah BEH-neh)	it is right (of a watch)
<b>suonare</b> (swoh-NAH-reh)	to ring, strike (the hour)

## CHE ORA È?

## WHAT TIME IS IT?

(keh OH-rah EH)

<b>È l'una<sup>10</sup></b> (EH LOO-nah)	It is one o'clock.
<b>Sono le due<sup>10</sup></b> (SOH-noh leh DOO'eh)	It is two o'clock.
<b>Sono le quattro precise<sup>11</sup></b> (. . . preh-CHEE-zeh)	It is four o'clock sharp.
<b>È l'una e mezzo<sup>12</sup></b> (EH LOO-nah eh MEH-dzoh)	It is half past one.
<b>Sono le cinque e mezzo</b> (. . . MEH-dzoh)	It is half past five.
<b>È l'una e un quarto<sup>12</sup></b> (. . . oon KWahr-toh)	It is a quarter past one.
<b>È l'una meno un quarto</b>	It is quarter to one.
<b>Sono le dieci meno un quarto</b>	It is a quarter to ten.
<b>Sono le undici meno cinque<sup>13</sup></b>	It is five to eleven.
<b>Sono le sei e dieci<sup>12</sup></b>	It is ten after six.



## CONVERSATION

1 Scusi, signore, mi può dire che ora è, per piacere?

2 Certo, signore. Sono le due e venti.

3 Sono già le tre?

4 Sì, sono le tre precise.

5 Non è ancora l'una meno  
un quarto.



6 Infatti, non sono ancora  
le tre.

7 Non sono ancora suonate  
le quattro?

8 Sì, Pietro, le quattro sono  
suonate poco fa.<sup>14</sup> Il suo  
orologio non va bene.  
Credo che vada<sup>15</sup> cinque  
minuti avanti.

9 Il mio orologio, invece, va un quarto d'ora indietro.

10 È rotto?

11 Credo.<sup>16</sup> Si è fermato. Ci dev'essere un guasto e dovrò  
portarlo da<sup>17</sup> un orologiaio.

12 L'ha caricato?

13 Sì, ma è sporco e bisognerà farlo pulire.

FOOTNOTES: 1. *Si chiama*, from the reflexive verb *chiamarsi*. *Lit.*, "calls himself, herself, or yourself." 2. *Lit.* "an agent of the police." 3. The *carabinieri* are members of a police corps attached to the army. A fine physique is a prerequisite. The dress uniforms of the *carabinieri* are very impressive. 4. *Lit.*, "to serve you." 5. *Da polso, da tasca*. This is a special use of the word *da*. See Note 25, Lesson 3.

## PRONUNCIATION

- 1 SKOO-zee, see-N'YOH-reh, mee PWOH DEE-reh keh OH-rah EH, pehr pyah-CHEH-reh?
- 2 CHEHR-toh, see-N'YOH-reh. SOH-noh leh DOO'eh eh VEHN-tee.
- 3 SOH-noh JAH leh TREH?
- 4 SEE, SOH-noh leh TREH preh-CHEE-zeh.
- 5 nohn EH ahn-KOH-rah LOO-nah MEH-noh oon KWAHR-toh.
- 6 een-FAHT-tee, nohn SOH-noh ahn-KOH-rah leh TREH.
- 7 nohn SOH-noh ahn-KOH-rah swoh-NAH-teh leh KWAHT-troh?
- 8 SEE, PYEH-troh. . . . POH-koh FAH. eel soo'oh oh-roh-LOH-joh nohn vah BEH-neh. KREH-doh keh VAH-dah CHEEN-kweh mee-NOO-tee ah-VAHN-tee.
- 9 eel MEE'oh oh-roh-LOH-joh, een-VEH-cheh, vah oon KWAHR-toh DOH-rah een-DYEH-troh.
- 10 EH ROHT-toh?
- 11 KREH-doh. see EH fehr-MAH-toh. chee deh-VEHS-seh-reh oon GWAH-stoh eh doh-VROH pohr-TAHR-loh dah oon oh-roh-loh-JAH'yoh.
- 12 LAH kah-ree-KAH-toh?
- 13 SEE, mah eh SPOHR-koh eh bee-zoh-n'yeh-RAH FAHR-loh poo-LEE-reh.

## TRANSLATION

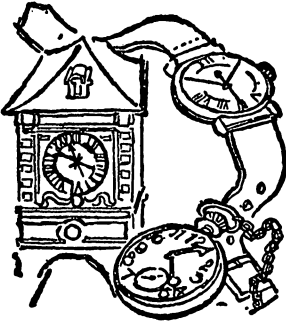
- Pardon me, sir, can you please tell me what time it is?
- Certainly, sir. It is twenty after two.
- Is it three o'clock already?
- Yes, it is three o'clock sharp.
- It isn't a quarter to one yet.
- In fact, it is not yet three o'clock.
- Hasn't four o'clock struck yet?
- Yes, Peter, four o'clock struck a short while ago. Your watch isn't right. I think it is five minutes fast.
- My watch, instead, is a quarter of an hour slow.
- Is it broken?
- I think so. It has stopped. It must be out of order and I shall have to take it to a watchmaker.
- Have you wound it up?
- Yes, but it is dirty and it will have to be cleaned.

---

See also Reference Grammar. 6. *A pendolo, a sveglia*. This is a special use of the word *a*, meaning "with". 7. *d'oro (di oro)*, "of gold." See Note 21, Lesson 3. 8. *Va* (goes). This is an idiomatic use of word *va* in connection with the functioning of a watch. 9. *Si è fermato* is a form of the present perfect of the reflexive verb *fermarsi*, which is intransitive. *Fermare* (not reflexive) is transitive. Ex.: *Io fermo*

14 Dove c'è un buon orologiaio che non faccia<sup>18</sup> pagare<sup>19</sup> troppo?

15 In Via Nazionale, numero duecento quaranta.<sup>20</sup>



16 Come si chiama quest'orologiaio?

17 Si chiama Pelloni.

18 Se non mi sbaglio<sup>21</sup> il<sup>22</sup> 240 è vicino al Palazzo della Mostra.

19 Precisamente, signore. È tra Piazza Esedra ed il Tunnel.

20 Scusi, c'è il<sup>23</sup> signor Pelloni?

21 A servirla, signore. In che posso esserle utile?

22 Un mio amico mi ha dato il suo indirizzo. Vuole avere la bontà di ripararmi quest'orologio?

23 Certo, ma bisogna che prima l'esamini.<sup>24</sup>

24 Quando sarà<sup>25</sup> pronto? Quanto mi costerà?

25 Sarà pronto fra<sup>26</sup> cinque giorni, e le costerà mille lire.

---

*la macchina* (I stop the car.) 10. In telling time the whole hour is mentioned first, preceded by the definite article. 11. *precise*, as an adjective, agrees with *le quattro (ore understood)*. 12. "Half past, a quarter after," and any number of minutes after the hour are preceded by the word *e*. 13. "A quarter to" or any number of minutes before the hour are preceded by the word *meno*. 14. *Poco fa* is an idiom meaning "a short while ago." The word *fa* means "ago" when used with words expressing periods of time. 15. *Vada* is a form of the present subjunctive of *andare*. The verb *credo (credere)* requires the subjunctive. See Reference Gram-

- 14 DOH-veh CHEH oon BWOHN oh-roh-loh-JAH'yoh keh nohn FAH-tchah pah-GAH-reh TROHP-poh? Where is there a good watch-maker who doesn't charge too much?
- 15 een VEE'ah nah-tsyoh-NAH leh, NOO-meh-roh doo'eh-CHEHN-toh kwah-RAHN-tah. At 240 Via Nazionale.
- 16 KOH-meh see KYAH-mah kweh-stoh-roh-loh-JAH'yoh? What's the name of this watch-maker?
- 17 see KYAH-mah pehl-LOH-nee. His name is Pelloni.
- 18 seh NOHN mee ZBAH-l'yoh eel doo'eh-CHEHN-toh kwah-RAHN-tah EH vee-CHEE-noh ahl pah-LAH-tsoh DEHL-lah MOH-strah. If I am not mistaken, 240 is near the Palazzo della Mostra.
- 19 preh-chee-zah-MEHN-teh, see-N'YOH-reh, EH trah PYAH-tsah eh-ZEH-drah ed eel TOON-nehl. Exactly, sir. It is between Piazza Esedra and the Tunnel.
- 20 SKOO-zee, CHEH eel see-n'YOHR pehl-LOH-nee? Pardon me, is Mr. Pelloni in?
- 21 ah sehr-VEER-lah, see-N'YOH-reh een KEH POHS-soh EHS-schr-leh ootee-leh? At your service, sir. What can I do for you?
- 22 oon MEE'oh ah-MEE-koh mee ah DAH-toh eel soo'oh een-dee-REET-soh. vwoh-leh ah-VEH-reh lah bohn-TAH dee ree-pah-RAHR-mee kweh-stoh-roh-LOH-joh? A friend of mine has given me your address. Would you be good enough to repair this watch for me?
- 23 CHEHR-toh, mah bee-ZOH-n'yah keh FREE-mah leh-ZAH-mee-nee. Certainly, but I must examine it first.
- 24 KWAHN-doh sah-RAH PROHN-toh? KWAHN-toh mee koh-steh-RAH? When will it be ready? How much will it cost me?
- 25 . . . frah CHEEN-kweh JOHR-nee, eh leh koh-steh-RAH MEEL-leh LEE-reh. It will be ready in five days, and it will cost you one thousand lire.

---

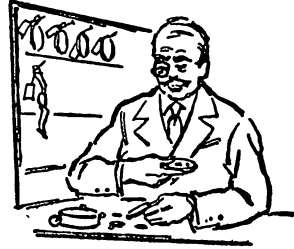
mar. 16. *Credo*, used alone and referring to something previously mentioned, means "I think so." 17. The word *da*, as mentioned in Note 25, Lesson 3, means "to or at somebody's place," the nature of the place not being specified. 18. *Faccia* is a form of the present subjunctive of *fare*. An indefinite antecedent requires the subjunctive. *Orologiaio* is the indefinite antecedent because it does not refer to a specific watchmaker. 19. *Faccia pagare* is an idiom. *Lit.*, "makes pay." 20. In Italian, when mentioning an address, the number follows the street. 21. *Se non mi sbaglio* is a form of the reflexive verb *sbagliarsi*. 22. *Il (numero under-*

26 Mi sembra caro. Non potrebbe farmelo<sup>27</sup> per meno?

27 Impossibile, signore. La molla è rotta e dovrò sostituirla.

28 È in buone condizioni il resto del meccanismo?

29 Sì, signore, ma, come vede, dovrò sostituire anche il vetro.



30 Va bene. Arrivederla a giovedì, signore.

31 Ha lei degli orologi d'oro?

32 Sì, mia moglie ne ha uno da polso, d'oro.

33 Costano molto gli orologi con diamanti?

34 Un orologio con diamanti costa sempre<sup>28</sup> caro.

35 Mi può dire quanti minuti ci sono in un'ora?

36 In un'ora ci sono sessanta minuti, e in un minuto sessanta secondi.

37 Che cosa indica l'ora in un orologio?

38 Le due lancette indicano l'ora sul quadrante degli orologi.

39 La lancetta piccola indica le ore, e la lancetta grande indica i minuti.

---

stood) 240. 23. The definite article is required before the title of a person, but is omitted when addressing the person. 24. *Esamini* is a subjunctive form required by *bisogna che*. See Reference Grammar. 25. Future of *essere*: *io sarò, tu sarai, le' sarà, noi saremo, voi sarete, loro saranno*. 26. *Fra* means "in" or

26. mee SEHM-brah KAH-roh. nohn  
poh-TREHB-beh FAHR-meh-loh  
pehr MEH-noh?
27. eem-pohs-SEE-bee-leh . . . MOHL-  
lah EH ROHT-tah eh doh-VROH soh-  
stee-too'EER-lah.
28. EH een BWOH-neh kohn-dee-  
TSYOH-nee eel REH-stoh dehl  
mehk-kah-NEEZ-moh?
29. SEE, see-N'YOH-reh, mah KOH-meh  
VEH-deh, doh-VROH soh-stee-too'-  
EE-reh AHN-keh eel VEH-troh.
30. vah BEH-neh. ahr-ree-veh-DEHR-  
lah ah joh-veh-DEE, see-N'YOH-reh.
31. AH lay DEH-l'yee oh-roh-LOH-jee  
DOH-roh?
32. SEE, MEE'ah MOH-l'yeh neh ah oo-  
no dah POHL-soh, DOH-roh.
33. KOH-stah-noh MOHL-toh l'yee oh-  
roh-LOH-jee kohn dee'ah-MAHN-  
tee?
34. oon oh-roh-LOH-joh kohn dee'ah-  
MAHN-tee KOH-stah SEHM-preh  
KAH-roh.
35. mee PWOH DEE-reh KWAHN-tee  
mee-NOO-tee chee SOH-noh een  
oon-OH-rah?
36. . . . sehs-SAHN-tah mee-NOO-tee,  
eh een oon mee-NOO-toh sehs-  
SAHN-tah seh-KOHN-dee.
37. keh KOH-zah EEN-dee-kah LOH-rah  
een oon oh-roh-LOH-joh?
38. leh DOO'eh lahn-CHEHT-teh EEN-  
dee-kah-noh LOH-rah sool kwah-  
DRAHN-teh DEH-l'yee oh-roh-LOH-  
jee.
39. lah lahn-CHEHT-tah PEEK-koh-  
lah EEN-dee-kah leh OH-reh, eh  
lah lahn-CHEHT-tah GRAHN-deh  
EEN-dee-kah ee mee-NOO-tee.
- It seems a little expensive to me.  
Couldn't you do it for less?
- Impossible, sir. The spring is  
broken and I shall have to re-  
place it.
- Is the rest of the movement in  
good condition?
- Yes, sir, but, as you see, I shall  
have to replace the glass also.
- Very well. I'll see you Thursday,  
sir.
- Do you have any gold watches  
(*lit.*, watches of gold)?
- Yes, my wife has a gold wrist  
watch.
- Are diamond watches (*lit.*,  
watches with diamonds) very  
expensive?
- A diamond watch is always ex-  
pensive.
- Can you tell me how many min-  
utes there are in an hour?
- In an hour there are sixty min-  
utes, and in a minute sixty sec-  
onds.
- What indicates the time on a  
watch?
- The two hands indicate the time  
on the face of a watch (*lit.*, of  
the watches).
- The small hand indicates the  
hours, and the large hand indi-  
cates the minutes.

---

"within" when used in connection with expressions of time. 27. *Farmelo—melo* (it to me) is a double pronoun attached to the infinitive. See Reference Grammar. 28. *Sempre* is an adverb of time. In Italian adverbs follow the verb.



## Ottava Lezione

### Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

**stabilire** (stah-bee-LEE-reh) to establish  
**felicissimo** (feh-lee-CHEES-see-moh) very happy  
**nel frattempo** (nehl fraht-TEHM-poh) in the meantime  
**dappertutto** (dahp-pehr-TOOT-toh) everywhere  
**senza dubbio** (SEHN-tсах DOOB-byoh) without doubt  
**il testimonio** (teh-stee-MOH-nyoh) witness

**comprare** (kohm-PRAH-reh) to buy  
**all'ingrosso**<sup>1</sup> (ahl-leen-GROHS-soh) wholesale  
**al minuto**<sup>1</sup> (mee-NOO-toh) retail

**qualsiasi** (kwahl-SEE'ah-zee) any, no matter which  
**congelare** (kohn-jeh-LAH-reh) to freeze



**i prodotti** (proh-DOHT-tee) products  
**l'olio** (LOH-lyoh) oil  
**il grano** (GRAH-noh) wheat  
**le banane** (bah-NAH-neh) bananas  
**la lana** (LAH-nah) wool

**sto bene**<sup>2</sup> (stoh BEH-neh) I am well  
**sto male**<sup>2</sup> (stoh MAH-leh) I am ill  
**felice** (feh-LEE-cheh) happy  
**come va?**<sup>3</sup> (koh-meh VAH) how is?  
**sperare** (speh-RAH-reh) to hope  
**vendere** (VEHN-deh-reh) to sell  
**sbrigare** (zbree-GAH-reh) to settle, regulate

### IL COMMERCIO

TRADE

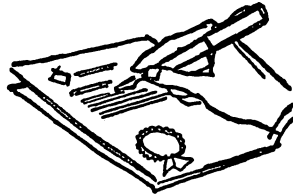
(kohm-MEHR-choh)

**il cambio** (KAHM-byoh) exchange  
**il commerciante** (kohm-mehr-CHAN-teh) merchant

lo sportello (spohr-TEHL-loh)  
 il guadagno (gwah-DAH-n'yoh)  
 il dirigente (dee-ree-JEHN-teh)  
 la succursale (sook-koor-SAH-leh)

pay-window  
 profit  
 manager  
 branch (of a firm)

la rata (RAH-tah) rate  
 la tratta (TRAHT-tah) draft  
 i valori (vah-LOH-ree) securities  
 la merce (MEHR-cheh) merchandise  
 gli affari (ahf-FAH-ree) business  
 il danaro (dah-NAH-roh) money  
 la banca (BAHN-kah) bank  
 la casa (KAH-zah) house, firm  
 la ditta (DEET-tah) firm  
 prestare (preh-STAH-reh) to lend  
 il prestito (preh-STEE-toh) loan  
 firmare (feer-MAH-reh) to sign  
 la firma (FEER-mah) signature  
 il notaio (noh-TAH-yoh) notary



le restrizioni (reh-stree-TSYOH-nee)  
 le transazioni (trahn-sah-TSYOH-nee)  
 in contanti<sup>1</sup> (een kohn-TAHN-tee)  
 a credito (ah KREH-dee-toh)  
 importare (eem-pohr-TAH-reh)  
 esportare (eh-spohr-TAH-reh)

restrictions  
 transactions  
 for cash  
 on credit  
 to import  
 to export

il tabacco (tah-BAHK-koh)  
 lo<sup>4</sup> stagno (STAH-n'yoh)  
 lo<sup>4</sup> zucchero (DZOOK-keh-roh)  
 il petrolio (peh-TROH-lyoh)  
 l'ananasso (lah-nah-NAHS-soh)  
 il pompelmo (pohm-PEHL-moh)  
 l'uva (LOO-vah)  
 i fichi (FEE-kee)

tobacco  
 tin  
 sugar  
 petroleum  
 pineapple  
 grapefruit  
 grapes  
 figs

le arachidi (leh ah-RAH-kee-dee)  
 la noce di cocco (NOH-cheh dee KOHK-koh)  
 il cuoio or la pelle (KWOH-yoh, PEHL-leh)  
 la carne congelata (KAHR-neh kohn-jeh-LAH-tah)  
 il vino bianco (VEE-noh BYAHN-koh)  
 il vino rosso (VEE-noh ROHS-soh)

peanuts  
 cocoanut  
 leather  
 frozen meat  
 white wine  
 red wine



CONVERSATION

1 Come sta, caro signore? Sono felicissimo di<sup>5</sup> vederla.

2 Molto bene, grazie; e lei?

3 Non c'è male,<sup>6</sup> grazie.

4 Conta rimanere a lungo<sup>7</sup> a Roma?

5 No, signore. Mi fermerò<sup>8</sup> alcuni mesi soltanto, perchè son<sup>9</sup> venuto per<sup>10</sup> affari.



6 E come vanno le cose negli<sup>11</sup> Stati Uniti? Senza dubbio lei sarà di ritorno<sup>12</sup> prima della primavera.

7 Sì, signore, e nel frattempo spero poter sbrigare tutti i miei affari.

8 Ha intenzione di<sup>13</sup> fare delle importazioni?<sup>14</sup>

9 Vorrei importare caffè, tabacco, zucchero, lana e qualche<sup>15</sup> varietà di frutta.

10 Intende<sup>18</sup> importare questi prodotti da tutte le regioni mediterranee?

---

FOOTNOTES: 1. *All'ingrosso, al minuto, and in contanti* are idioms. 2. *Sto bene, sto male* are idioms. The infinitive is *stare bene (male)*. 3. *Come va* literally means "how goes it?" 4. A reminder that *lo (the)* is used before masculine nouns (singular) beginning with *z* or *s-impura*. 5. Infinitives depending on adjectives are often preceded by *di*. 6. *Non c'è male* is an idiom. 7. *A lungo* after an infinitive means "a long time." 8. See Note 9, Lesson 7. 9. *Venire* is one of the verbs that takes *essere* as an auxiliary. 10. *Per affari* literally means "for busi-

## PRONUNCIATION

- 1 KOH-meh STAH, KAH-roh see-n'YOH-reh? SOH-noh feh-lee-CHEES-see-moh dee veh-DEHR-lah.
- 2 MOHL-toh BEH-neh, GRAH-tsyeh; eh LAY?
- 3 nohn CHEH MAH-leh, GRAH-tsyeh.
- 4 KOHN-tah ree-mah-NEH-reh ah LOON-goh ah ROH-mah?
- 5 NOH, see-n'YOH-reh. mee fehr-meh-ROH ahl-KOO-nee MEH-zee sohl-TAHN-toh, pehr-KEH sohn veh-NOO-toh pehr ahf-FAH-ree.
- 6 eh KOH-meh VAHN-noh leh KOH-seh NEH-l'yee STAH-tee OO-NEE-tee? SEHN-tseh DOOB-byoh lay sah-RAH dee ree-TOHR-noh PREE-mah DEHL-lah pree-mah-VEH-rah.
- 7 . . . nehl fraht-TEHM-poh SPEH-roh poh-TEHR zbree-GAH-reh TOOT-tee ee M'YAY ahf-FAH-ree.
- 8 AH een-ten-TSYOH-neh dee FAH-reh DEHL-leh eem-pohr-tah-TSYOH-nee?
- 9 vohr-RAY eem-pohr-TAH-reh kahf-FEH, tah-BAHK-koh, DZOOK-keh-roh, LAH-nah eh KWAHL-keh vah-ryeh-TAH dee FROOT-tah.
- 10 een-TEHN-deh eem-pohr-TAH-reh KWEH-stee proh-DOHT-tee dah TOOT-teh leh reh-JOH-nee meh-dee-tehr-RAH-neh'eh?

## TRANSLATION

- How are you, my dear sir? I am very happy to see you.
- I am very well, thank you; and you?
- Not bad, thank you.
- Do you expect to remain in Rome a long time?
- No, sir. I am going to stay only a few months, because I came on business.
- And how are things in the United States? Undoubtedly you will be back before spring.
- Yes, sir, and in the meantime I hope to be able to settle all my affairs.
- Do you intend to do importing?
- I should like to import coffee, tobacco, sugar, wool, and some varieties of fruit.
- Do you intend to import these products from all the Mediterranean regions?

---

ness." 11. *Negli* is a contraction of *in* and the definite article *gli*. 12. *Sarà di ritorno* is an idiom. 13. Normally an infinitive depending on a noun is introduced by *di*. Compare sentences 8 and 10. 14. *Delle importazioni*. The plural is used because it refers to different products to be imported. 15. The word *qualche* is always singular. The word that follows is, of course, singular also.

11 Un po' dappertutto. Dall'Egitto<sup>18</sup> riceverò tabacco, cotone, zucchero e legumi; e dalla Grecia, uva e fichi.<sup>17</sup>



12 E che cosa riceverà dall'Italia e da altri paesi?

13 Dall'Italia riceverò arance, limoni ed olio d'oliva; dall'Algeria banane e pompelmi; dalla Tunisia, grano; dal Marocco, cuoio; e dal Senegal, arachidi e noci di cocco.

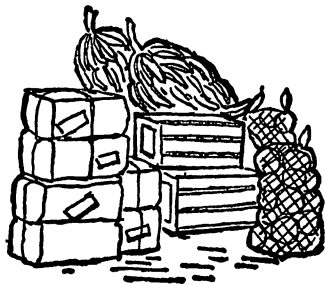
14 Ha intenzione di vendere in contanti o a credito?<sup>18</sup>

15 A certi commercianti aprirò<sup>19</sup> un credito a breve scadenza,<sup>18</sup> oppure farò<sup>20</sup> con loro uno scambio<sup>21</sup> di prodotti.

16 Come conta<sup>22</sup> impiantare questo commercio?

17 La mia idea è di<sup>18</sup> aprire una succursale della mia ditta a Milano, dove metterò mio fratello come dirigente.

18 Non avrà<sup>23</sup> egli bisogno di una procura da parte della sua ditta per legalizzare le operazioni?



---

16. *Dall'* is a contraction of *da* (from) and *l'*. Remember that in Italian names of countries are preceded by the definite article. 17. The singular of *fichi* is *fico*. 18. *A credito* and *a breve scadenza* are idioms. 19. Future of the third conjugation verb *aprire*: *io aprirò, tu aprirai, lei aprirà, noi apriremo, voi aprirete, loro*

11 oon POH dahp-pehr-TOOT-toh. dahl-leh-JEET-toh ree-cheh-veh-ROH tah-BAHK-koh, koh-TOH-neh, DZOOK-keh-roh eh leh-GOO-mee; eh DAHL-lah GREH-chah, oo-vah eh FEE-kee.

12 eh keh KOH-zah ree-cheh-veh-RAH dahl-lee-TAH-lyah eh dah AHL-tree pah-EH-zee?

13 ... ree-che-veh-ROH ah-RAHN-cheh, lee-MOH-nee ed OH-lyoh doh-LEE-vah; dahl-lahl-jeh-REE'ah bah-NAH-neh eh pohm-PEHL-mee; DAHL-lah too-nee-ZEE'ah, GRAH-noh; dahl mah-ROHK-koh, KWOH-yoh; eh dahl seh-neh-GAHL, ah-RAH-kee-dee eh NOH-chee dee KOHK-koh.

14 AH een-tehn-TSYOH-neh dee VEHN-dereh een kohn-TAHN-tee oh ah KREH-dee-toh?

15 ah CHEHR-tee kohm-mehr-CHAHN-tee ah-pree-ROH oon KREH-dee-toh ah BREH-veh skah-DEHN-tsah, ohp-POO-reh fah-ROH kohn LOH-roh oo-noh SKAHM-byoh dee proh-DOHT-tee.

16 KOH-meh KOHN-tah eem-pyahn-TAH-reh KWEH-stoh kohm-MEHR-choh?

17 lah MEE'ah ee-DEH'ah EH dee ah-PREE-reh oo-nah sook-koor-SAH-leh DEHL-lah MEE'ah DEET-tah ah mee-LAH-noh, DOH-veh meht-teh-ROH MEE'oh frah-TEHL-loh KOH-meh dee-ree-JEHN-teh.

18 nohn ah-VRAH EH-'yee bee-ZOH-n'yoh dee oo-nah proh-KOO-rah dah PAHR-teh DEHL-lah soo'ah DEET-tah pehr leh-gah-lee-DZAH-reh leh oh-peh-rah-TSYOH-nee?

A little from everywhere. From Egypt I shall receive tobacco, cotton, sugar, and legumes; and from Greece, grapes and figs.

And what will you receive from Italy and other countries?

From Italy I shall receive oranges, lemons, and olive oil (*lit.*, oil of olives); from Algeria, bananas and grapefruit; from Tunisia, wheat; from Morocco, leather; and from Senegal, peanuts and cocoanuts.

Do you intend to sell for cash or on credit?

To certain merchants I shall extend short term credit, or else I shall make an exchange of products with them.

How do you expect to establish this business (*lit.*, commerce)?

My idea is to open a branch of my firm in Milan, which my brother will manage (*lit.*, where I shall put my brother as a manager).

Will he not need a power of attorney on behalf (*lit.*, from the part of) of your company to legalize his transactions (*lit.*, operations)?

---

*apriranno.* 20. Future of the irregular verb *fare*: *io farò, tu farai, lei farà, noi faremo, voi farete, loro faranno.* 21. Do not confuse the words *scambio*, which means "any kind of exchange," and *cambio*, which means "rate of exchange." 22. *Conta*, from the verb *contare*, "to count." Before an infinitive, as in this case, it

19 Naturalmente. Ne avrà bisogno per poter comprare e vendere a nome<sup>24</sup> della mia ditta.

20 Per redigere una procura a chi<sup>25</sup> bisogna<sup>26</sup> rivolgersi?

21 Bisogna farla redigere da un notaio e davanti a<sup>27</sup> due testimoni.

22 Qual'è la rata di cambio oggi?

23 Oggi il cambio è molto favorevole.

24 Potrei riscuotere in dollari una lettera di cambio?

25 Al momento ci sono delle restrizioni sui valori e sulla circolazione estera; ma credo che potrà riscuotere una tratta in moneta italiana in qualsiasi banca in Italia.

26 Vorrei anche esportare dei prodotti in Turchia. Che ne<sup>28</sup> pensa lei?

27 Ottima idea!

---

also means "to expect." 23. Future of *avere*: *io avrò, tu avrai, lei avrà, noi avremo, voi avrete, loro avranno.* 24. *A nome di*, idiom meaning "in the name of." 25. *Chi* is an interrogative pronoun and refers only to persons. 26. *Bisogna* is

19 nah-too-rahl-MEHN-teh. neh ah-  
VRAH bee-zOH-n'yoh pehr poh-  
TEHR kohm-PRAH-reh eh VEHN-  
Jeh-reh ah NOH-meh DEHL-lah  
MEE'ah DEET-tah.

20 pehr reh-DEE-jeh-reh oo-nah  
proh-KOO-rah ah KEE bee-zOH-  
n'yah ree-VOHL-jehr-see?

21 . . . FAHR-lah reh-DEE-jeh-reh dah  
oon noh-TAH'yoh eh dah-VAHN-tee  
ah DOO'eh teh-stee-MOH-nee.

22 kwah-LEH lah RAH-tah dee KAHM-  
byoh OH-djee?

23 OH-djee eel KAHM-byoh EH MOHL-  
toh fah-voh-REH-voh-leh.

24 poh-TRAY ree-SKWOH-teh-reh een  
DOHL-lah-ree oo-nah LEHT-teh-rah  
dee KAHM-byoh?

25 ahl moh-MEHN-toh chee SOH-noh  
DEHL-leh reh-stree-TSYOH-nee  
SOO'y vah-LOH-ree eh SOOL-lah  
cheer-koh-lah-TSYOH-neh EH-steh-  
rah; mah KREH-doh keh poh-TRAH  
ree-SKWOH-teh-reh oo-nah TRAHT-  
tah een moh-NEH-tah ee-tah-LYAH-  
nah een kwahl-SEE'ah-zee BAHN-  
kah een ee-TAH-lyah.

26 vohr-RAY AHN-keh eh-spohr-TAH-  
reh day proh-DOHT-tee een toor-  
KEE'ah. keh neh PEHN-sah LAY?

27 OHT-tee-mah ee-DEH'ah!

Naturally. He will need one in  
order to be able to buy and sell  
in the name of my company.

To whom must one go (*lit.*, turn  
to) in order to draw up a  
power of attorney?

It must be drawn up by a notary  
and before two witnesses.

What is the rate of exchange to-  
day?

Today the exchange is very favor-  
able.

Could I cash a letter of exchange  
in dollars?

At present there are some restric-  
tions on foreign securities and  
currency; but I believe you can  
cash a draft in Italian money in  
any bank of Italy.

I should like to export some  
products to (*lit.*, in) Turkey.  
What do you think?

Excellent idea!

---

an impersonal expression and means "must." 27. *Davanti* requires the prepo-  
sition *a* before a noun or pronoun. 28. *Ne* (of it) cannot be omitted in Italian.



## Nona Lezione

### Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

**apparecchiare la tavola** (ahp-pah-rehk-KYAH-reh . . .)  
**il coperto** (koh-PEHR-toh)  
**mettere il coperto**<sup>1</sup> (MEHT-teh-reh . . .)

**to set the table**  
**place setting**  
**to set the place**

**l'argenteria** (lahr-jehn-tee-REE'ah)  
**la tovaglia** (toh-VAH-l'yah)  
**il tovagliolo**<sup>2</sup> (toh-vah-L'YOH-loh)  
**il piattino** (pyahT-TEE-noh)  
**la tazza** (TAH-tzah)  
**una tazza di caffè** (kahf-FEH)  
**il coltello** (kohl-TEHL-loh)  
**la forchetta** (fohr-KEHT-tah)  
**il cucchiaino** (kook-KYAH-yoh)  
**il cucchiaino** (kook-kyah-EE-noh)

**silverware**  
**tablecloth**  
**napkin**  
**saucer**  
**cup**  
**a cup of coffee**  
**knife**  
**fork**  
**spoon**  
**teaspoon**



**la tavola** (TAH-voh-lah) **the table**  
**il piatto** (PYAHT-toh) **plate, dish**  
**salato** (sah-LAH-toh) **salty, salted**  
**crudo** (KROO-doh) **raw**  
**subito** (soo-bee-toh) **quickly, immediately**

**il bicchiere** (beek-KYEH-reh)  
**un bicchiere di latte** (. . . LAHT-teh)  
**un bicchiere di vino** (. . . VEE-noh)  
**un bicchiere d'acqua** (. . . DAHK-kwah)

**glass**  
**a glass of milk**  
**a glass of wine**  
**a glass of water**

**la bottiglia** (boht-TEE-l'yah)  
**la caraffa** (kah-RAHF-fah)  
**la caffettiera** (kahf-feht-TYEH-rah)  
**la zuccheriera** (dzook-keh-RYEH-rah)  
**al contrario** (ahl kohn-TRAH-ryoh)  
**insipido** (een-SEE-pee-doh)

**bottle**  
**the decanter, pitcher**  
**coffee pot**  
**sugar bowl**  
**on the contrary**  
**tasteless**

**IL RISTORANTE • I CIBI**

**THE RESTAURANT, FOOD**

(eel ree-stoh-RAHN-teh, ee CHEE-bee)

il cameriere (kah-meh-RYEH-reh)	waiter
la lista delle vivande (LEE-stah DEHL-leh vee-VAHN-deh)	menu
la lista dei vini (. . . day VEE-nee)	wine list
il conto (KOHN-toh)	check, bill
la mancia (MAHN-chah)	tip

il cibo (CHEE-boh)	food
il pasto (PAH-stoh)	meal
la pietanza (pyeh-TAHN-tseh)	the course (of a dinner)
l'antipasto (lahn-tee-PAH-stoh)	appetizer



il brodo (BROH-doh)	soup
il pane (PAH-neh)	bread
il panino (pah-NEE-noh)	roll
l'aceto (lah-CHEH-toh)	vinegar
il sale (SAH-leh)	salt

il pepe (PEH-peh)	pepper	la torta (TOHR-tah)	cake
il burro (BOOR-roh)	butter	il gelato (jeh-LAH-toh)	ice cream
la salsa (SAHL-sah)	sauce	il dolce (DOHL-cheh)	dessert

il minestrone (mee-neh-STROH-neh)	vegetable soup (thick)
la bistecca (bee-STEHK-kah)	steak
al sangue (ahl SAHN-gweh)	rare (of meat)
il filetto (fee-LEHT-toh)	filet, filet mignon
una frittata (freet-TAH-tah)	an omelet
gli spaghetti (spah-GEHT-tee)	spaghetti
il condimento (kohn-dee-MEHN-toh)	seasoning
le patate (pah-TAH-teh)	potatoes
le patate fritte (. . . FREET-teh)	fried potatoes
il purè di patate (poo-REH dee . . .)	mashed potatoes
il pomodoro (poh-moh-DOH-roh)	tomato

la salsa di pomodori (SAHL-sah dee . . .)	tomato sauce
la salsa piccante (. . . peek-KAHN-teh)	spicy (sharp) sauce
la lattuga (lahT-too-gah)	lettuce
l'insalata (leen-sah-LAH-tah)	salad
l'acqua con ghiaccio (LAHK-kwah kohn GYAH-tchoh)	ice water



## CONVERSATION

- 1 Mi può dire, per piacere, dove posso trovare un buon ristorante?
- 2 In Via Marche o in Via Sicilia ci sono molti ristoranti dove si mangia<sup>3</sup> bene.
- 3 Vorrebbe<sup>4</sup> accompagnarmi?
- 4 Con gran piacere.
- 5 Sediamoci<sup>5</sup> a questa tavola. Il cameriere ha messo il coperto proprio ora.<sup>6</sup>
- 6 Questa tavola è coperta da<sup>7</sup> una tovaglia bianca.
- 7 E che cosa c'è sopra la tavola?
- 8 Sopra la tavola ci sono le posate: forchette, cucchiari e coltelli. Ci sono anche delle salviette, una caraffa d'acqua con ghiaccio e molti bicchieri.
- 9 Chiamiamo<sup>8</sup> il cameriere.
- 10 Cameriere, la lista delle vivande e dei vini, per piacere.
- 11 Desidero una bistecca con purè di patate e dei piselli ed un'insalata verde.




---

FOOTNOTES: 1. *Lit.*, to put the cover. 2. *Tovagliolo* may also be spelled *tovagliuolo*. 3. *Si mangia* is an impersonal expression. *Lit.*, one eats. 4. *Vorrebbe* is the *lei* form of the conditional of *volere*. 5. *Sediamoci* is the *noi* form of the imperative of the reflexive verb *sedersi*. Direct, indirect, and reflexive pronouns are also attached to the *tu*, *noi*, and *voi* forms of the affirmative imperative. See Reference Grammar. 6. *Proprio ora* is an idiom. It means "just,

## PRONUNCIATION

- 1 mee PWOH DEE-reh, pehr pyah-CHEH-reh, DOH-veh, POHS-soh troh-VAH-reh oon BWOHN ree-stoh-RAHN-teh?
- 2 een VEE'ah MAHR-keh oh een VEE'-ah see-CHEE-lyah chee SOH-noh MOHL-tee reeh-stoh-RAHN-tee DOH-veh see MAHN-jah BEH-neh.
- 3 vohr-REHB-beh ahk-kohm-pah-N'YAHR-mee?
- 4 kohn GRAHN pyah-CHEH-reh.
- 5 seh-DYAH-moh-chee ah KWEH-stah TAH-voh-lah. eel kah-meh-RYEH-reh ah MEHS-soh eel koh-PEHR-toh PROH-pryoh OH-rah.
- 6 KWEH-stah TAH-voh-lah EH koh-PEHR-tah dah oo-nah toh-VAH-l'yah BYAHN-kah.
- 7 eh keh KOH-zah CHEH SOH-prah lah TAH-voh-lah?
- 8 . . . leh poh-ZAH-teh: fohr-KEHT-teh, kook-KYAH'y eh kohl-TEHL-lee. chee SOH-noh AHN-keh DEHL-leh sahl-VYEHT-teh, oo-nah kah-RAHF-fah DAHR-kwah kohn GYAH-choh eh MOHL-tee beek-KYEH-tee.
- 9 kyah-MYAH-moh eel kah-meh-RYEH-reh.
- 10 . . . LEE-stah DEHL-leh vee-VAHN-deh eh day VEE-nee, pehr pyah-CHEH-reh.
- 11 . . . bee-STEHR-kah kohn poo-REH dee pah-TAH-teh eh day pee-ZEHL-lee, ed oon-een-sah-LAH-tah VEHR-deh.

## TRANSLATION

- Can you please tell me where I can find a good restaurant?
- On Via Marche or Via Sicilia there are many good restaurants where you eat well (*lit.*, where one eats well).
- Would you like to accompany me?
- With great pleasure.
- Let's sit at this table. The waiter has just set it.
- This table is covered with a white tablecloth.
- What is there on the table?
- On the table is the silverware: forks, spoons, and knives. There are also the napkins, a pitcher of ice water (*lit.*, water with ice), and several glasses.
- Let's call the waiter.
- Waiter, the menu and the wine list, please.
- I would like a steak with mashed potatoes and peas, and a green salad.

---

just now, a while ago." 7. *Da*, which normally means "from" or "at," means "with" in this case. 8. *Chiamiamo* is the *noi* form of the imperative of *chiamare*. Notice that the *noi* form of the imperative in all cases is the same as the *noi* form of the present. 9. *Al sangue* is an idiom. *Sangue* means "blood." 10. *Si dice* is the impersonal form of the present of the irregular verb *dire*. 11. *Mi porti* is the *lei* form of the imperative of *portare*. Notice that the pronoun *mi* follows

12 Non mi piace la carne troppo cotta; la preferisco al sangue.<sup>9</sup>

13 Si dice<sup>10</sup> che la carne al sangue sia più nutriente, non è vero?

14 Mi porti<sup>11</sup> del pollo arrosto e mezza bottiglia di vino rosso, il migliore.

15 Vuol mettere lei stesso il sale, l'olio e l'aceto nella sua insalata?



16 Sì, a meno che<sup>12</sup> non sia<sup>13</sup> già condita.

17 Questa pietanza è un po' salata.<sup>14</sup>

18 È strano! Al contrario, a me<sup>15</sup> sembra che non ci sia<sup>16</sup> sale abbastanza.

19 Non ho molto appetito perchè ho fatto colazione molto tardi, alle undici. Adesso vorrei soltanto una frittata con un po' di prosciutto.

20 Mi dia<sup>17</sup> il bricco,<sup>18</sup> per piacere. Voglio prendere un po' di caffè in questa tazza.

21 Ecco la zuccheriera; metta lei<sup>19</sup> lo zucchero.

22 Cameriere, il conto, per piacere. Quanto è?

---

the general rule of preceding the verb. See Note 5 above. 12. An idiom. 13. *Sia* is the subjunctive of *essere*. The subjunctive is required after the adverbial phrase *a meno che*. See Reference Grammar. 14. *Salata* (salty, salted). This word also means "expensive" in a figurative sense. 15. *Me* is a disjunctive pronoun used

- 12 nohn mee PYAH-cheh lah KAHR-neh TROHP-poh KOHT-tah; lah preh-feh-REE-skoh ahl SAHN-gweh. I don't like meat too well done; I prefer it rare.
- 13 see DEE-cheh keh . . . SEE'ah PYOO noo-tree-EHN-teh, nohn EH VEH-roh? They say that rare meat is more nutritious, don't they?
- 14 mee POHR-tee dehl POHL-loh ahr-ROH-stoh eh MEH-dzah boht-TEE-l'yah dee VEE-noh ROHS-soh, eel mee-L'YOH-reh. Bring me some roast chicken and a half bottle of red wine, the best.
- 15 VWOHL MEHT-teh-reh lay STEHS-soh eel SAH-leh, LOH-lyoh eh lah-CHEH-toh NEHL-lah soo'ah een-sah-LAH-tah? Do you wish to put salt, oil, and vinegar in your salad yourself?
- 16 SEE, ah MEH-noh keh nohn SEE'ah JAH kohn-DEE-tah. Yes, unless it is already seasoned.
- 17 KWEH-stah pyeh-TAHN-tsah EH OON POH sah-LAH-tah. This dish is a little salty.
- 18 EH STRAH-noh! ahl kohn-TRAH-ryoh ah MEH SEHM-brah keh NOHN chee SEE'ah SAH-leh ahb-bah-STAHN-tsah. That's strange! On the contrary, it seems to me that there is not enough salt.
- 19 nohn oh MOHL-toh ahp-peht-TEE-toh pehr-KEH oh FAHT-toh koh-lah-TSYOH-neh MOHL-toh TAHR-dee, AHL-leh OON-dee-chee. ah-DEHS-soh vohr-RAY sohl-TAHN-toh OO-nah fret-TAH-tah kohn oon POH dee proh-SHOOT-toh. I am not very hungry (*lit.*, I don't have much appetite) because I had breakfast very late, at eleven. Now I would like to have just an omelet with some Italian ham.
- 20 mee DEE'ah eel BREEK-koh, pehr pyah-CHEH-reh. VOH-l'yoh PREHN-deh-reh oon POH dee kahf-FEH een KWEH-stah TAH-tsah. Will you please let me have (*lit.*, give me) the coffee pot? I would like to have (*lit.*, take) some coffee in this cup.
- 21 EHK-koh lah dzook-keh-RYEH-rah; MEHT-tah LAY loh DZOOK-keh-roh. Here is the sugar bowl; help yourself to (*lit.*, you put) the sugar.
- 22 kah-meh-RYEH-reh, eel KOHN-toh, . . . KWAHN-toh EH? Waiter, the check, please. How much is it?

---

instead of the indirect object pronoun *mi* for emphasis. 16. *Sia* is the subjunctive of *essere*, here required by the impersonal expression *mi sembra*. 17. *Mi dia* is the *lei* form of the imperative of *dare*. See Note 11. 18. *Bricco*, synonym for *caffettiera*, is the more elegant word for "coffee pot," when serving at the table.

94 THE CORTINA METHOD

23 Ecco, signore. Ottocento cinquanta lire. Le porterò subito il resto.

24 Va bene. Lasciamo una mancia al cameriere.

25 Dopo questo pranzo luculliano<sup>20</sup> non crede lei che dovremmo<sup>21</sup> fare una passeggiata?<sup>22</sup>

26 Mi farebbe<sup>23</sup> molto piacere.<sup>24</sup>

---

19. *Lei* is used for emphasis after the imperative *metta*. The word *stesso* after *lei* is understood. 20. The word *luculliano* derives from *Lucullus* (*Lucullo*) a Roman general and consul, famous for, among other things, the sumptuous banquets he gave. The expression *un pranzo luculliano* is still in common use

- 23 EHK-koh, see-N'YOH-reh. oht-toh-CHEHN-toh cheen-KWAHN-tah LEE-reh. leh pohr-teh-ROH soo-bee-toh eel REH-stoh. Here it is, sir. Eight hundred fifty lire. I shall bring you the change immediately.
- 24 vah BEH-neh. lah-SHYAH-moh oonah MAHN-chah ahl kah-meh-RYEH-reh. Very well. Let's leave a tip for the waiter.
- 25 DOH-poh KWEH-stoh PRAHN-dzoh loo-kool-LYAH-noh nohn KREH-deh LAY keh doh-VREHM-moh FAH-reh oonah pahs-seh-DJAH-tah? After this sumptuous dinner don't you think we ought to go for a walk?
- 26 mee fah-REH-beh MOHL-toh pyah-CHEH-reh. It would please me very much.

---

after two thousand years. 21. *Dovremmo* is the *noi* form of the conditional of *dovere*. 22. *Fare una passeggiata* is an idiom: "to take a walk." 23. *farebbe* is the impersonal third person of the conditional of *fare*. 24. *Lit.*, it would be very pleasing to me.



## Decima Lezione

### Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

<b>scegliere</b> (SHEH-l'yeh-reh)	to choose
<b>delle volte</b> (DEHL-leh VOHL-teh)	at times
<b>qualche volta</b> (KWAHL-keh VOHL-tah)	sometimes
<b>un invitato</b> (een-vee-TAH-toh)	a guest

<b>accendere</b> (ah-CHEHN-deh-reh)	to light
<b>spegnere</b> (SPEH-n'yeh-reh)	to extinguish
<b>arredare</b> (ahr-reh-DAH-reh)	to furnish
<b>il giardino</b> (jahr-DEE-noh)	garden
<b>la fontana</b> (fohn-TAH-nah)	fountain



<b>a destra</b> (ah DEH-strah)	to the right
<b>a sinistra</b> (ah see-NEE-strah)	to the left
<b>comodo</b> (koh-moh-doh)	comfortable
<b>la casa</b> (KAH-zah)	house
<b>lo studio</b> (STOO-dyoh)	study
<b>lo stile</b> (STEE-leh)	style
<b>l'aiuto</b> (lah-yoo-toh)	help

<b>un vano, una camera</b> <sup>1</sup> (VAH-noh, KAH-meh-rah)	a room
<b>il palazzo</b> (pah-LAH-tsoh)	building, palace
<b>l'appartamento</b> (lahp-pahr-tah-MEHN-toh)	apartment
<b>il cortile</b> (kohr-TEE-leh)	inner court, courtyard

<b>la periferia</b> (peh-ree-feh-REE'ah)	suburbs
<b>il vasellame</b> (vah-zehl-LAH-meh)	china
<b>la luce elettrica</b> (... eh-LEHT-tree-kah)	electric light
<b>l'elettricità</b> (leh-leht-tree-chee-TAH)	electricity
<b>la finestra</b> (fee-NEH-strah)	window

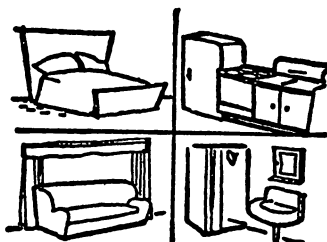
## LA CASA • LA MOBILIA

## THE HOUSE, THE FURNITURE

(lah KAH-zah, lah moh-BEE-lyah)

<b>il primo piano</b> (FREE-moh PYAH-noh)	first floor
<b>il pianterreno</b> (pyahn-tehr-REH-noh)	ground floor
<b>il piano superiore</b> (PYAH-noh soo-peh-RYOH-reh)	upper floor

<b>la scala</b> (SKAH-lah)	stairway
<b>il salotto</b> (sah-LOHT-toh)	living room
<b>il bagno<sup>2</sup></b> (BAH-n'yoh)	bathroom, bath
<b>la cucina</b> (KOO-CHEE-nah)	kitchen
<b>il letto</b> (LEHT-toh)	bed
<b>la coperta</b> (koh-PEHR-tah)	blanket
<b>il cuscino</b> (KOO-SHEE-noh)	pillow
<b>il divano</b> (dee-VAH-noh)	sofa
<b>la sedia</b> (SEH-dyah)	chair



<b>l'ascensore</b> (lah-shehn-SOH-reh)	elevator
<b>la biblioteca</b> (bee-blee'oh-TEH-kah)	library
<b>la sala da<sup>3</sup> pranzo</b> (SAH-lah dah PRAHN-dzoh)	dining room
<b>la camera da<sup>3</sup> letto</b> (KAH-meh-rah dah LEHT toh)	bedroom
<b>il lenzuolo<sup>4</sup></b> (lehn-TSWOH-loh)	bed sheet
<b>l'armadio</b> (lahr-MAH-dyoh)	closet
<b>la toletta</b> (toh-LEHT-tah)	dressing table
<b>il cassettone</b> (kabs-seht-TOH-neh)	bureau
<b>il tappeto</b> (tahp-PEH-toh)	rug

<b>il gas</b> (gahs)	gas	<b>il lavabo</b> (lah-VAH boh)	washstand
<b>la luce</b> (LOO-cheh)	light	<b>la vasca</b> (VAH-skah)	bath tub
<b>la porta</b> (POHR-tah)	door	<b>lo specchio</b> (SPEHK-kyoh)	mirror
<b>la chiave</b> (KYAH-veh)	key	<b>le tendine</b> (tehn-DEE-neh)	curtains
<b>il quadro</b> (KWAH-droh)	picture	<b>il mobile</b> (MOH-bee-leh)	piece of furniture
<b>il legno</b> (LEH-n'yoh)	wood		

<b>il frigorifero</b> (free-goh-REE-feh-roh)	refrigerator
<b>la stufa</b> (STOO-fah)	stove, kitchen range
<b>il gabinetto</b> (gah-bee-NEHT-toh)	toilet
<b>l'asciugamano</b> (lah-shyoo-gah-MAH-noh)	towel
<b>la lampada</b> (LAHM-pah-dah)	lamp
<b>la lampadina</b> (lahm-pah-DEE-nah)	bulb
<b>il paralume</b> (pah-rah-LOO-meh)	lamp shade



CONVERSATION

1 Io abito in città. Dove abitano loro?

2 Noi abitiamo alla periferia.

3 Di quanti piani<sup>5</sup> è la loro<sup>6</sup> casa?

4 Noi abitiamo in un palazzo di tre piani, senza contare il pianterreno.

5 Quanti vani ci sono nel loro appartamento.



6 Il nostro appartamento si compone di sette vani: il salotto, la sala da pranzo, due camere da letto, la cucina, il bagno e lo studio.

7 Bisogna salire<sup>7</sup> le scale per venire da<sup>8</sup> loro?

8 Niente affatto! C'è un ascensore.

9 Ha arredato lei stesso l'appartamento, signor Conti?

10 Sì, ma naturalmente mia moglie m'ha aiutato a<sup>9</sup> scegliere la mobilia, che è di stile moderno.

11 Se non le dà<sup>10</sup> molto disturbo, mi piacerebbe molto vedere l'arredamento del suo appartamento.

---

FOOTNOTES: 1. When referring to a specific room the word *camera* or *stanza* is always used. 2. *Il bagno* or *la stanza da bagno*. 3. The word *da* indicates use. See Note 25, Lesson 3. 4. The plural of *il lenzuolo* is *le lenzuola* (*fem.*).

## PRONUNCIATION

## TRANSLATION

- 1 EE'oh AH-bee-toh een cheet-TAH.  
DOH-veh AH-bee-tah-noh LOH-roh?  
I live in the city. Where do you live?
- 2 NOY ah-bee-TYAH-moh AHL-lah  
peh-ree-feh-REE'ah.  
We live in the suburbs.
- 3 dee KWAHN-tee PYAH-nee EH lah  
LOH-roh KAH-zah?  
How many floors are there in your house?
- 4 . . . pah-LAH-tsoh dee treh PYAH-  
nee, SEHN-tсах kohn-TAH-reh eel  
pyahn-tehr-REH-noh.  
We live in a three-story building,  
not counting the ground floor.
- 5 KWAHN-tee VAH-nee chee SOH-noh  
nehl LOH-roh ahp-pahr-tah-MEHN-  
toh?  
How many rooms are there in your apartment?
- 6 eel NOH-stroh . . . kohm-POH-neh  
dee SEHT-teh VAH-nee: eel sah-  
LOHT-toh, lah SAH-lah dah PRAHN-  
dzoh, DOO'eh KAH-meh-reh dah  
LEHT-toh, lah koo-CHEE-nah, eel  
BAH-n'yoh eh loh STOO-dyoh.  
Our apartment has seven rooms:  
the living room, the dining  
room, two bedrooms, the kit-  
chen, the bathroom, and the  
study.
- 7 bee-ZOH-n'yah sah-LEE-reh leh  
SKAH-leh pehr veh-NEE-reh dah  
LOH-roh?  
Do you have to climb the stairs  
to get to your place?
- 8 NYEHN-teh ahf-FAHT-toh! CHEH  
oon ah-shehn-SOH-reh.  
Not at all! There is an elevator.
- 9 AH ahr-reh-DAH-toh lay STEHS-soh  
lahp-pahr-tah-MEHN-toh, see-  
N'YOHR KOHN-tee?  
Did you furnish the apartment  
yourself, Mr. Conti?
- 10 SEE, mah MEE'ah MOH-l'yeh mah  
ah-yoo-TAH-toh ah SHEH-l'yeh-reh  
lah moh-BEE-lyah keh EH dee  
STEE-leh moh-DEHR-noh.  
Yes, but naturally my wife helped  
me to choose the furniture,  
which is modern (*lit.*, of mod-  
ern style).
- 11 seh nohn leh DAH MOHL-toh dee-  
STOOR-boh, mee pyah-cheh-REHB-  
beh veh-DEH-reh lahr-reh-dah-  
MEHN-toh dehl soo'oh ahp-pahr-  
tah-MEHN-toh.  
If it is no bother to you (*lit.*, gives  
you no bother), I should like  
very much to see how your  
apartment is furnished (*lit.*,  
the arrangement of).

---

5. *Lit.*, of how many floors. 6. *Loro* besides being a subject personal pronoun meaning "you" (polite plural) is a possessive adjective or pronoun meaning "your, yours (polite plural), their, theirs." As a possessive *loro* requires the definite article

12 Tutt'altro!<sup>11</sup> Mi farebbe molto piacere. Entriamo prima nel<sup>12</sup> salotto.

13 Ecco un divano, due poltrone, diverse piccole tavole con le lampade ed una graziosa raccolta di quadri.

14 Molto bello! Ed i mobili,<sup>13</sup> come vede, sono di mogano, che è un legno tanto<sup>14</sup> bello quanto<sup>14</sup> solido.



15 Qual'è l'arredamento della camera da letto?

16 Il letto, il cassetto, la toletta, l'armadio a specchio ed il comodino che sono di noce. L'armadio ed il cassetto sono forniti di due grandi specchi.

17 Sono autentici persiani questi tappeti?

18 No, sono di fabbricazione italiana, ma di buona qualità.

19 Andiamo nella sala da pranzo, per piacere. La tavola è grande perchè a volte abbiamo degli invitati. Ci sono in tutto dodici sedie ed una credenza dove mettiamo il servizio da tavola e l'argenteria.

---

before it, even when followed by a noun indicating a relative or member of the family. *Loro* is invariable. 7. *Salire* is an irregular verb. Its present is: *io salgo, tu sali, lei sale, noi saliamo, voi salite, loro salgono*. 8. See Note 17, Lesson 7. 9. *Aiutare* is one of the verbs that take *a* to introduce a dependent infinitive. 10. *Dà* (gives) from the present of *dare*, an irregular verb: *io do, tu dai, lei dà, noi diamo, voi date, loro danno*. Notice that *dà* has an accent, to distinguish it from the word *da* (from, at). 11. *Tutt'altro!* An idiom: "anything but!" 12. *Entrare* is an intransitive verb and requires the preposition *in*, which contracts with the definite article. 13. *Mobili* is a collective noun used in the plural. The singular *mobile*, is used when referring to a single piece of furniture. It literally means

12 **TOOT-AHL-troh!** mee fah-**REHB-beh**.  
 . . . ehn-**TRYAH-moh** **FREE-mah**  
 nehl sah-**LOHT-toh**.

13 **EHK-koh** oon dee-**VAH-noh**. **DOO'eh**  
 pohl-**TROH-neh**, dee-**VEHR-seh**  
**PEEK-koh-leh** **TAH-voh-leh** kohn  
 leh **LOH-roh** **LAHM-pah-deh** ed  
 oo-nah **grah-TSYOH-zah** **rahk-**  
**KOHL-tah** dee **KWAH-dree**.

14 **MOHL-toh** **BEHL-loh!** ed ee **MOH-**  
**bee-lee**, **KOH-meh** **VEH-deh**, **SOH-**  
**noh** dee **MOH-gah-noh**, keh **EH**  
 oon **LEH-n'yoh** **TAHN-toh** **BEHL-**  
**loh** **KWAHN-toh** **SOH-lee-doh**.

15 **kwah-LEH** lahr-reh-dah-**MEHN-toh**  
**DEHL-lah** **KAH-meh-rah** dah **LEHT-**  
**toh?**

16 eel **LEHT-toh**, eel **kahs-seht-TOH-**  
**neh**, lah toh-**LEHT-tah**, lahr-**MAH-**  
**dyoh** ah **SPEHK-kyoh** ed eel **koh-**  
**moh-DEE-noh** keh **SOH-noh** dee  
**NOH-cheh**. . . . **SOH-noh** **fohr-NEE-**  
**tee** dee **DOO'eh** **GRAHN-dee** **SPEHK-**  
**kyee**.

17 **SOH-noh** ah'oo-**TEHN-tee-chee**  
 pehr-**SYAH-nee** **KWEH-stee** **tahp-**  
**FEH-tee?**

18 . . . fahb-bree-kah-**TSYOH-neh** ee-  
 tah-**LYAH-nah**, mah dee **BWOH-nah**  
 kwah-lee-**TAH**.

19 ahn-**DYAH-moh** **NEHL-lah** **SAH-lah**  
 dah **PRAHN-dzoh**, pehr pyah-**CHEH-**  
**reh**. lah **TAH-voh-lah** **EH** **GRAHN-**  
**deh** pehr-**KEH** ah **VOHL-teh** ahb-  
**BYAH-moh** **DEH-l'yee** een-**VEE-TAH-**  
**tee**. chee **SOH-noh** een **TOOT-toh**  
**DOH-dee-chee** **SEH-dyeh** ed oo-nah  
**kreH-DEHN-tsah** **DOH-veh** meht-  
**TYAH-moh** eel sehr-**VEE-tsyoh** dah  
**TAH-voh-lah** eh lahr-**jehn-teh-**  
**REE'ah**.

On the contrary! That would please me very much. Let's first enter (into) the living room.

Here are a sofa, two armchairs, several small tables with lamps, and a lovely collection of pictures.

Very beautiful! And the furniture, as you see, is of mahogany, which is a wood as beautiful as it is strong.

What are the furnishings of the bedroom?

The bed, the bureau, the dressing table, the wardrobe with a mirror, and the night table, which are of walnut. The wardrobe and the bureau have (*lit.*, are furnished with) two large mirrors.

Are these authentic Persian rugs?

No, they are of Italian manufacture, but of good quality.

Let's go into the dining room, if you please. The center table is large because at times we have guests. There are in all twelve chairs and a buffet where (*lit.*, in which) we put the table service and the silverware.

---

"movable." 14. "as . . . as . . ." is a comparative of equality. See Note 11, Lesson 5. 15. *Com'è* (*come è*) used in an exclamatory sentence requires an inverted word order, i.e. the verb before the subject. 16. *Più . . . più*. An idiom: "the more . . . the more." 17. *Guardare* means "to look" and "to look at." 18. *Nostro* is

20 Com'è<sup>15</sup> grande la sua cucina! Più<sup>16</sup> la guardo,<sup>17</sup> più<sup>18</sup> mi piace.

21 Infatti, è così spaziosa che qualche volta consumiamo qui i nostri<sup>18</sup> pasti. Abbiamo un frigorifero ed una stufa elettrica, e l'acquaio per lavare i piatti.

22 Posso vedere la stanza da bagno?

23 Faccia<sup>19</sup> come se fosse<sup>20</sup> a casa sua.<sup>21</sup> Il sapone e gli<sup>22</sup> asciugamani sono a sinistra del lavabo, accanto alla vasca.

---

both a possessive adjective and a possessive pronoun. Its different forms are: *il nostro, la nostra, i nostri, le nostre*. 19. *Faccia, lei* form of the imperative of *fare*. 20. *Fosse, lei* form of the imperfect subjunctive of *essere*. Subjunctive is required

- 20 koh-MEH GRAHN-deh lah soo'ah  
koo-CHEE-nahl PYOO lah GWAHR-  
doh, PYOO mee PYAH-cheh.      How large your kitchen is! The  
more I look at it, the more I  
like it.
- 21 een-FAHT-tee, EH koh-ZEE spah-  
TSYOH-zah keh KWAHL-keh VOHL-  
tah kohn-soo-MYAH-moh KWEE ee  
NOH-stree PAH-stee. ahb-BYAH-  
moh oon free-goh-REE-feh-roh ed  
oo-nah STOO-fah eh-LEHT-tree-  
kah, eh lahk-KWAH'yoh pehr lah-  
VAH-reh ee PYAHT-tee.      Indeed, it is so spacious that  
sometimes we eat (consume)  
our meals here. We have a re-  
frigerator and an electric stove,  
and a sink for (to wash) the  
dishes.
- 22 POHS-soh veh-DEH-reh lah STAHN-  
tsah dah BAH-n'yoh?      May I see the bathroom?
- 23 FAH-tchah KOH-meh seh FOHS-seh  
ah KAH-zah soo'ah. eel sah-POH-  
neh eh l'yee ah-shyoo-gah-MAH-  
nee SOH-noh ah see-NEE-strah dehl  
lah-VAH-boh, ahk-KAHN-toh AHL-  
lah VAH-skah.      Make yourself at home. The soap  
and towels are to the left of  
the washstand, beside the bath-  
tub.

---

by *faccia*, which implies a wish or a command. See Reference Grammar. 21. *A casa sua* is an idiom. Likewise *a casa mia*, *a casa nostra*, etc. 22. In a series of nouns the definite article is used before each noun.



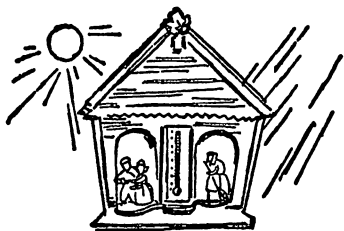
# Undicesima Lezione

## Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

**una corrente d'aria**<sup>1</sup> (kohr-REHN-teh DAH-ryah) a draft  
**un raffreddore** (raf-frehd-DOH-reh) a cold  
**prendere un raffreddore** (FREHN-deh-reh oon . . .) to catch a cold

**un soffio** (SOHF-fyoh) a breath  
**un soffio d'aria** (. . . DAH-ryah) a breath of air  
**si soffoca** (see SOHF-foh-kah) it is suffocating  
**al disopra** (ahl dee-SOH-prah) above  
**al disotto** (ahl dee-SOHT-toh) below  
**acuisce** (ah-koo'EE-sheh) intensifies  
**indicare** (een-dee-KAH-reh) to indicate, point  
**piacevole** (pyah-CHEH-voh-leh) agreeable, pleasant

**avvicinarsi** (ahv-vee-chee-NAHR-see) to draw near  
**si avvicina** (see ahv-vee-CHEE-nah) it draws near  
**l'ombra** (LOHM-brah) the shade, the shadow



**l'aria** (LAH-ryah) air  
**laggiù** (lah-DJOO) down there  
**la paura** (pah-OO-rah) fear  
**il grado** (GRAH-doh) degree  
**umido** (OO-mee-doh) humid,  
damp  
**aprire** (ah-PREE-reh) to open

**fa fresco**<sup>2</sup> (fah FREH-skoh) it is cool  
**ho paura or temo** (oh pah-oo-rah, TEH-moh) I am afraid

## CHE TEMPO FA?

## HOW IS THE WEATHER?

(keh TEHM-poh FAH)

in ascesa<sup>3</sup> (een ah-SHEH-zah)  
 in discesa (een dee-SHEH-zah)  
 centigrado<sup>4</sup> (chehn-TEE-grah-doh)  
 la temperatura (tehm-peh-rah-roo-rah)  
 il termometro (tehr-MOH-meh-troh)  
 il barometro (bah-ROH-meh-troh)

rising  
 dropping  
 centigrade  
 temperature  
 thermometer  
 barometer



piovere (PYOH-veh-reh) to rain  
 piove (PYOH-veh) it is raining  
 la pioggia (PYOH-djah) the rain  
 nevicare to snow  
 (neh-vee-KAH-reh)  
 nevicare (NEH-vee-kah) it is snowing  
 la neve (NEH-veh) the snow  
 il lampo (LAHM-poh) lightning  
 il tuono (TWOH-nah) thunder

un acquazzone (ahk-kwah-TSOH-neh)  
 a torrenti (ah tohr-REHN-tee)  
 le soprascarpe<sup>5</sup> (soh-prah-SKAHR-peh)  
 l'ombrello or il parapigioggia (ohm-BREHL-loh,  
 pah-rah-PYOH-djah)

a shower (rain)  
 pouring  
 rubbers  
 umbrella

il tempo è mite (. . . MEE-teh)  
 tira vento<sup>6</sup> (TEE-rah VEHN-toh)  
 lampeggia (lahm-PEH-djah)  
 tuona (TWOH-nah)  
 c'è nebbia<sup>7</sup> (CHEH NEHB-byah)  
 il tempo è nuvoloso (. . . noo-voh-  
 LOH-zoh)

it (the weather) is mild  
 it is windy  
 it is lightning  
 it is thundering  
 it is foggy  
 it is cloudy, overcast

la tempesta (tehm-PEH-stah)  
 l'uragano (loo-rah-GAH-noh)  
 l'umidità (loo-mee-dee-TAH)  
 c'è umidità (CHEH oo-mee-dee-TAH)  
 il ghiaccio (GYAH-tchoh)  
 c'è fango<sup>7</sup> (CHEH FAHN-goh)

storm  
 hurricane  
 humidity  
 it is damp, humid  
 ice  
 it is muddy

la nebbia (NEHB-byah) fog  
 la nuvola (NOO-voh-lah) cloud  
 il clima (KLEE-mah) climate

il gelo (JEH-loh) frost  
 si gela (see JEH-lah) it is freezing  
 il fango (FAHN-goh) mud



## CONVERSATION

1 Che tempo fa?<sup>8</sup>

2 Il tempo è meraviglioso. Fa bel tempo.

3 Apra,<sup>9</sup> per piacere, la finestra e veda<sup>10</sup> che tempo fa.

4 C'è un bel sole, ma fa molto freddo.

5 Quanti gradi abbiamo? La temperatura è sopra o sotto zero?

6 Il termometro segna quattro gradi sotto zero.

7 Credo che avremo<sup>11</sup> cattivo tempo. Il barometro indica pioggia.



8 Il barometro è in discesa. Temo che avremo una tempesta di neve.<sup>12</sup>

9 Guardi come lampeggia! L'uragano<sup>13</sup> s'avvicina. Tira già un forte vento.

10 Qual'è la temperatura massima in Italia?

11 In linea generale,<sup>14</sup> si può dire che il clima dell'Italia Settentrionale sia simile a quello di Nuova York, ma è più mite.

12 Com'è il clima dell'Italia Meridionale?

FOOTNOTES: 1. *Lit.*, a current of air. 2. See Note 1, Lesson 6. 3. Idioms. 4. In Italy the temperature is measured in degrees centigrade. 5. The words *le calosce* or *le galosce* may be used in lieu of *soprascarpe*. 6. *Tira vento* is an idiom. *Lit.*, the wind is pulling. 7. *Lit.*, there is fog, there is humidity, there is

## PRONUNCIATION

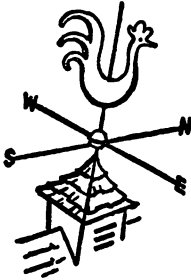
- 1 keh TEHM-poh FAH?
- 2 eel TEHM-poh EH meh-rah-vee-L'YOH-zoh. FAH behl TEHM-poh.
- 3 AH-prah, pehr pyah-CHEH-reh, lah fee-NEH-strah eh VEH-dah keh TEHM-poh FAH.
- 4 CHEH oon behl SOH-leh, mah fah MOHL-toh FREHD-doh.
- 5 KWAHN-tee GRAH-dee ahh-BYAH-moh? lah tehm-peh-rah-TOO-rah EH SOH-prah oh SOHT-toh DZEH-roh?
- 6 eel tehr-MOH-meh-troh SEH-n'yah KWAHT-troh GRAH-dee SOHT-toh DZEH-toh.
- 7 KREH-doh keh ah-VREH-moh kaht-TEE-voh TEHM-poh; eel bah-ROH-meh-troh EEN-dee-kah PYOH-djah.
- 8 . . . dee-SHEH-zah. TEH-moh keh ah-VREH-moh oo-nah tehm-PEH-stah dee NEH-veh.
- 9 GWAHR-dee KOH-meh lahm-PEH-djah! loo-rah-GAH-noh sah-v-vee-CHEE-nah. TEE-rah JAH oon FOHR-teh VEHN-toh.
- 10 kwah-LEH lah tehm-peh-rah-TOO-rah MAHS-see-mah een ee-TAH-lyah?
- 11 een LEE-neh'ah jeh-neh-RAH-leh, see PWOH DEE-teh keh eel KLEE-mah dehl-lee-TAH-lyah seht-tehn-tree'oh-NAH-leh SEE'ah SEE-mee-leh ah KWEHL-loh dee NWOH-vah YOHRK mah EH PYOO MEE-teh.
- 12 koh-MEH eel KLEE-mah dehl-lee-TAH-lyah meh-ree-dyoh-NAH-leh?

## TRANSLATION

- How is the weather?
- The weather is wonderful. The weather is fine.
- Please open the window and see how the weather is.
- There is a beautiful sun, but it is very cold.
- What is the temperature (*lit.*, how many degrees do we have)? Is the temperature above or below zero?
- The thermometer shows (*indicates*) four degrees below zero.
- I think we are going to have some bad weather; the barometer indicates rain.
- The barometer is falling (*lit.*, is in descent); I am afraid we are going to have a snowstorm.
- Look how it's lightning! A hurricane is approaching; there is already a strong wind.
- What is the maximum temperature in Italy?
- Generally speaking, one can say that the climate of northern Italy is similar to that of New York, but it is milder.
- How is the climate of southern Italy?

mud. 8. *Lit.*, What weather does it make? 9. Imperative of *aprire*. 10. Imperative of *vedere*. 11. Notice the omission of the word *del*, meaning "some." 12. *Lit.*, a storm of snow. 13. Notice the peculiar use of the definite article before *uragano*, as compared to the indefinite article in the English translation.

13 Durante l'estate fa molto caldo, ma d'inverno il clima è mite, quasi simile a quello della California. Non nevica quasi mai,<sup>15</sup> e piove poco.



14 Sulla Costa Ligure la temperatura è spesso di<sup>16</sup> venti o venticinque gradi centigradi, anche in inverno. Anche lì il clima è simile a quello<sup>17</sup> della California.

15 Sarà<sup>18</sup> molto piacevole nell'inverno.

16 Ah, sì! Mi piacerebbe<sup>19</sup> passare<sup>20</sup> l'inverno in uno dei luoghi incantevoli che si trovano sulla Costa Ligure.

17 Crede che pioverà oggi?

18 Il tempo è nuvoloso, ma credo che faccia<sup>21</sup> troppo freddo per piovere. Probabilmente avremo del gelo, e il tempo minaccia una tempesta di neve.

19 Infatti, nevica già. Dovrebbe mettere l'impermeabile prima di uscire,<sup>22</sup> perchè un parapigioggia non le servirebbe a nulla.

20 Ha le soprascarpe?<sup>23</sup>

---

14. Idiom. *Linea* means "line." 15. Notice that the Italian expression for "never" is: *non* before the verb, and *mai* after the verb. The word *mai* alone means "never" when used without a verb. 16. Notice the idiomatic use of the word *di* (of). 17. *Quello* is a demonstrative pronoun. The other forms are: *quella, quelli, quelle*. 18. *Sarà* is future of probability. 19. *Piacerebbe* is the impersonal third person of the conditional of *piacere*. 20. *Passare* means "to spend" when used in connection with a noun implying duration of time. Otherwise it means "to pass."

13 doo-RAHN-teh leh-STAH-teh fah MOHL-toh KAHL-doh, mah deen-VEHR-noh eel KLEE-mah EH MEE-teh, KWAH-zee SEE-mee-leh ah KWEHL-loh DEHL-lah kah-lee-FOHR-nyah. nohn NEH-vee-kah KWAH-zee MAH'y, eh PYOH-veh POH-koh.

14 SOOL-lah KOH-stah LEE-goo-reh lah teh-m-peh-rah-TOO-rah EH SPEHS-soh dee VEHN-tee oh vehn-tee-CHEEN-kweh GRAH-dee chehn-TEE-grah-dee, AHN-keh een een-VEHR-noh. AHN-keh LEE eel KLEE-mah EH SEE-mee-leh ah KWEHL-loh DEHL-lah kah-lee-FOHR-nyah.

15 sah-RAH MOHL-toh pyah-CHEH-voh-leh nehl-leen-VEHR-noh.

16 AH, SEE! mee pyah-cheh-REHB-beh pahs-SAH-reh leen-VEHR-noh een OO-noh day LWOH-gee een-kahn-TEH-voh-lee keh see TROH-vah-noh SOOL-lah KOH-stah LEE-goo-reh.

17 KREH-deh keh pyoh-veh-RAH OH-djee?

18 . . . noo-voh-LOH-zoh, mah KREH-doh keh FAH-tchah TROHP-poh FREHD-doh pehr PYOH-veh-reh. proh-bah-beel-MEHN-teh ah-VREH-moh dehl JEH-loh, eh eel TEHM-poh mee-NAH-tchah oo-nah teh-m-PEH-stah dee NEH-veh.

19 een-FAHT-tee, NEH-vee-kah JAH-doh-VREHB-beh MEHT-teh-reh leem-pehr-meh'AH-bee-leh FREE-mah dee oo-SHEE-reh, pehr-KEH oon pah-rah-PYOH-djah nohn leh sehr-vee-REHB-beh ah NOOL-lah.

20 AH leh soh-prah-SKAHR-peh?

During the summer it is very hot, but in winter the climate is mild, almost similar to that of California. It hardly ever snows (*lit.*, it snows almost never), and there is little rain (*lit.*, rains little).

On the Ligurian Coast the temperature is often twenty or twenty-five degrees centigrade, even in winter. There too the climate is similar to that of California.

It is probably very pleasant in winter.

Oh, yes! I would like to spend the winter in one of the enchanting places (that are found) on the Ligurian Coast.

Do you think it will rain today?

The weather is cloudy, but I think it is too cold for rain (to rain). We shall probably have some frost, and a snowstorm is threatening.

In fact, it's snowing already. You ought to put on your raincoat before going out, for an umbrella would be useless to you (*lit.*, would serve you to nothing).

Do you have your rubbers?

21. *Faccia* is the subjunctive of *fare*, required by the word *credo*. See Reference Grammar. 22. In Italian, after a preposition, the verb is used in the infinitive.

23. Notice the omission of the possessive adjective before *soprascarpe*. This is done because *soprascarpe* is a personal article. 24. *Troppa* is an adjective here, and agrees with *umidità*. When *troppa* is an adverb it is invariable. The same applies to the word *molto*.



- 21 Non ha mai fatto un freddo simile durante tutto l'inverno.
- 22 Non crede lei che faccia troppo caldo?
- 23 Il caldo è soffocante. Non c'è un soffio d'aria.
- 24 C'è troppa<sup>24</sup> umidità, e l'umidità acuisce tanto il freddo quanto il caldo.

- 21 nohn ah MAH'y FAHT-toh oon  
FREHD-doh SEE-mee-leh doo-RAHN-  
teh TOOT-toh leen-VEHR-noh.
- 22 nohn KREH-deh LAY keh FAH-  
tchah TROHP-poh KAHL-doh?
- 23 eel KAHL-doh EH soh-f-foh-KAHN-  
teh. nohn CHEH oon SOHF-fyoh  
DAH-tyah.
- 24 cheh TROHP-pah oo-mee-dee-TAH,  
eh loo-mee-dee-TAH ah-koo'EE-  
sheh TAHN-toh eel FREHD-doh  
KWAHN-toh eel KAHL-doh.
- It has never been so cold during  
the whole winter.
- Don't you think that it is too  
hot?
- The heat is stifling. There isn't  
a breath of air.
- There is too much humidity, and  
the humidity intensifies the  
heat as well as the cold.

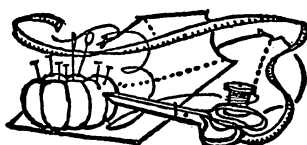


# Dodicesima Lezione

## Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

la bontà (bohn-TAH)	kindness, goodness
avere la bontà di (ah-VEH-reh . . . dee)	to have the kindness to
la cintura (cheen-TOO-rah)	belt
la vita (VEE-tah)	waistline ( <i>also</i> life)
il colletto (kohl-LEHT-toh)	collar
la varietà (vah-ryeh-TAH)	variety

largo (LAHR-goh)	large, wide
stretto (STREHT-toh)	tight, narrow
nuovo (NWOH-voh)	new
ciò (CHOH)	that
cucire (koo-CHEE-reh)	to sew
tagliare (tah-L'YAH-reh)	to cut



senz'altro <sup>1</sup> (sehn-TSAHL-troh)	without fail
precisamente (preh-chee-zah-MEHN-teh)	precisely
dopo di ciò (DOH-poh dee CHOH)	after that

provare (proh-VAH-reh)	to try, try on	usare (oo-ZAH-reh)	to use, employ
mettere (MEHT-teh-reh)	to put, put on	coprire (koh-FREE-reh)	to cover

aggiungere (ah-DJOON-jeh-reh)	to add
la stoffa or il tessuto (STOHF-fah, tehs-soo-toh)	material
dimenticare (dee-mehn-tee-KAH-reh)	to forget

il colore (koh-LOH-reh)	the color	giallo (J AHL-loh)	yellow
bianco (BYAHN-koh)	white	verde (VEHR-deh)	green
nero (NEH-roh)	black	marrone (mahr-ROH-neh)	brown
rosso (ROHS-soh)	red	grigio (GREE-joh)	gray
celeste (ch eh-LEH-steh) or azzurro (ah-DZOOR-roh)		blue	

**IL SARTO • LA SARTA • LA MODA**

**THE TAILOR, THE DRESSMAKER  
FASHION**

(eel SAHR-toh, lah SAHR-tah,  
lah MOH-dah)

la sartoria (sahr-toh-REE-ah)	tailor shop
la macchina (MAHK-kee-nah)	machine
la macchina da <sup>2</sup> cucire (... dah koo-CHEE-reh)	sewing machine
le forbici (FOHR-bee-chee)	scissors
il modello (moh-DEHL-loh)	pattern

le guarnizioni (gwahr-nee-TSYOH-nee)	trimmings
la cucitura (koo-chee-TOO-rah)	seam, sewing
il merletto (mehr-LEHT-toh)	lace
il bottone (boht-TOH-neh)	button
l'ago (LAH-goh)	needle
il filo (FEE-loh)	thread

un vestito (veh-STEE-toh)	a suit
confezionare un vestito (kohn-feh-tsyoh-NAH-reh . . .)	to make a suit
la misura (mee-zoo-rah)	measure, measurement
prendere la misura (PREHN-deh-reh . . .)	to take the measurement



un pezzo (PEH-tsoh)	a piece
il cotone (koh-TOH-neh)	cotton
la lana (LAH-nah)	wool
la seta (SEH-tah)	silk
la flanella (flah-NEHL-lah)	flannel
il lino (LEE-noh)	linen
il velluto (vehl-LOO-toh)	velvet
il crespo (KREH-spoh)	crepe
il nastro (NAH-stroh)	ribbon

una giacca (JAHK-kah)	a jacket, coat
una giacca larga (. . . LAHR-gah)	a loose jacket
una giacca aderente (. . . ah-deh-REHN-teh)	a close-fitting jacket
a colore <sup>3</sup> (ah-koh-LOH-reh)	colored

variare (vah-RYAH-reh)	to vary	il braccio (BRAH-tchoh)	the arm
lo stile (loh STEE-leh)	style	il fianco (FYAHN-koh)	the hip
la moda (MOH-dah)	fashion	la manica (MAH-nce-kah)	sleeve
attuale (aht-too'AH-leh)	present, actual	il metro (MEH-troh)	meter
il collo (KOHL-loh)	neck	il ricamo (ree-KAH-moh)	embroidery



## CONVERSATION

1 Signorina Del Vecchio, vuole avere la bontà di dirci di quanti pezzi si compone una veste da<sup>4</sup> donna?



2 Normalmente si compone di due pezzi: del busto e della gonna. Ma ci sono anche delle vesti ad<sup>5</sup> un solo pezzo.

3 Benissimo,<sup>6</sup> signorina. E come si chiama la parte della veste che copre il braccio?

4 Si chiama manica. La parte della veste che aderisce al collo si chiama colletto, e la parte al di sopra dei fianchi<sup>7</sup> dove si usa mettere la cintura si chiama vita.

5 Come si usano<sup>8</sup> adesso le maniche?<sup>9</sup>

6 Per le maniche la moda varia spesso. Delle volte si portano molto corte o molto lunghe<sup>9</sup>; delle volte sono larghe<sup>9</sup> o molto strette.

7 Di che si fanno le vesti?

---

FOOTNOTES: 1. An idiom. 2. *Da* implies use See Note 25, Lesson 3. 3. *A colore* is an idiom. 4. Special use of the word *da*. In this case it means "to be used by." 5. *a* often adds a *d* before a vowel. Here, used idiomatically, it means "in." 6. *Benissimo* is the absolute superlative form of *bene*. 7. The singular of *fianchi* is *fianco*. 8. *Usano*, impersonal form of *usare*, agrees with *maniche*. 9. A reminder that nouns and adjectives ending in *-ca* and *-ga* take an *h* before the plural ending. 10. *Cui* is a relative pronoun. See Note 19, Lesson 3.

PRONUNCIATION

1 see-n'yoh-REE-nah dehl VEHK-kyoh, VWOH-leh ah-VEH-reh lah bohn-TAH dee DEER-chee dee KWAHN-tee PEH-tsee see kohm-POH-neh OO-nah VEH-steh dah DOHN-nah?

2 nohr-mahl-MEHN-teh see kohm-POH-neh dee DOO'eh PEH-tsee; dehl BOO-stoh eh DEHL-lah GOHN-nah. mah chee SOH-noh AHN-keh DEHL-leh VEH-stee ahd oon SOH-loh PEH-tsoh.

3 beh-NEE-see-moh . . . KOH-meh see KYAH-mah lah PAHR-teh . . . keh KOH-preh eel BRAH-tchoh?

4 . . . MAH-nee-kah . . . ah-deh-REE-sheh ahl KOHL-loh see KYAH-mah KOHL-LEHT-toh, . . . FYAHN-kee DOH-veh see oo-zah MEHT-teh-reh lah cheen-TOO-rah . . . VEE-tah.

5 KOH-meh see oo-zah-noh ah-DEHS-soh leh MAH-nee-keh?

6 . . . MOH-dah VAH-ryah SPEHS-soh. DEHL-leh VOHL-teh see POHR-tahnoh MOHL-toh KOHR-teh oh . . . LOON-geh; DEHL-leh VOHL-teh SOH-noh LAHR-geh oh MOHL-toh STREHT-teh.

7 dee KEH see FAHN-noh leh VEH-stee?

TRANSLATION

Miss Del Vecchio, will you be good enough to tell us of how many pieces a woman's dress is made?

Usually it consists of two pieces: the bodice and the skirt. But there are also dresses in a single piece.

Very good, Miss. And what is the part of the dress that covers the arm called?

It is called the sleeve. The part of the dress which is fitted to the neck is called the collar, and the part above the hips, where it is customary to put the belt, is called the waist.

How are sleeves being worn now?

For sleeves the style often varies. Sometimes they are worn very short or very long; sometimes they are wide or very narrow.

Of what are dresses made?

---

11. Note the generic use of the definite article. 12. *S'intende di cucito* is an idiom. Notice reflexive form of the verb. 13. The infinitive of *occorrono* is *occorrere*, used only in the third person. 14. A meter is 39.37 inches. It is the standard measurement of length in Italy. 15. *Si taglia* and *si cuce* are impersonal expressions. 16. The word *a* is used idiomatically before *mano* and *macchina*. It means "by." 17. *Suppongo* is a form of the present of the irregular verb *supporre*. For other forms see table of irregular verbs. 18. *Si prova* is a reflexive

8 C'è una grande varietà di stoffe di cui<sup>10</sup> si possono fare, ma le più comuni sono la<sup>11</sup> seta, la lana ed il cotone. Poi c'è il crespò, il rayon, la flanella, il lino, il velluto, e tante altre ancora.

9 Lei s'intende di cucito,<sup>12</sup> non è vero?

10 Sì, signore, abbastanza per confezionare i miei vestiti con l'aiuto d'un modello.



11 Mi vuol dire come si fa una veste?

12 Con piacere. Occorrono<sup>13</sup> tre metri<sup>14</sup> o più di stoffa, che si taglia<sup>15</sup> con le forbici, seguendo il modello e le misure, e poi si cuce<sup>15</sup> con l'ago infilato col cotone o con la seta.

Certe cuciture si fanno a<sup>16</sup> mano, altre a<sup>16</sup> macchina.



13 Dopo di ciò suppongo<sup>17</sup> che lei si prova<sup>18</sup> la veste per vedere se le va bene.

14 Precisamente. Poi si aggiungono le guarnizioni che consistono in merletti, ricami, nastri e bottoni a colore.

verb. It means "try on yourself." 19. *Comprarsi* is a reflexive verb and means "to buy for himself." 20. *-ci* is a pronoun referring to a place already mentioned,

8 CHEH oo-nah GRAHN-deh vah-ryeh-TAH dee STOHF-feh dee KOO'y see POHS-soh-noh FAH-reh, mah leh PYOO koh-MOO-nee SOH-noh lah SEH-tah, lah LAH-nah ed eel koh-TOH-neh-POY CHEH eel KREH-spoh, eel rah-YOHN, lah fiah-NEHL-lah, eel LEE-noh, eel vehl-LOO-toh, eh TAHN-teh AHL-treh ahn-KOH-rah.

9 lay seen-TEHN-deh dee koo-CHEE-toh, nohn EH VEH-toh?

10 SEE, see-N'YOH-reh, ahb-bah-STAHN-tsah pehr kohn-feh-tsyoh-NAH-reh ee M'YAY veh-STEE-tee kohn lah-YOO-toh doon moh-DEHL-loh.

11 mee vWOHL DEE-reh KOH-meh see FAH oo-nah VEH-steh?

12 kohn pyah-CHEH-reh. ohk-KOHR-roh-noh treh MEH-tree oh PYOO dee STOHF-fah, keh see TAH-l'yah kohn leh FOHR-bee-chee seh-GWEHN-doh eel moh-DEHL-loh eh leh mee-ZOO-reh. eh POY see KOO-cheh kohn LAH-goh een-fee-LAH-toh kohl koh-TOH-neh oh kohn lah SEH-tah. CHEHR-teh koo-chee-TOO-reh see FAHN-noh ah MAH-noh, AHL-treh ah MAHK-kee-nah.

13 DOH-poh dee CHOH soop-POHN-goh keh lay see PROH-vah lah VEH-steh pehr veh-DEH-reh seh leh vah BEH-neh.

14 preh-chee-zah-MEHN-teh. POY see ah-DJOON-goh-noh leh gwahr-nee-TSYOH-nee keh kohn-SEE-stoh-noh een mehr-LEHT-tee, ree-KAH-mee, NAH-stree eh boht-TOH-nee ah koh-LOH-reh.

There is a great variety of materials of which they can be made, but the most common are silk, wool, and cotton. There are also crepe, rayon, flannel, linen, velvet, and many others.

You know how to sew, don't you (*lit.*, you understand about sewing)?

Yes, sir, enough to make my own dresses with the aid of a pattern.

Will you tell me how a dress is made?

With pleasure. You need (*lit.*, are necessary) three or more yards of material, which is cut with the scissors, following the pattern and the measurements, and then it is sewn with a needle threaded with cotton or silk. Some sewing (*lit.*, certain sewings) is done by hand and some (others) by machine.

After that I suppose you try the dress on to see if it fits you well.

Exactly. Then you add the trimmings, which consist of lace, embroidery, ribbons, and colored buttons.

---

and is attached to the imperative *andiamo*. 21. This is a peculiar use of *farmi*. It means "to have made for myself." 22. Imperative form of *dimenticare*. In

15 Avrà bisogno di questo danaro suo marito?

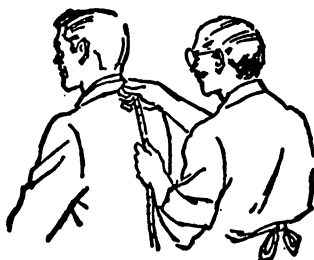
16 Ne avrà bisogno immediatamente, perchè oggi deve comprarsi<sup>19</sup> un vestito.

17 Da chi intende farsi confezionare il suo vestito?

18 Dal sarto all'angolo di Via Veneto. Il signor Leoni è un ottimo sarto.

19 Allora andiamoci.<sup>20</sup> Ecco suo marito.

20 Buon giorno, signor Leoni. Desidero farmi<sup>21</sup> un vestito.



21 Vuole avere la bontà di mostrarmi gli ultimi arrivi di tessuti?

22 Voglio un vestito fatto su misura, poichè gli abiti già confezionati non mi vanno mai bene.

23 Mi permetta di prendere le sue misure. Vuole una giacca larga o aderente?

24 La preferisco larga e comoda, e non dimentichi<sup>22</sup> che il vestito mi occorre per la prossima settimana.

25 Cercherò<sup>23</sup> di farglielo<sup>24</sup> trovare pronto senz'altro martedì o, al più tardi,<sup>25</sup> mercoledì.

---

verbs ending in *-care* and *-gare* an *h* is inserted between the stem of the verb and the ending when the ending is or begins with *e* or *i*. See Reference Grammar.  
 23. From the future of *cercare*. See Note 22 above. 24. *-glielo* is a double pro-

15 ah-VRAH bee-ZOH-n'yoh dee KWEH-stoh dah-NAH-roh soo'oh mah-REE toh?

Will your husband need this money?

16 . . . eem-meh-dyah-tah-MEHN-teh, pehr-KEH OH-djee DEH-veh kohm-PRAHR-see oon veh-STEE-toh.

He will need it immediately, because today he must buy a suit (for himself).

17 dah KEE een-TEHN-deh FAHR-see kohm-feh-tsyoh-NAH-reh eel soo'oh veh-STEE-toh?

By whom does he intend to have his suit made?

18 dahl SAHR-toh ahl-LAHN-goh-loh dee VEE'ah VEH-neh-toh. eel see-N'YOHR leh'OH-nee EH oon OHT-tee-moh SAHR-toh.

By the tailor at the corner of Via Veneto. Mr. Leoni is an excellent tailor.

19 ahl-LOH-rah ahn-DYAH-moh-chee. EHK-koh soo'oh mah-REE-toh.

Then let's go there. Here is your husband.

20 BWOHN JOHR-noh . . . deh-ZEE-deh-roh FAHR-mee oon veh-STEE-toh.

Good day, Mr. Leoni. I wish to have a suit made.

21 vwoh-leh ah-VEH-reh lah bohn-TAH dee moh-STRAHR-mee l'yee OOL-tee-mee ahr-REE-vee dee tehs-soo-tee?

Will you have the kindness to show me the latest (arrivals of) fabrics?

22 VOH-l'yoh oon veh-STEE-toh FAHT-toh soo mee-ZOO-rah, poy-KEH l'yee AH-bee-tee JAH kohm-feh-tsyoh-NAH-tee nohn mee VAHN-noh MAH'y BEH-neh.

I want a suit made to order (*lit.*, on measurement) because ready-made suits never fit me well.

23 mee pehr-MEHT-tah dee PREHN-deh-reh leh soo'eh mee-ZOO-reh. vwoh-leh oo-nah JAHK-kah LAHR-gah oh ah-deh-REHN-teh?

Allow me to take your measurements. Do you want the jacket loose or tight-fitting?

24 lah preh-feh-REE-skoh LAHR-gah eh KOH-moh-dah, eh nohn dee-MEHN-tee-kee keh . . . mee oh-KOH-reh pehr lah PROHS-see-mah seht-tee-MAH-nah.

I prefer it loose and comfortable, and don't forget that I need the suit next week.

25 chehr-keh-ROH dee FAHR-l'yeh-loh troh-VAH-reh PROHN-toh sehn-TSAHL-troh mahr-teh-DEE oh, ahl PYOO TAHR-dee, mehr-koh-leh-DEE.

I shall try to have it ready for you (*lit.*, make you find it) without fail Tuesday or, at the latest, Wednesday.

---

noun attached to the infinitive. See Reference Grammar. 25. *Al più tardi* is an idiom.



# Tredicesima Lezione

## Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

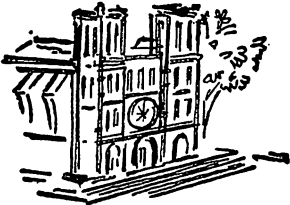
<b>una vettura</b> (veht-TOO-rah)		<b>a car, carriage</b>
<b>un'automobile</b> <sup>1</sup> (oo-nah'oo-toh-MOH-bee-leh)		<b>an automobile</b>
<b>il veicolo</b> (veh-EE-koh-loh)		<b>vehicle</b>
<b>una passeggiata</b> (pahs-sch-DJAH-tah)		<b>a walk</b>
<b>fare una passeggiata</b> <sup>2</sup> (FAH-reh . . .)		<b>to take a walk</b>
<b>andare a passeggio</b> <sup>2</sup> (ahn-DAH-reh ah pahs-SEH-djoh)		<b>to go for a walk</b>
<b>il mare</b> (MAH-reh)	<b>sea</b>	<b>dormire</b> (dohr-MEE-reh) <b>to sleep</b>
<b>il lido</b> (LEE-doh)	<b>seashore</b>	<b>alzarsi</b> (ahl-TSAHR-see) <b>to get up</b>
<b>la spiaggia</b> (SPYAH-djah)	<b>beach</b>	<b>sedersi</b> (seh-DEHR-see) <b>to sit down</b>
<b>l'orlo</b> (LOHR-loh)	<b>edge</b>	<b>la gente</b> (JEHN-teh) <b>people</b>
<b>tanto</b> (TAHN-toh)	<b>so, so much</b>	<b>il pedone</b> (peh-DOH-neh) <b>pedestrian</b>
<b>il costume da</b> <sup>3</sup> <b>bagno</b> (koh-STOO-meh dah BAH-n'yoh)		<b>bathing suit</b>
<b>fare i bagni</b> <sup>2</sup> (FAH-reh ee BAH-n'yee)		<b>to go bathing</b>
<b>la radio</b> (RAH-dyoh)		<b>radio</b>
<b>la televisione</b> (teh-leh-vee-ZYOH-neh)		<b>television</b>
<b>andare a letto</b> (ahn-DAH-reh ah LEHT-toh)		<b>to go to bed</b>
<b>addormentarsi</b> (ahd-dohr-mehn-TAHR-see)		<b>to fall asleep</b>
<b>svegliarsi</b> (zveh-L'YAHR-see)		<b>to awaken</b>
<b>lavarsi</b> (lah-VAHR-see)		<b>to wash (oneself)</b>
<b>vestirsi</b> (veh-STEER-see)		<b>to dress (oneself)</b>
<b>a sua disposizione</b> <sup>4</sup> (ah soo'ah dee-spoh-zee-TSYOH-neh)	<b>at your service</b>	
<b>prego</b> (PREH-goh)	<b>I beg of you (please); don't mention it (after "thank you")</b>	
<b>arrivederci</b> (ahr-ree-veh-DEHR-chee)	<b>until we meet again (familiar form)</b>	
<b>arrivederla</b> (ahr-ree-veh-DEHR-lah)	<b>until we meet again (polite form)</b>	

IN CITTA

IN TOWN

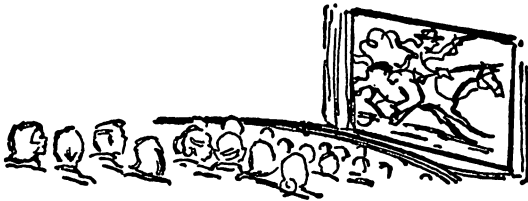
(een cheet-TAH)

<b>un edificio</b> (eh-dee-FEE-choh)	a building
<b>il palazzo di giustizia</b> (. . . joo-STEE-tsyah)	court house
<b>un ospedale</b> (oh-speh-DAH-leh)	a hospital
<b>il municipio</b> (moo-nee-CHEE-pyoh)	city hall
<b>il mercato</b> (mehr-KAH-toh)	the market



<b>il teatro</b> (teh'AH-troh)	theater
<b>una scuola</b> (SKWOH-lah)	a school
<b>una chiesa</b> (KYEH-zah)	a church
<b>una banca</b> (BAHN-kah)	a bank
<b>il parco</b> (PAHR-koh)	park
<b>la piazza</b> (PYAH-tsah)	square
<b>l'angolo</b> (LAHN-goh-loh)	corner

<b>la posta</b> (POH-stah)	post office, mail
<b>l'ufficio postale</b> (loof-FEE-choh poh-STAH-leh)	post office
<b>la stazione</b> (stah-TSYOH-neh)	station
<b>la via</b> (VEE-ah)	avenue, street
<b>la strada</b> (STRAH-dah)	street, road
<b>il corso</b> (KOHR-soh)	boulevard
<b>il marciapiede</b> (mahr-chah-PYEH-deh)	sidewalk
<b>la caserma</b> (kah-ZEHR-mah)	police station
<b>il traffico</b> (TRAHF-fee-koh)	traffic



<b>il cinema</b> (CHEE-nah-mah)	motion picture house
<b>la pellicola</b> or <b>il film</b> (pehl-LEE-koh-lah, FEELM)	film, motion picture
<b>un abitante</b> (ah-bee-TAHN-teh)	an inhabitant
<b>presentare</b> (preh-zehn-TAH-reh)	to introduce, present
<b>fare la conoscenza</b> (. . . koh-noh-SHEHN-tsah)	to make the acquaintance
<b>la dogana</b> (doh-GAH-nah)	customs house
<b>il doganiere</b> (doh-gah-NYEH-reh)	customs officer



## CONVERSATION

- 1 A che ora è andato a letto iersera,<sup>5</sup> che dorme ancora?
- 2 Sono andato a letto molto tardi ed ho dormito un po' più del solito.
- 3 Non<sup>6</sup> mi son' potuto addormentare fino alle quattro del mattino.
- 4 La mia domestica non mi ha chiamato e mi sono<sup>7</sup> svegliato proprio adesso.<sup>8</sup>
- 5 Si accomodi, prego. Mi alzo,<sup>9</sup> mi lavo e mi vesto subito.



- 6 Eccomi.<sup>10</sup> Son già pronto ed ai suoi ordini.<sup>11</sup>
- 7 Possiamo uscire quando le fa comodo.<sup>12</sup>
- 8 Dove vuole che andiamo?
- 9 Se vuole, possiamo andare a fare una passeggiata a Villa Borghese.
- 10 Preferirei<sup>13</sup> visitare alcuni edifici pubblici: i fori romani, una scuola, un ufficio postale, un mercato, una chiesa ed il municipio.
- 11 Che magnifica idea! E dopo andremo a teatro o al cinema. In questa piazza c'è un cinema dove si proiettano le migliori<sup>14</sup> pellicole.

FOOTNOTES: 1. *Automobile* is feminine, therefore the indefinite article is *un'*.  
 2. Idioms. 3. If you don't remember this use of *da* see Note 25, Lesson 3.  
 4. A synonym of *a sua disposizione* is *ai suoi ordini*, both idioms. 5. *Iersera* or

## PRONUNCIATION

- 1 ah keh OH-rah EH ahn-DAH-toh ah  
LEHT-toh yehr-SEH-rah, keh DOHR-  
meh ahn-KOH-rah?
- 2 . . . MOHL-toh TAHR-dee ed oh  
dohr-MEE-toh oon POH PYOO dehl  
SOH-lee-toh.
- 3 nohn mee SOHN poh-TOO-toh ahd-  
dohr-mehn-TAH-teh FEE-noh AHL-  
leh KWAHT-troh dehl maht-TEE-  
noh.
- 4 lah MEE'ah doh-MEH-stee-kah  
nohn mee ah kyah-MAH-toh eh  
mee SOH-noh zveh-L'YAH-toh  
PROH-pyoh ah-DEHS-soh.
- 5 see ahk-KOH-moh-dee, PREH-goh.  
mee AHL-tsoh, mee LAH-voh, eh  
mee VEH-stoh soo-bee-toh.
- 6 EHK-koh-mee. sohn JAH PROHN-toh  
ed ah'y SWOY OHR-dee-nee.
- 7 pohs-SYAH-moh oo-SHEE-teh  
KWAHN-doh leh fah KOH-moh-doh.
- 8 DOH-veh VWOH-leh keh ahn-DYAH-  
moh?
- 9 . . . FAH-teh oo-nah pahs-sch-  
DJAH-tah ah VEEL-lah bohr-GEH-  
zeh.
- 10 preh-feh-ree-RAY vee-zee-TAH-reh  
ahl-KOO-nee eh-dee-FEE-chee POOB-  
blee-chee: ee FOH-ree roh-MAH-  
nee, oo-nah SKWOK-lah, oon oof-  
FEE-choh poh-STAH-leh, oon mehr-  
KAH-toh, oo-nah KYEH-zah ed eel  
moo-nee-CHEE-pyoh.
- 11 keh mah-N'YEE-fee-kah ee-DEH'ahl  
eh DOH-poh ahn-DREH-moh ah teh-  
AH-troh oh ahl CHEE-neh-mah.  
een KWEH-stah PYAH-tsah CHEH  
oon CHEE-neh-mah DOH-veh see  
proh-YEHT-tah-noh leh mee-L'YOH-  
ree pehl-LEE-koh-leh.

## TRANSLATION

- At what time did you go to bed  
last night, that you are still  
sleeping?
- I went to bed very late and I have  
slept a little more than usual.
- I wasn't able to fall asleep until  
four in the morning.
- My maid didn't call me and I  
have just awakened.
- Make yourself comfortable, I beg  
of you. I shall get up, wash, and  
dress at once.
- Here I am. I am ready and at  
your service.
- We can go out whenever you  
wish.
- Where do you suggest (*lit.*, want)  
we go?
- If you wish, we can go for a walk  
in Villa Borghese.
- I would rather (*lit.*, prefer to)  
visit some public buildings: the  
Roman Forums, a school, a  
post office, a market, a church,  
and the city hall.
- What a splendid idea! And after-  
wards we shall go to the theater  
or to the movies. On this square  
there is a motion picture house  
where the best films are shown.

*ieri sera.* 6. See Note 19, Lesson 1. 7. *Son*, same as *sono*. Reflexive verbs require the auxiliary *essere* in all compound tenses. 8. *Proprio adesso* means literally "just now." 9. The present is often used in Italian to indicate immediate

12 Più edifici visiterò, meglio<sup>15</sup> conoscerò la città.

13 Come regola bene il traffico quell'agente di polizia! Ci sono sempre tanti veicoli per le strade e tanti pedoni sui marciapiedi che sarà<sup>16</sup> difficile regolare<sup>17</sup> il traffico.



14 Roma ha molti abitanti. Molte delle sue strade sono larghe ed alberate. I suoi sette colli sono pittoreschi e storici.<sup>18</sup>

15 Debbo andare alla banca per cambiare i miei dollari.

16 Il cambio non è molto alto. Mi dispiace non poterla<sup>19</sup> accompagnare. L'aspetterò dalla<sup>20</sup> sarta.

17 Vuole avere la gentilezza di presentarmi a questa signora prima di andarsene?

18 Con piacere. La<sup>21</sup> presenterò immediatamente.

19 Mia cara amica, le voglio presentare la signora Menichini.

20 Signora, sono fortunatissima di fare la sua conoscenza.

21 Il piacere è mio, signora, perchè ho spesso sentito parlare<sup>22</sup> di lei.

---

future. 10. See Note 29, Lesson 3. 11. *Lit.*, at your orders. 12. *Quando le fa comodo* is an idiom. *Lit.*, when it makes you comfortable. 13. *Preferirei* (*io form*) is the conditional of *preferire*. 14. *Migliori* (sing., *migliore*) is the relative superlative of *buono*. Like other adjectives it agrees in gender and number

12 PYOO eh-dee-FEE-chee vee-zee-teh-ROH. MEH-l'yoh koh-noh-sheh-ROH lah cheet-TAH.

13 KOH-meh REH-goh-lah BEH-neh eel TRAHF-fee-koh kwehl-lah-JEHN-teh dee poh-lee-TSEE'ahl chee SOH-noh SEHM-preh TAHN-tee veh-EE-koh-lee pehr leh STRAH-deh eh TAHN-tee peh-DOH-nee soo'y mahr-chah-PYEH-dee keh sah-RAH dee-FEE-chee-leh. . . .

14 ROH-mah ah MOHL-tee ah-bee-TAHN-tee . . . LAHR-geh ed ahl-beh-RAH-teh. ee SWOY SEHT-teh KOHL-lee SOH-noh peet-toh-REH-skee eh STOH-ree-chee.

15 DEHB-boh ahn-DAH-reh ahl-lah-BAHN-kah pehr kahm-BYAH-reh ee M'YAY DOHL-lah-ree.

16 eel KAHM-byoh nohn EH MOHL-toh AHL-toh. mee dee-SPYAH-cheh nohn poh-TEHR-lah ahk-kohm-pah-N'YAH-reh. lah-speht-teh-ROH DAHL-lah SAHR-tah.

17 VWOH-leh ah-VEH-reh lah jehn-tee-LEH-tsah dee preh-zehn-TAHR-mee ah KWEH-stah see-N'YOH-rah PREE-mah dee ahn-DAHR-seh-neh?

18 kohn pyah-CHEH-reh. lah preh-zehn-teh-ROH eem-meh-dyah-tah-MEHN-teh.

19 MEE'ah KAH-rah ah-MEE-kah, leh VOH-l'yoh preh-zehn-TAH-reh . . . meh-nee-KEE-nee.

20 . . . fohr-too-nah-TEES-see-mah dee FAH-reh lah soo'ah koh-noh-SHEHN-tsah.

21 . . . oh SPEHS-soh sehn-TEE-toh pahr-LAH-reh dee LAY.

The more buildings I visit (*lit.*, shall visit) the better I shall know the city.

How well that policeman directs (*lit.*, regulates) traffic! There are always so many vehicles in the streets and so many pedestrians on the sidewalks that it must be difficult to direct the traffic.

Rome has many inhabitants. Many of its streets are wide and lined with trees. Its seven hills are picturesque and historical.

I must go to the bank to exchange my dollars.

The rate of exchange isn't very high. I am sorry I can't accompany you. I shall wait for you at the dressmaker's.

Will you have the kindness to introduce me to this lady before leaving?

With pleasure. I shall introduce you at once.

My dear friend, may I present Mrs. Menichini.

Madam, I am very happy (fortunate) to make your acquaintance.

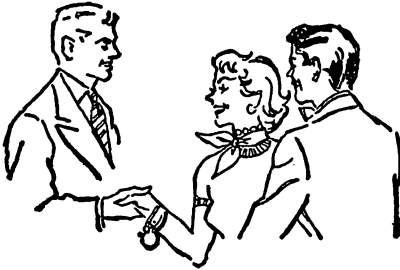
The pleasure is mine, for I have often heard of you.

---

with the noun is modifies. 15. *Meglio* is the irregular comparative of *bene*. 16. *Sard* in this case is future of probability. See Reference Grammar. 17. *Regolare* literally means "to regulate." 18. *Storico* is one of the words ending in *co* which does not add an *h* after the *c* in the plural. 19. The direct object

22 Rimarrà a lungo in città?

23 Non molto tempo. Intendo passare<sup>23</sup> l'estate al lido.  
M'hanno detto che ad Anzio c'è una spiaggia bellissima.



24 Ed anche molti divertimenti. Ci<sup>24</sup> vado anch'io, e sarò molto felice di farle<sup>25</sup> da guida.<sup>26</sup>

25 Lei è molto gentile, ed io le sarò molto riconoscente.

26 Sarò a sua disposizione. Intanto le auguro buon viaggio.

27 Grazie. Arrivederla,<sup>27</sup> signora. A presto.<sup>28</sup>

---

pronoun *la* could be attached to the infinitive *accompagnare* instead of *potere* (to be able to). 20. *Dalla* is a contraction of *da* and *la*. 21. This direct object pronoun *la* is both masculine and feminine (polite singular). 22. *Sentito parlare di* is an idiom. It means "heard someone speak of." 23. See Note 20, Lesson 11. 24. See Note 19, Lesson 12. In this case *ci* precedes the verb. 25. The *le* of *farle*

22 ree-mahr-RAH ah LOON-goh een cheet-TAH?

Will you remain long in the city?

23 . . . een-TEHN-doh pahs-SAH-reh leh-STAH-teh ahl LEE-doh. MAHN-noh DEHT-toh keh ahd AHN-tsyoh CHEH oo-nah SPYAH-djah behl-LEES-see-mah.

Not long (*lit.*, much time). I expect to spend the summer at the seashore. I have been told (*lit.*, they have told me) that at Anzio there is a very beautiful beach.

24 ed AHN-keh MOHL-tee dee-vehr-tee-MEHN-tee. chee VAH-doh ahn-KEE'oh, eh sah-ROH MOHL-toh feh-LEE-cheh dee FAHR-leh dah GWEE-dah.

And also many amusements. I am going there also and I shall be very happy to be your guide.

25 lay EH MOHL-toh jehn-TEE-leh, ed EE'oh leh sah-ROH . . . ree-koh-noh-SHEHN-teh.

You are very kind, and I shall be very grateful to you.

26 . . . soo'ah dee-spoh-zee-TSYOH-neh. een-TAHN-toh leh AH'oo-goo-roh BWOHN VYAH-djoh.

I shall be at your service. Meanwhile I wish you a pleasant trip.

27 GRAH-tsyeh. ahr-ree-veh-DEHR-lah, see-N'YOH-rah. ah PREH-stoh.

Thank you. Good-bye, madam. See you soon.

---

is an indirect object pronoun. 26. *Farle da guida* is an idiom. It means "to act as a guide to you." 27. *Arrivederla* is an idiom. It means "good-bye, until we meet again." The familiar form is *arrivederci*. 28. *A presto* is an idiom. It means "until soon." Likewise *a domani, a lunedì*, etc.



## DAL MEDICO

AT THE DOCTOR'S

(dahl MEH-dee-koh)

<b>il dottore</b> <sup>9</sup> (doht-TOH-reh)	doctor
<b>la clinica</b> (KLEE-nee-kah)	doctor's office, clinic
<b>la sala d'aspetto</b> (SAH-lah dah-SPEHT-toh)	waiting room
<b>l'onorario</b> (loh-noh-RAH-ryoh)	fee
<b>il polso</b> (POHL-soh)	pulse
<b>tastare il polso</b> (tah-STAH-reh . . .)	to feel the pulse



<b>la visita</b> (VEE-zee-tah)	visit
<b>la lingua</b> (LEEN-gwah)	tongue
<b>un' infermiera</b> (een-fehr-M'YEH-rah)	a nurse
<b>la febbre</b> (FEHB-breh)	fever

<b>le vertigini</b> (vehr-TEE-jee-nee)	dizziness
<b>ho le vertigini</b> <sup>2</sup> (oh . . .)	I am dizzy
<b>i sintomi</b> (ee SEEN-toh-mee)	the symptoms
<b>la ricetta</b> (ree-CHEHT-tah)	prescription
<b>la medicina</b> (meh-dee-CHEE-nah)	medicine
<b>la farmacia</b> (fahr-mah-CHEE'ah)	drug store, pharmacy
<b>la pillola</b> (PEEL-loh-lah)	pill
<b>un' aspirina</b> (ah-spec-REE-nah)	an aspirin tablet



<b>mi sento bene</b> <sup>9</sup> (mee SEHN-toh BEH-neh)	I feel well
<b>si sente male</b> <sup>99</sup> (see SEHN-teh MAH-leh)	do you feel ill, sick?
<b>avere una buona cera</b> <sup>2</sup> (ah-VEH-reh oo-nah BWOH-nah CHEH-rah)	to look well
<b>io ho un mal di testa</b> <sup>2</sup> (EE'oh OH oon MAHL dee TEH-stah)	I have a headache
<b>il dolore</b> (eel doh-LOH-reh)	pain



## CONVERSATION

- 1 Che cosa ha?<sup>10</sup> Non ha un'ottima cera oggi.
- 2 Non mi sento bene. Non ho più<sup>11</sup> appetito e vorrei farmi visitare da un medico.
- 3 Quanto prende il dottor<sup>12</sup> Valdengo per una visita a domicilio?
- 4 Non so, ma dato che abita molto lontano, il suo onorario sarà<sup>13</sup> alto.
- 5 In questo caso prenderemo un tassì per recarci<sup>14</sup> alla sua clinica.
- 6 Verrò<sup>15</sup> con lei molto volentieri. Ecco un tassì.
- 7 Autista, è libera la sua vettura?<sup>16</sup>



- 8 Sì, signori; dove vogliono andare?
- 9 Ci porti al numero tredici di Via Pietro Borsiero, dalla parte di Piazza Mazzini. Chiuda lo sportello per piacere.
- 10 Faccia presto ed avrà una buona mancia.

11 Ecco l'indirizzo. Si fermi. Noi scendiamo qui.

12 Suoni il campanello.

---

FOOTNOTES: 1. Imperative of *suonare* (*lei form*). First conjugation verbs form the third person singular of the imperative by adding *i* to the stem. The ending of

## PRONUNCIATION

- 1 keh KOH-zah AH? nohn AH OHT-tee-mah CHEH-rah OH-djee.  
 2 nohn mee SEHN-toh BEH-neh. nohn oh PYOO ahp-peh-TEE-toh eh VOHR-RAY FAHR-mee vee-zee-TAH-reh dah oon MEH-dee-koh.  
 3 KWAHN-toh PREHN-deh eel doht-TOHR vahl-DEHN-goh pehr oo-nah VEE-zee-tah ah doh-mee-CHEE-lyoh?  
 4 nohn SOH, mah DAH-toh keh AH-bee-tah MOHL-toh lohn-TAH-noh, eel soo'oh oh-noh-RAH-ryoh sah-RAH AHL-toh.  
 5 . . . KAH-zoh prehn-deh-REH-moh oon tas-SEE pehr reh-KAHR-chee . . . KLEE-nee-kah.

6 vehr-ROH kohn lay MOHL-toh voh-lehn-TYEH-ree. EHK-koh oon tahs-SEE.

7 ah'OO-TEE-stah, EH LEE-beh-rah lah soo'ah veht-TOO-rah?

8 SEE, see-N'YOH-ree; DOH-veh VOH-l'yoh-noh ahn-DAH-reh?

9 chee POHR-tee ahl NOO-meh-roh TREH-dee-chee dee VEE'ah FYEH-troh bohr-SYEH-roh, DAHL-lah PAHR-teh dee PYAH-tsah mah-TSEE-nee. KYOO-dah loh spohr-TEHL-loh, . . .

10 FAH-tchah PREH-stoh ed ah-VRAH OO-nah BWOH-nah MAHN-chah.

11 EHK-koh leen-dee-REE-tsoh. see FEHR-mee. noy shehn-DYAH-moh KWEE.

12 SWOH-nee eel kahm-pah-NEHL-loh.

## TRANSLATION

What is the matter with you? You don't look too well today.

I don't feel well. I have no (more) appetite and I should like to see a doctor (*lit.*, make a doctor visit me).

How much does Dr. Valdengo charge (*lit.*, take) for a house call (*lit.*, visit at home).

I don't know, but since he lives very far from here, his fee is probably high.

In that case we shall take a taxi (to go) to his office.

I shall gladly come with you. Here is a taxi.

Driver, is your cab free?

Yes, gentlemen. Where do you wish to go?

Take us to 13 Pietro Borsiero Avenue, in the direction of Mazzini Square. Will you please close the door?

Hurry, and you will get a good tip.

Here is the address. Stop. We are getting off here.

Ring the bell

the third person plural is *ino*. 2. An idiom. 3. Imperative of *chiudere*. Second and third conjugation verbs form the third person singular of the imperative by

13 È in casa il dottor Valdengo?

14 Entrino nella sala d'aspetto, per piacere. S'accomodino. Il dottore verrà a momenti.

15 Buon giorno, signori. Favoriscano da questa parte, per piacere.

16 Da quanto tempo<sup>17</sup> non si sente<sup>18</sup> bene?

17 Da ieri. Sudavo quando sono uscito<sup>19</sup> da teatro e ho preso un brutto raffreddore.

18 Mi lasci tastare il polso.<sup>20</sup> Mi mostri la lingua.<sup>20</sup>

19 Dottore, crede lei che i sintomi siano<sup>21</sup> gravi?

20 No, signore; nulla di grave. Mi sembra che abbia un po' di febbre.<sup>22</sup> Mi lasci misurare la<sup>23</sup> temperatura.



21 Ho un forte mal di testa e le vertigini.

22 Prenda' queste pillole per calmare il dolore.

23 Si sente meglio?

24 Nè meglio, nè peggio.

---

adding *a* to the stem. The ending of the third person plural is *ano*. The endings of the *isco* verbs are: *isca* and *iscano*. 4. *Fare presto* is an idiom. 5. *Peggio* is the comparative of *male*. 6. See Note 1 above. 7. See Note 3 above. 8. *Dottore* and *medico* are synonyms, but *dottore* must be used in direct address or when the name is mentioned. In the latter case the final *e* is dropped. 9. *Sentirsi bene* and *sentirsi male* are idioms. Note that the verb is reflexive.

- 13 EH een KAH-zah eel doht-TOHR  
vahl-DEHN-goh? Is Dr. Valdengo in (*lit.*, in the house)?
- 14 EHN-tree-noh NEHL-lah SAH-lah  
dah-SPEHT-toh . . . sahK-KOH-  
moh-dee-noh. eel doht-TOH-reh  
vehr-RAH ah moh-MEHN-tee. Come (enter) into the waiting room, please. Make yourselves comfortable. The doctor will come in a few moments.
- 15 . . . fah-voh-REE-skah-noh dah  
KWEH-stah PAHR-teh. . . . Good day, gentlemen. Come this way, please.
- 16 dah KWAHN-toh TEHM-poh nohn  
see SEHN-teh BEH-neh? Since when have you been indisposed?
- 17 dah YEH-ree. soo-DAH-voh KWAHN-  
doh SOH-noh oo-SHEE-toh dah  
teh'AH-troh eh oh PREH-zoh oon  
BROOT-toh rahf-frehd-DOH-reh. Since yesterday. I was perspiring when I came out of the theater and I caught a nasty (ugly) cold.
- 18 mee LAH-shee tah-STAH-reh eel  
POHL-soh. mee MOH-stree lah  
LEEN-gwah. Let me feel your pulse. Show me your tongue.
- 19 doht-TOH-reh, KREH-deh lay keh  
ee SEEN-toh-mee SEE'ah-noh GRAH-  
vee? Doctor, do you think the symptoms are serious?
- 20 . . . NOOL-lah dee GRAH-veh. mee  
SEHM-brah keh AHB-byah oon POH  
dee FEHB-breh. mee LAH-shee  
mee-zoo-RAH-reh lah tehm-peh-  
rah-TOO-rah. No, sir; nothing serious. It seems to me that you have a slight fever. Let me take (measure) your temperature.
- 21 oh oon FOHR-teh MAHL dee TEH-  
stah eh leh vehr-TEE-jee-nee. I have a violent headache and I feel dizzy.
- 22 PREHN-dah KWEH-steh PEEL-loh-  
leh pehr kahl-MAH-reh eel doh-  
LOH-reh. Take these pills to soothe the pain.
- 23 see SEHN-teh MEH-l'yoh? Do you feel better?
- 24 NEH MEH-l'yoh, NEH PEH-djoh. Neither better, nor worse.

10. *Lit.*, what have you? This is a special use of the verb *avere* and implies that something is wrong. 11. *Non . . . più*, a special negative, meaning "no longer." 12. The definite article is used before a title, but it is omitted in direct address. 13. *Sarà* is future of probability. 14. The infinitive is *recarsi* (to take oneself to). 15. Future of *venire*: *io verrò, tu verrai, lei verrà, noi verremo, voi verrete, loro verranno*. 16. *Veitura* in this case means "cab." See Note 12, Lesson 4. 17. *Da*

- 25 In questo caso le prescrivo questa ricetta, che porterà subito alla farmacia. Prenda un cucchiaino di questa medicina ogni due ore.
- 26 Se non si sente meglio ritorni<sup>6</sup> nuovamente fra tre giorni, e proveremo qualche altra medicina più efficace.

---

*quanto tempo. Lit., since how much time. Da before an expression implying duration of time means "since" or "for." 18. Note that si sente is present tense. In Italian an action which began in the past but continues in the present is expressed by the present tense. 19. Uscire is one of the verbs that takes essere as an auxiliary verb. 20. Notice the omission of the possessive adjective, which*

25 . . . KAH-soh leh preh-SKREE-voH  
 KWEH-stah ree-CHEHT-tah, keh  
 pohr-teh-RAH soo-bee-toh . . .  
 fahr-mah-CHEE'ah . . . koo-KYAH'-  
 yoh . . . meh-dee-CHEE-nah OH-  
 n'ye'e doo'eh OH-reh.

In that case I shall give (*lit.*, pre-  
 scribe) you this prescription,  
 which you will take to the drug  
 store right away. Take a spoon-  
 ful of this medicine every two  
 hours.

26 seh nohn see SEHN-teh MEH-l'yoh  
 ree-TOHR-nee nwoh-vah-MEHN-teh  
 frah treh JOHR-nee, eh proh-veh-  
 REH-moh KWAHL-keh AHL-trah  
 meh-dee-CHEE-nah PYOO ehf-fee-  
 KAH-cheh.

If you don't feel better, come  
 back in three days, and we shall  
 try more effective medication.

---

in Italian is normally omitted with parts of the body and articles of clothing. Usually the indirect object is used instead. Ex: *mi lavo le mani* (I wash my hands. *Lit.*, I wash the hands to me.) 21. Subjunctive after *credere*, a verb of doubt. See Reference Grammar. 22. *Lit.*, some fever. 23. The possessive *sua* is omitted because it can only mean "your temperature."



# Quindicesima Lezione

## Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

<b>i conforti moderni</b> (kohn-FOHR-tee moh-DEHR-nee)	modern conveniences
<b>dà su<sup>1</sup></b> (DAH soo)	it faces, looks out on
<b>voglio sistemarmi</b> (VOH-l'yoh see-steh-MAHR-mee)	I want to get settled
<b>affittare</b> (ahf-feet-TAH-reh)	to rent
<b>si paga</b> (see PAH-gah) one pays	<b>firmato</b> (feer-MAH-toh) signed
<b>la veduta</b> (veh-DOO-tah) view	<b>capire</b> (kah-PEE-reh) to understand
<b>una quindicina<sup>2</sup></b> (kween-dee-CHEE-nah)	a fortnight, two weeks
<b>in anticipo</b> (ahn-TEE-chee-poh)	in advance
<b>a<sup>3</sup> giornata</b> (johr-NAH-tah)	by the day
<b>a<sup>3</sup> settimana</b> (seht-tee-MAH-nah)	by the week
<b>mensilmente</b> (mehn-seel-MEHN-teh)	monthly
<b>a<sup>3</sup> mese</b> (MEH-zeh)	by the month
<b>fin da ora<sup>4</sup></b> (feen dah OH-rah)	beginning now
<b>fra<sup>5</sup> un'ora</b> (frah oo-NOH-rah)	in an hour
<b>oggi stesso</b> (OH-djee STEHS-soh)	this very day
<b>oggi ad otto<sup>2</sup></b> (. . . ahd OHT-toh)	a week from today
<b>entri pure!</b> (EHN-tree POO-reh)	come right in!
<b>debbo avvertirla</b> (DEHB-boh ahv-vehr-TEER-lah)	I must warn (inform) you
<b>non importa</b> (nohn eem-POHR-tah)	it doesn't matter
<b>per me fa lo stesso<sup>4</sup></b> (pehr MEH fah loh STEHS-soh)	it's all the same to me
<b>il pagamento</b> (pah-gah-MEHN-toh)	the payment
<b>si mangia alla carta<sup>6</sup></b> (see MAHN-jah AHL-lah KAHR-tah)	one eats à la carte
<b>s'intende</b> (seen-TEHN-deh)	of course, it's understood

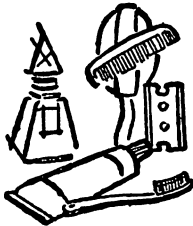
**IN CERCA D'UN ALLOGGIO • ARTICOLI  
DA TOILETTA**

**IN SEARCH OF LODGING  
TOILET ARTICLES**

(een CHEHR-kah doon ahl-LOH-djoh,  
ahr-TEE-koh-lee dah toh-LEHT-tah)

un albergo (ahl-BEHR-goh)	a hotel
la pensione (pehn-SYOH-neh)	board, boarding house
una pensione completa (... kohm-PLEH-tah)	room and board
una camera ammobiliata (... ahm-moh-bee-LYAH-tah)	a furnished room
il riscaldamento centrale (ree-skahl-dah-MEHN-toh chehn-TRAH-leh)	central heating
la pigione (pee-JOH-neh)	rent

la doccia (DOH-tchah)	shower
la spugna (SPOO-n'yah)	sponge
il sapone (sah-POH-neh)	soap
la crema (KREH-mah)	cream
la cipria (CHEE-pree'ah)	powder



la spazzola (SPAH-tsoh-lah)	the brush
il pettine (PEHT-tee-neh)	comb
il dentifricio (dehn-tee-FREE-choh)	tooth paste
lo spazzolino (spah-tsoh-LEE-noh)	tooth brush
il rasoio (rah-ZOH-yoh)	razor
la lametta (lah-MEHT-tah)	razor blade
crema da barba (KREH-mah dah BAHR-bah)	shaving cream
il profumo (proh-FOO-moh)	perfume
il rossetto (roh-SEHT-toh)	the lipstick

l'acqua corrente (LAHK-kwah kohr- REHN-teh)	running water
l'acqua calda (... KAHL-dah)	hot water, warm water
l'acqua fredda (... FREHD-dah)	cold water



CONVERSATION

- 1 Debbo trovare un albergo oggi stesso.
- 2 Vuole una camera ammobiliata?
- 3 Preferirei tre stanze vuote per fare il salotto, la camera da letto ed il bagno.
- 4 Entri pure. Le mostrerò ciò che<sup>7</sup> lei desidera.
- 5 Preferisce un salotto che dia<sup>8</sup> sulla strada o sul mare?
- 6 Preferisco quello che dà sul mare.
- 7 Non importa che la camera da letto dia<sup>9</sup> sulla strada o sul mare.
- 8 Qual'è il prezzo di questa camera?
- 9 Qual'è il prezzo di questo appartamento?
- 10 Affitta al mese, a settimana, o a giornata?<sup>10</sup>
- 11 Quanto costa la pensione completa?
- 12 Si mangia alla carta?
- 13 Voglio prendere in affitto<sup>11</sup> una grande camera ammobiliata.
- 14 Debbo avvertirla che si paga in anticipo.



FOOTNOTES: 1. *Dare su* is an idiom. 2. In common parlance, *una quindicina* means two weeks, exactly fourteen days. Similarly *otto giorni* means a week. Thus the expression *oggi ad otto* means "a week from today." 3. This is a special

PRONUNCIATION

TRANSLATION

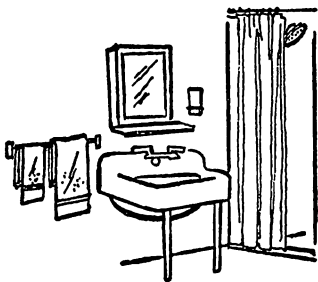
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1 DEHB-boh troh-VAH-reh oon ahl-BEHR-goh OH-djee STEHS-soh.</p>   | <p>I must find a hotel this very day.</p>   |
| <p>2 VWOH-leh oo-nah KAH-meh-rah ahm-moh-bee-LYAH-tah?</p>   | <p>Do you want a furnished room?</p>  |
| <p>3 preh-feh-ree-RAY treh STAHN-tseh VWOH-teh pehr FAH-reh eel sah-LOHT-toh, lah KAH-meh-rah dah LEHT-toh ed eel BAH-n'yoh.</p> | <p>I should prefer three unfurnished (<i>lit.</i>, empty) rooms for (to make) the living room, the bedroom, and the bathroom.</p> |
| <p>4 EHN-tree poo-reh. Leh moh-streh-ROH CHOH keh lay deh-ZEE-deh-rah.</p>   | <p>Come right in. I'll show you what you wish.</p>  |
| <p>5 preh-feh-REE-sheh oon sah-LOHT-toh keh DEE'ah SOOL-lah STRAH-dah oh sool MAH-reh.</p>                                       | <p>Do you prefer a living room that faces the street or the sea?</p>  |
| <p>6 preh-feh-REE-skoh KWEHL-loh keh DAH sool MAH-reh.</p>   | <p>I prefer the one that faces the sea.</p>   |
| <p>7 nohn eem-FOHR-tah keh lah KAH-meh-rah dah LEHT-toh DEE'ah SOOL-lah STRAH-dah oh sool MAH-reh.</p>                           | <p>It doesn't matter whether the bedroom faces the street or the sea.</p>   |
| <p>8 kwah-LEH eel PREH-tsoh dee KWEH-stah KAH-meh-rah?</p>   | <p>What is the price of this room?</p>  |
| <p>9 kwah-LEH eel PREH-tsoh dee KWEH-stoh ahp-pahr-tah-MEHN-toh?</p>   | <p>What is the price of this apartment?</p>   |
| <p>10 ahf-FEET-tah ahl MEH-zeh, ah seht-tee-MAH-nah oh ah johr-NAH-tah?</p>  | <p>Do you rent by the month, by the week, or by the day?</p>  |
| <p>11 KWAHN-toh KOH-stah lah pehn-SYOH-neh kohm-PLEH-tah?</p>  | <p>What is the cost of room and board?</p>  |
| <p>12 see MAHN-jah AHL-lah KAHR-tah?</p>   | <p>Are the meals (<i>lit.</i>, does one eat) a la carte?</p>  |
| <p>13 VOH-l'yoh PREHN-deh-reh een ahf-FEET-toh oo-nah GRAHN-deh KAH-meh-rah ahm-moh-bee-LYAH-tah.</p>                            | <p>I want to rent a large furnished room.</p>   |
| <p>14 DEHB-boh ahv-vehr-TEER-lah keh see PAH-gah een ahn-TEE-chee-poh.</p>   | <p>I must inform you that you pay in advance.</p>   |

---

use of the word *a*, meaning "by." 4. *Fin da ora* and *fa lo stesso* are idioms. 5. The word *fra* means *in* or *within* when used in connection with words implying duration of time. 6. *Alla carta* is an adaptation of the French expression *à la*

15 Capisco,<sup>12</sup> ma io preferisco<sup>12</sup> pagare a settimana.

16 Mi dispiace, ma qui si paga<sup>18</sup> mensilmente, e non posso affittare ad altre condizioni.



17 In questo caso la pagherò<sup>14</sup> in anticipo ogni due settimane. Questo è tutto quello che<sup>15</sup> posso permettermi.<sup>16</sup>

18 Nella camera, s'intende, c'è un lavabo.

19 Sì, signore, le nostre camere hanno tutti i conforti moderni: gas, elettricità, riscaldamento centrale, acqua corrente, fredda e calda.

20 Benissimo. Voglio sistemarmi al più presto possibile<sup>17</sup> e, se vuole, prendo<sup>18</sup> la camera fin da ora.

21 Fra un'ora i miei bagagli saranno qui.

22 Ecco il pagamento per la prima quindicina. Vuole avere la bontà di darmi una ricevuta?

23 Ecco la ricevuta firmata. La prego di prenderne visione.<sup>19</sup>



*carte.* 7. The word "what" must be translated *ciò che* when it means "that which."  
8. *Dia* is the third person subjunctive of *dare*. The subjunctive is required here by the indefinite antecedent *un salotto*. See Reference Grammar. 9. This sub-

- 15** kah-PEE-skoh, mah EE'oh preh-feh-REE-skoh pah-GAH-reh ah seht-tee-MAH-nah. I understand, but I prefer to pay by the week.
- 16** mee dee-SPYAH-cheh, mah KWEE see PAH-gah mehn-seel-MEHN-teh, eh nohn POHS-soh ahf-feet-TAH-reh ahd AHL-treh kohn-dee-TSYOH-nee. I am sorry, but payments must be made monthly, and I cannot make any other arrangement (*lit.*, I cannot rent at other conditions).
- 17** een KWEH-stoh KAH-zoh lah pah-geh-ROH een ahn-TEE-chee-poh OH-n'yee DOO'eh seht-tee-MAH-neh . . . POHS-soh pehr-MEHT-tehr-mee. In this case I will pay every two weeks in advance. This is all I can afford.
- 18** . . . seen-TEHN-deh, CHEH oon lah-VAH-boh. In the room, of course, there is a wash basin.
- 19** . . . AHN-noh TOOT-tee ee kohn-FOHR-tee moh-DEHR-nee: GAHS, eh-leht-tree-chee-TAH, ree-skahl-dah-MEHN-toh chehn-TRAH-leh, AHK-kwah kohr-REHN-teh, FREHD-dah eh KAHL-dah. Yes, sir, our rooms have all the modern conveniences: gas, electricity, central heating, hot and cold running water.
- 20** beh-NEES-see-moh. VOH-l'yoh see-steh-MAHR-mee ahl PYOO PREH-stoh pohs-SEE-bee-leh, eh, seh VWOH-leh, PREHN-doh lah KAH-meh-rah feen dah OH-rah. Very well. I want to get settled as soon as possible, and, if you wish, I will take the room as of now.
- 21** frah oo-NOH-rah ee M'YAY bah-GAH-l'yee sah-RAHN-noh KWEE. My baggage will be here in an hour.
- 22** EHK-koh eel pah-gah-MEHN-toh pehr lah PREE-mah kween-dee-CHEE-nah. VWOH-leh ah-VEH-reh lah bohn-TAH dee DAHR-mee oonah ree-cheh-VOO-tah? Here is the payment for the first two weeks. Will you be good enough to give me a receipt?
- 23** . . . feer-MAH-tah. lah PREH-goh dee PREHN-dehr-neh vee-ZYOH-neh. Here is the signed receipt. Please read it.

---

conjunctive form is required by the impersonal expression *non importa*. See Reference Grammar. 10. *A giornata* instead of *al giorno*. See Note 6, Lesson 3. 11. *Prendere in affitto* literally means "to take for rent." *In affitto* is an idiom. 12. *-isco*

- 24 "Ricevuta<sup>20</sup> dal signor Tal dei Tali la somma di lire trentamila per alloggio e pensione per quindici giorni nello stabile sito a Via Veneto numero cento ottantatrè, Roma, il primo giugno."
- 25 Le ore dei pasti sono: colazione alle sette e trenta; pranzo da mezzogiorno alle tredici<sup>21</sup>; cena dalle diciannove alle ventuno precise.
- 26 Per piacere, mi mostri la stanza da bagno.
- 27 Eccola.<sup>22</sup> Come può vedere ci sono degli asciugamani, una doccia, una spugna, ed un armadietto a muro per il pettine, la spazzola, il profumo, crema a base di olio, cipria, dentifricio, ecc.

---

verbs. See Note 27, Lesson 2. 13. *Si paga* is an impersonal expression meaning "one pays." 14. See Note 23, Lesson 12. 15. *Quello che* is the same as *ciò che*. 16. *Posso permettermi* literally means "I can allow myself." 17. *Lit.*, at the earliest possible. 18. See Note 10, Lesson 13. 19. *Prenderne visione* is an

24 ree-cheh-vooh-tah dahl see-n'YOHR  
 tahl day TAH-lee lah SOHM-mah  
 dee LEE-reh trehn-tah-MEE-lah  
 pehr ahl-LOH-djoh eh pehn-SYOH-  
 neh pehr KWEEN-dee-chee JOHR-  
 nee NEHL-loh STAH-bee-leh SEE-toh  
 ah VEE'ah VEH-neh-toh NOO-meh-  
 roh CHEHN-toh oht-tahn-tah-TREH,  
 ROH-mah, eel PREE-moh JOO-n'yoh.

25 leh OH-reh day PAH-stee SOH-noh:  
 koh-lah-TSYOH-neh AHL-leh SEHT-  
 teh eh TREHN-tah; PRAHN-dzoh  
 dah meh-dzoh-JOHR-noh AHL-leh  
 TREH-dee-chee; CHEH-nah DAHL-  
 leh dee-chan-NOH-veh AHL-leh  
 vehn-TOO-noh.

26 pehr pyah-CHEH-reh, mee MOH-  
 stree lah STAHN-tsah dah BAH-  
 n'yoh.

27 EHK-koh-lah. KOH-meh PWOH veh-  
 DEH-reh chee SOH-noh, DEH-l'yee  
 ah-shoo-gah-MAH-nee, oo-nah  
 DOH-chah, oo-nah SPOO-n'yah, ed  
 oon ahr-mah-DYEHT-toh ah MOO-  
 roh pehr eel PEHT-tee-neh, lah  
 SPAH-tsoh-lah, eel proh-FOO-moh,  
 KREH-mah ah BAH-zeh dee OH-  
 lyoh, CHEE-pryah, dehn-tee-FREE-  
 choh, eh-TCHEH-teh-rah.

"Received from Mr. So and So  
 the sum of 30,000 lire for room  
 and board for two weeks in the  
 building located at No. 183 Via  
 Veneto, Rome, June 1st."

Meal hours are: breakfast at  
 seven thirty, dinner from noon  
 to one, and supper from seven  
 to nine P.M. sharp.

Please show me the bathroom.

Here it is. As you can see, there  
 are some towels, a shower, a  
 sponge, and a small wall cabi-  
 net for a comb, brush, perfume,  
 cold cream, powder, tooth-  
 paste, etc.

---

idiom meaning literally "to take vision of it." 20. The past participle *ricevuta* agrees with *somma*, which is feminine. 21. In Italy the twenty-four hour clock is used in official announcements and in timetables to avoid ambiguity. It is also used, but not exclusively, in conversation. 22. See Note 29, Lesson 3.

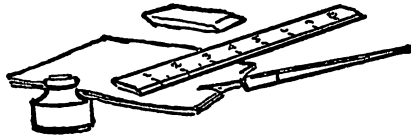


## Sedicesima Lezione

### Vocabolario per Questa Lezione

la posta aerea (POH-stah ah'EH-reh'ah)	air mail
per via aerea (pehr VEE'ah . . .)	by air mail
la carta da <sup>1</sup> lettere (KAHR-tah dah LEHT-teh-reh)	letter paper
nel cuore della città (nehl KWOH-reh DEHL-lah cheet-TAH)	in the center (heart) of the city

la carta (KAHR-tah)	paper
la gomma (GOHM-mah)	eraser
la penna (PEHN-nah)	pen
il lapis, <sup>2</sup> la matita <sup>2</sup> (LAH-pees, mah-TEE-tah)	pencil
la riga (REE-gah)	ruler



la penna stilografica (. . . stee-loh-GRAH- fee-kah)	fountain pen
la carta sugante (KAHR-tah soo-GAHN-teh)	blotter
l'inchiostro (leen-KYOH-stroh)	ink
il calamaio (kah-lah-MAH'yoh)	inkwell
la carta geografica (. . . jeh'oh-GRAH- fee-kah)	map
un opuscolo (oh-POO-skoh-loh)	a pamphlet
la cartoleria (kahr-toh-leh-REE'ah)	stationary store
riscuotere (ree-SKWOH-teh-reh)	to cash
aspettare a lungo <sup>3</sup> (ah-speht-TAH-reh ah LOON-goh)	to wait a long time
la corrispondenza (kohr-ree-spohn-DEHN-tsah)	correspondence
sbrigare la corrispondenza (zbree-GAH-reh . . .)	to write (attend to) the correspondence
la maggior parte (mah-DJOHR PAHR-teh)	larger part, most

## RELAZIONI COMMERCIALI

COMMERCIAL RELATIONS (reh-lah-TSYOH-nee kohm-mehr-CHAH-lee)

<b>l'agenzia</b> (lah-jehn-TSEE'ah)	agency
<b>all'estero</b> <sup>4</sup> (ahl-LEH-steh-roh)	abroad
<b>al giorno d'oggi</b> (ahl JOHR-noh DOH-djee)	nowadays
<b>conservare agli atti</b> (kohn-sehr-VAH-reh AH-l'yee AHT-tee)	keep on record
<b>fare affari</b> (FAH-reh ahf-FAH-ree)	to do business
<b>un libretto di assegni</b> (lee-BREHT-toh dee ahs-SEH-n'yee)	a check book
<b>la sede centrale</b> (SEH-deh chehn-TRAH-leh)	main office
<b>occupato</b> (ohk-koo-PAH-toh)	busy
<b>la macchina da scrivere</b> (MAHK-kee-nah dah SKREE-veh-reh)	typewriter
<b>scrivere a macchina</b> <sup>5</sup> (SKREE-veh-reh ah . . .)	to typewrite
<b>il foglio di carta</b> (FOH-l'yoh . . .)	sheet of paper
<b>la busta</b> (BOO-stah)	envelope
<b>la lettera</b> (LEHT-teh-rah)	letter



<b>l'indirizzo</b> (een-dee-REE-tsoh)	address
<b>il sigillo</b> (see-JEEL-loh)	seal
<b>il bollo</b> (BOHL-loh)	stamp, rubber stamp
<b>il giornale</b> (johr-NAH-leh)	journal
<b>il libro mastro</b> (LEE-broh MAH-stroh)	ledger
<b>il libro di cassa</b> (. . . dee KAHS-sah)	cash book
<b>la contabilità</b> (kohn-tah-bee-lee-TAH)	accounting
<b>un rappresentante</b> (rahp-preh-zehn-TAHN-teh)	representative, agent
<b>la polizza di carico</b> (FOH-lee-tsay dee KAH-ree-koh)	bill of lading
<b>la copia</b> (KOH-pyah)	copy, duplicate
<b>in duplice copia</b> (een DOO-plee-cheh . . .)	in duplicate



## CONVERSATION

- 1 Cosa<sup>6</sup> ha fatto di bello<sup>7</sup> oggi?
- 2 Ha lavorato molto?
- 3 Sì, siamo stati<sup>8</sup> molto occupati<sup>9</sup> a sbrigare la corrispondenza con le nostre agenzie in tutta l'Europa ed in Oriente.
- 4 Hanno scritto le lettere in italiano?



- 5 Alcune. Ma la maggior parte le abbiamo scritte<sup>10</sup> in francese poichè, come lei sa, il francese si parla in quasi tutte le capitali europee, specialmente nei paesi in cui<sup>11</sup> la propria lingua non è molto conosciuta all'estero: per esempio, la Rumenia,<sup>12</sup> la Polonia, la Ceco-Slovacchia, l'Egitto e la Turchia.

- 6 Scrivono le lettere a macchina?
- 7 Sì, al giorno d'oggi tutta la corrispondenza d'affari viene scritta a macchina, e generalmente in duplice copia per conservarne<sup>13</sup> una agli atti.
- 8 Hanno delle relazioni commerciali con l'Argentina?
- 9 Sì, e facciamo affari anche col Brasile.

FOOTNOTES: 1. *Lit.*, paper for letters. The word *da* in this case implies "use."  
 2. It is equally common to say *la matita* instead of *il lapis*. 3. *A lungo*, see

## PRONUNCIATION

- 1 KOH-sah ah FAHT-toh dee BEHL-loh OH-djee?
- 2 ah lah-voh-RAH-toh MOHL-toh?
- 3 SEE, SYAH-moh . . . ohk-koo-PAH-tee ah zbree-GAH-reh lah kohr-ree-spohn-DEHN-tsah . . . ah-jehn-TSEE'eh een TOOT-tah leh'oo-ROH-pah ed een oh-ree-EHN-teh.
- 4 AHN-noh SKREET-toh leh LEHT-teh-reh een ee-tah-LYAH-noh?
- 5 ahl-koo-neh. mah lah mah-DJOHR PAHR-teh leh ahb-BYAH-moh SKREET-teh een frahn-CHEH-zeh poy-KEH, . . . see PAHR-lah een KWAH-zee TOOT-teh leh kah-pee-TAH-lee eh'oo-roh-PEH'eh, speh-chahl-MEHN-teh nay pah'Eh-zee een koo'y lah PROH-pryah LEEN-gwah . . . koh-noh-SHYOO-tah ahl-LEH-steh-roh; pehr eh-ZEHM-pyoh lah roo-meh-NEE'ah, lah poh-LOH-nyah, la cheh-koh-sloh-VAHK-kyah, leh-JEET-toh eh lah toor-KEE'ah.
- 6 SKREE-voh-noh leh LEHT-teh-reh ah MAHK-kee-nah?
- 7 SEE, ahl JOHR-noh DOH-djee TOOT-tah lah kohr-ree-spohn-DEHN-tsah dahf-FAH-ree VYEH-neh SKREET-tah ah MAHK-kee-nah . . . DOO-plee-cheh KOH-pyah pehr kohn-sehr-VAHR-neh oo-nah AH-l'yee AHT-tee.
- 8 . . . reh-lah-TSYOH-nee kohm-mehr-CHAH-lee kohn lahr-jehn-TEE-nah?
- 9 SEE, eh fah-TCHAH-moh ahf-FAH-ree AHN-keh kohl brah-ZEE-leh.

## TRANSLATION

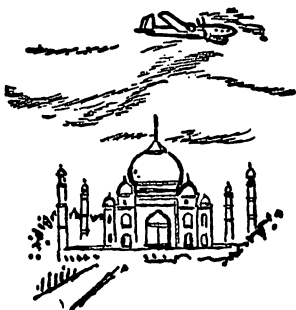
- What have you accomplished today?
- Have you done much work?
- Yes, we have been very busy attending to the correspondence with our agencies throughout Europe and the Orient.
- Did you write the letters in Italian?
- Some. But we wrote most (*lit.*, the larger part) of them in French because, as you know, French is spoken in nearly all European capitals, especially in the countries whose (own) language is not very well known abroad; for example, Rumania, Poland, Czechoslovakia, Egypt, and Turkey.
- Do you typewrite your letters?
- Yes, nowadays all business correspondence is (*lit.*, comes) typewritten, and usually in duplicate in order to keep one copy on record.
- Have you business relations with Argentina?
- Yes, and we also do business in Brazil.

Note 7, Lesson 8. 4. Idiom. 5. *Lit.*, to write by machine. 6. The interrogative "what" is translated by *che cosa* in Italian, but *che* or *cosa* are frequently

10 Voglio riscuotere una tratta. Ho bisogno di dollari americani ed io non ho che<sup>14</sup> sterline.

11 A proposito, ho perduto il mio libretto<sup>15</sup> di assegni.<sup>16</sup>

12 Dobbiamo andare alla banca immediatamente?



13 Sì, dobbiamo andarci subito, perchè le banche<sup>17</sup> chiudono alle tre precise.

14 Quando deve spedire questi articoli?

15 Bisogna spedire<sup>18</sup> subito la merce?

16 Non vuole prima mandare un cablogramma al suo rappresentante?

17 No, una lettera aerea sarà sufficiente. La riceverà lunedì.

18 Debbo scrivere anche al mio rappresentante ad<sup>19</sup> Atene.

19 Quando parte la posta per la Grecia? Bisogna aspettare a lungo?

20 Il piroscavo parte una volta la<sup>20</sup> settimana, ma c'è un servizio aereo quotidiano.

21 Fa molti affari con i Paesi Bassi?



used alone. 7. *Fare qualche cosa di bello. Lit.*, to do something nice. 8. *Essere* takes its own present as an auxiliary. In verbs conjugated with *essere* the past participle agrees with the subject. *Stati* agrees with *noi*, understood. 9. *Occupato*

10 VOH-l'yoh ree-SKWOH-teh-reh oonah TRAHT-tah. oh bee-ZOH-n'yoh dee DOHL-lah-ree ah-meh-ree-KAH-nee ed EE'oh nohn oh keh stehr-LEE-neh.

I want to cash a draft. I need American dollars and I have only pounds sterling.

11 ah proh-POH-zee-toh, oh pehr-DOO-toh eel MEE'oh lee-BREHT-toh dee ahs-SEH-n'yee.

By the way, I have lost my check book.

12 dohb-BYAH-moh ahn-DAH-reh AHL-lah BAHN-kah eem-meh-dyah-tah-MEHN-teh?

Must we go to the bank at once?

13 . . . ahn-DAHR-chee soo-bee-toh . . . BAHN-keh KYOO-doh-noh AHL-leh TREH preh-CHEE-zeh.

Yes, we have to go there right away because banks close at three o'clock sharp.

14 KWAHN-doh DEH-veh speh-DEE-reh KWEH-stee ahr-TEE-koh-lee?

When do you have to send these articles?

15 bee-ZOH-n'yah speh-DEE-reh soo-bee-toh lah MEHR-cheh?

Must the merchandise be shipped right away?

16 nohn vWOH-leh FREE-mah mahn-DAH-reh oon kah-bloh-GRAHM-mah ahl soo'oh rahp-preh-zehn-TAHN-teh?

Don't you want to first send a cablegram to your representative?

17 . . . ah'EH-reh'ah sah-RAH soof-fee-CHYEHN-teh. lah ree-cheh-veh-RAH loo-neh-DEE.

No, an air mail letter will suffice. He will receive it on Monday.

18 DEHB-boh SKREE-veh-reh ahl MEE'oh rahp-preh-zehn-TAHN-teh ahd ah-TEH-neh.

I must also write to my representative in Athens.

19 KWAHN-doh PAHR-teh lah POH-stah pehr lah GREH-chyah? bee-ZOH-n'yah ah-speht-TAH-reh ah LOON-goh?

When does the mail leave for Greece? Will it be necessary to wait long?

20 eel pee-ROH-skah-foh PAHR-teh oonah VOHL-tah lah seht-tee-MAH-nah, mah CHEH oon shr-VEE-tsyoh ah'EH-reh'oh 'kwoh-tee-DYAH-noh.

The boat leaves once a week, but there is plane service every day.

21 fah MOHL-tee ahf-FAH-ree kohn ee pah'EH-zee BAHS-see?

Do you do much business with the Low Countries?

takes *a* to introduce an infinitive. 10. *Scritte* agrees with *le*, which refers to *lettere*. The past participle of verbs conjugated with the auxiliary *avere* agrees with the preceding direct object. 11. See Note 19, Lesson 3. 12. A reminder

- 22 Recentemente ho venduto molta merce in<sup>21</sup> Olanda e nel<sup>21</sup> Belgio.
- 23 In questo caso dovrebbe aprire una succursale a<sup>19</sup> Parigi, non le pare?
- 24 Sì, intendo aprire la sede centrale nel cuore della città, vicino alla Borsa,<sup>22</sup> il quindici di questo mese.

---

that names of countries are preceded by the definite article. 13. The *ne* of *conservarne* refers to *copia*. 14. See Note 13, Lesson 5. 15. *Libretto* is a diminutive of *libro*. *-etto* is a diminutive suffix. 16. *Libretto di assegni. Lit.*, little book of checks. 17. The singular of *banche* is *banca*. 18. *Spedire* means "to send;" also "to ship." 19. "In" before the name of a city is usually translated

- 22 reh-chehn-teh-MEHN-teh . . . MEHR-cheh een oh-LAHN-dah eh .nehl BEHL-joh.
- 23 . . . doh-VREHB-beh ah-FREE-reh oo-nah sook-KOOR-SAH-leh ah pah-REE-jee . . . PAH-reh?
- 24 SEE, een-TEHN-doh ah-FREE-reh lah SEH-deh chehn-TRAH-leh nehl KWOH-reh DEHL-lah cheet-TAH, vee-CHEE-noh AHL-lah BOHR-sah, eel KWEEN-dee-chee dee KWEH-stoh MEH-zeh.

Recently I sold a great deal of merchandise in Holland and Belgium.

In that case you ought to open a branch in Paris, don't you think?

Yes, I intend to open the main office in the center of the city, near the Stock Exchange, the fifteenth of this month.

---

by a (*ad* before a vowel). 20. The definite article is used idiomatically here. 21. Feminine nouns of countries, not modified by an adjective, do not take the definite article after the preposition *in*. Thus we have here *in Olanda* (fem.) and *nel Belgio* (masc.). But: *nella bella Olanda* (in beautiful Holland). 22. *Borsa* basically means "purse;" also "scholarship."



## Diciassettesima Lezione

### IN CASA DI ALCUNI AMICI A NAPOLI

*(Carlo e Maria Smith sbarcano a Napoli per iniziare il loro viaggio di nozze. Dopo il controllo della dogana incontrano, all'uscita, il professore Di Giacomo, vecchio amico di Carlo, che li conduce all'albergo, e servirà loro da guida durante la loro permanenza a Napoli.)*

**CARLO:** Mia cara sposina,<sup>1</sup> eccoci<sup>2</sup> a Napoli. Che impressione ti ha fatto il golfo di questa antica e storica città?

**MARIA:** Magnifico! Sembra proprio un sogno. La scena dell'arrivo è ancora più bella di come la immaginavo. Ardo dal<sup>3</sup> desiderio di visitare tutti i bei luoghi di questa incantevole parte dell'Italia.

**CARLO:** Il tuo desiderio sarà presto appagato. Intanto mettiamoci in fila<sup>4</sup> qui per il controllo della dogana.<sup>5</sup>

**MARIA:** Chi sa quanto tempo ci vorrà<sup>6</sup> per sbrigarci!

**CARLO:** Non molto. Il controllo della dogana è quasi una formalità. Abbiamo tutte le nostre valigie? Non abbiamo dimenticato nulla a bordo?<sup>7</sup>

**MARIA:** Nulla. Oh, a proposito,<sup>8</sup> dov'è il tuo orologio da polso?

**CARLO:** Il mio orologio? È qui. No, non c'è. Accidempoli!<sup>9</sup> Dov'è? L'avrò dimenticato<sup>10</sup> nella cabina. Corro a cercarlo. (*Sta per allontanarsi, ma Maria lo ferma.*)

**FOOTNOTES:** 1. *Sposina* is a diminutive for *sposa* (wife, bride). 2. *Eccoci:* "Here we are." 3. *Dal* in this case means "with the." 4. An idiom: "Let's stand on line." 5. *Controllo della dogana:* "customs inspection." 6. *Quanto tempo ci vorrà:* "How long will it take?" *Vorrà* is future of *volere*, an irregular verb. See Table of Irregular Verbs. 7. *A bordo:* "on board." 8. An idiom:

MARIA: Calmati, calmati, amor mio. Ecco il tuo orologio. Lo avevi veramente dimenticato. Meno male<sup>11</sup> che ci sono io che penso a tutto, altrimenti un giorno o l'altro dimenticheresti anche la testa.

CARLO: Adesso non esageriamo. Tuttavia sono molto felice di averti con me. Ecco il doganiere.

DOGANIERE: Vuole avere la bontà di aprire le valigie, signore?

CARLO: Certo. (*Apri le valigie.*) Ecco fatto.<sup>12</sup>

DOGANIERE: Ha tabacco, articoli di seta o altre cose da<sup>13</sup> dichiarare?

CARLO: Sì, ho venti pacchetti di sigarette. Il resto consiste di biancheria ed altri oggetti per uso personale. Ho anche una macchina fotografica, una macchina cinematografica e quindici rulli di pellicole. Debbo pagare la tassa?

DOGANIERE: No, signore, può chiudere le valigie. Auguri a lei ed alla sua signora per una felice permanenza in Italia.



CARLO (*chiudendo le valigie*): Accetta<sup>14</sup> una sigaretta?

DOGANIERE: Con piacere, signore. Non si può rifiutare una buona sigaretta americana. Tante grazie.

MARIA: Ci siamo sbrigati presto. E adesso possiamo veramente dire che siamo in Italia.

CARLO: Proprio così,<sup>15</sup> adorata. Sei felice?

MARIA: Immensamente. (*Additando un signore che gesticola con la mano.*) Oh, guarda quel signore, sembra che chiami<sup>16</sup> te.

"by the way." 9. *Accidempoli* is an interjection signifying surprise and annoyance. Translate it any way you wish. 10. *Avrò dimenticato* is future of probability. See Reference Grammar. 11. *Meno male* is an idiom: "It's a good thing!" 12. *Ecco fatto!*: "It's done!" 13. This is a special use of the word *da*. See Reference Grammar. 14. "Will you accept . . ." 15. *Proprio così*: "Exactly."



CARLO: Infatti! È il professore Di Giacomo. Professore!

PROFESSORE: Caro Capitano Smith! Che<sup>17</sup> piacere di rivederla!  
(*Cordiale abbraccio.*)

CARLO: È un gran piacere anche per me di rivedere lei, caro professore. Mi permetta di presentarle la mia signora.<sup>18</sup>

PROFESSORE: Fortunatissimo, signora.

MARIA: Il piacere è mio, professore.

CARLO (*a Maria*): Ebbi la fortuna di fare la conoscenza del professor Di Giacomo quando ero<sup>19</sup> a Napoli durante la guerra. Come vedi, mi chiama ancora "capitano." Ben presto<sup>20</sup> si stabilì fra noi una grande amicizia. Gli promisi<sup>21</sup> che saremmo venuti in Italia per il nostro viaggio di nozze . . .<sup>22</sup>

PROFESSORE: Ed ha mantenuto la promessa. Bravissimo! Intanto, cari sposini, prendiamo il tassì che già aspetta. (*Tutti e tre entrano nel tassì.*) Andiamo prima all'albergo. Ho prenotato per loro una bellissima camera con tutti i conforti moderni ai quali loro americani sono abituati.

MARIA: Le siamo immensamente grati, professore.

PROFESSORE: Le assicuro che è un vero piacere per me potervi<sup>23</sup> essere utile. E se mi permette, signora, le debbo dire che lei è proprio come la immaginavo. Suo marito, allora suo fidanzato, non faceva che<sup>24</sup> parlarmi di lei. Poveretto,<sup>25</sup> soffriva molto per lei, e debbo confessare che aveva ben ragione.<sup>26</sup> Non avrebbe potuto fare una scelta migliore.

MARIA: Grazie, professore. Lei è molto galante.

CARLO: La galanteria, mia cara, è parte di ogni italiano.

PROFESSORE: Colgo questa occasione per augurare loro una lunga e felice vita insieme. Possa il loro cammino essere sempre cosparso di fiori e di felicità infinita.

MARIA E CARLO: Grazie, professore.

PROFESSORE: E adesso, se mi permettono, dirò loro che cosa

16. *Chiami* is subjunctive of *chiamare*. It is required here by the impersonal expression *mi sembra*. See Reference Grammar. 17. *Che* in exclamations is translated as "what a." 18. In speaking of one's wife or of somebody else's wife, the word *signora* is often used instead of *moglie*. 19. *Ero* is imperfect of *essere*. For complete tense See Reference Grammar. 20. *Ben presto*: "At once."

faremo stasera. Io li accompagnerò all'albergo, e poi ritornerò alle sei.

CARLO: La prego, professore, di non darsi troppo disturbo per noi.

PROFESSORE: Disturbo? Tutt'altro,<sup>27</sup> amici cari. È un vero piacere per me e per mia moglie che li aspetta a braccia aperte.<sup>28</sup>

CARLO: A proposito, come sta<sup>29</sup> la sua cara e gentile signora?

PROFESSORE: Benissimo. Li aspetta con ansia. Dunque, questa sera ci faranno l'onore<sup>30</sup> di cenare con noi. E dopo cena andremo al San Carlo.

MARIA: Che idea stupenda! E che cosa si dà<sup>31</sup> stasera al San Carlo?

PROFESSORE: La Boheme.

MARIA: Questa è una vera fortuna. La nostra visita in Italia incomincia proprio bene.

PROFESSORE: Ecco l'albergo. (*Scendono dal tassì. Il professore paga l'autista.*) Li accompagno fino alla loro camera e poi li lascio. So che vogliono rimanere soli.

CARLO: La sua compagnia non ci dà mai disturbo.<sup>32</sup> Nel pomeriggio andremo a zonzo<sup>33</sup> per le vie della città. Prima di tutto,<sup>34</sup> però, dovrò cambiare alcuni dollari in lire italiane.

PROFESSORE: Questo sarà molto facile farlo, perchè l'ufficio dell'American Express si trova<sup>35</sup> qui vicino.

CARLO: Benissimo. Allora, caro professore, arriverdela a stasera.

MARIA: Arriverdela, professore, ed abbia la bontà di porgere i nostri cordiali saluti alla sua gentile signora.

PROFESSORE: Grazie. Lo farò con piacere. A stasera.<sup>36</sup> (*Strette di mano.*)

#### IN CASA DEL PROFESSORE DI GIACOMO

(*La signora Lucia, moglie del professore, accoglie gli sposini.*)

PROFESSORE: Mia cara Lucia, ho l'onore di presentarti la simpatica signora Smith.

21. *Promisi* is past definite of irregular verb *promettere*. 22. *Viaggio di nozze*: "Honeymoon trip." 23. *Potervi. Vi* is a direct object pronoun attached to the infinitive. 24. *Non . . . (verb) . . . che* means "only." 25. *Poveretto* is a diminutive of *povero*. In this case it means "poor thing!" 26. *Aveva ben ragione*: "He was well justified." *Avere ragione* is an idiom meaning "to be right." The

LUCIA: Molto, molto felice di conoscerla. E tu, caro Carlo, abbracciami.

CARLO: Con gioia! (*L'abbraccia.*) Sa bene che per me lei è come una seconda madre. Non è affatto<sup>37</sup> cambiata. Anzi, posso dire che è ancora più bella di prima.

LUCIA: So che lo dici per galanteria, ma non mi dispiace.<sup>38</sup> Attento, però. Non dimenticare che tua moglie e mio marito sono presenti.

CARLO: Non hanno alcuna ragione di essere gelosi.

PROFESSORE: E infatti, non lo siamo. Vero, signora Smith?

MARIA: Verissimo. Però ho notato che sua moglie dà del tu<sup>39</sup> a mio marito. . . .

LUCIA: Ah, ah! Che cosa dicevo<sup>40</sup> io poco fa?<sup>41</sup>



PROFESSORE: Per mia moglie suo marito è come se fosse un figlio.

MARIA: Lo so, lo so, io non penso male affatto. Però chi dà del tu a mio marito deve dare del tu anche a me. Quindi per lei e per sua moglie io sono Maria, e non la signora Smith.

PROFESSORE: Che incantevole creatura!

---

opposite is *avere torto*: "to be wrong." 27. *Tutt'altro*: "On the contrary." 28. *A braccia aperte* is an idiom meaning "with open arms." *Aperte* is the past participle of *aprire*, and in this case it agrees with *braccia*, which is feminine plural. 29. *Come sta?*: "How is?" The verb *stare* is used in expressions relating to health. 30. *Ci faranno l'onore*: "Will do us the honor." 31. *Si dà* is an impersonal expression. The infinitive is *dare*, which is irregular. 32. *Non ci dà mai disturbo*: "Never inconveniences us." 33. *Andare a zonzo* is an idiom

LUCIA: Con piacere, Maria. E dimmi, cara, come va<sup>42</sup> che parli italiano così bene?

MARIA: I miei genitori sono nati<sup>43</sup> in Italia, e quindi a casa mia si parla sempre in italiano. Naturalmente l'ho studiato anche a scuola.

PROFESSORE: Ho notato che Carlo lo parla perfettamente adesso, mentre quando era qui alcuni anni fa, lo parlava con un po' di difficoltà.

CARLO: L'ho studiato anch'io all'università; e poi, la mia cara sposina, insiste perchè fra noi si parli sempre in italiano.

DOMESTICA: La cena è servita!

PROFESSORE: Benissimo. Dunque, a tavola.<sup>44</sup> Avete appetito?

*(Tutti si siedono. Di tanto in tanto la domestica porta le diverse pietanze.)*

CARLO: Non esito a dire che ho una fame da lupo.<sup>45</sup> La lunga passeggiata che abbiamo fatto lungo Via Caracciolo ed altre belle strade mi ha dato un ottimo appetito.

MARIA: Debbo confessare che anch'io sono ben disposta a fare onore all'eccellente cena che la signora ha preparato.

LUCIA: Non puoi ancora dire se la cena sia eccellente o no.

MARIA: Oh, non posso averne<sup>46</sup> alcun dubbio. Mio marito mi ha parlato diverse volte degli eccellenti pasti che lei gli preparava quando era qui.

PROFESSORE: Quanto tempo vi tratterrete<sup>47</sup> a Napoli?

CARLO: Una diecina di giorni,<sup>48</sup> credo. C'è molto da vedere da queste parti.

MARIA: Prima di tutto vorrei andare all' isola di Capri, per vedere la famosa Grotta Azzurra.

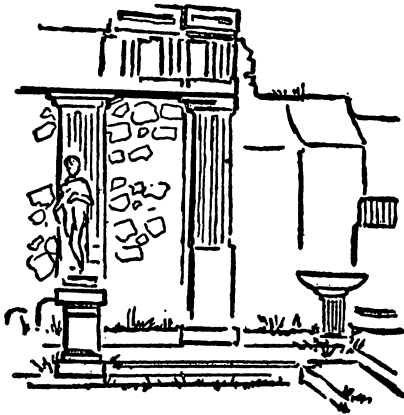
CARLO: Sarai accontentata.

MARIA: Una giornata la passeremo a Pompei.

PROFESSORE: Sì, bisogna visitare anche Pompei, la città che

meaning "to go strolling about." 34. *Prima di tutto*: "before everything else." 35. *Si trova*: "is located." 36. An idiom: "See you tonight!" 37. *Non . . . affatto*: "Not at all!" 38. *Non mi dispiace*: "I don't mind it." 39. *Dare del tu* means "to thee and thou;" that is, to use the familiar form of address. 40. *Dicevo* is imperfect of irregular verb *dire*. 41. *Poco fa*: "a short while ago; just now." *Fa* (from the verb *fare*) means "ago" when used in expressions indicating elapsed time. 42. *Come va*: "How come?" 43. *Nati* is past participle of *nascere* (to be

circa duemila anni fa fu completamente sepolta dalla lava della più terribile eruzione del Vesuvio che la storia ricordi.<sup>49</sup> Come



sapete, da tanti anni vi si fanno scavi<sup>50</sup> e già una buona parte dell'antica città è venuta di nuovo<sup>51</sup> alla luce ed ha rivelato lo splendore della civiltà e del lusso di venti secoli fa.

CARLO: Ti sarà concesso di visitare anche Pompei. Naturalmente bisognerà salire anche sul Vesuvio. Io sono già stato sulla cima di questo famoso vulcano ed ho piacere di rivedere lo spetta-

colo magnifico, il panorama incantevole che si offre agli occhi del viaggiatore dalla cima di questa montagna.

MARIA: Ti sarà concesso. Posso venire con te?

CARLO: Credo di sì.<sup>52</sup>

MARIA: Grazie, signor<sup>53</sup> comandante! E così, dopo averlo tanto desiderato, salirò finalmente sulla funicolare<sup>54</sup> del Vesuvio, resa famosa<sup>55</sup> dalla bella canzonetta "Funiculi - Funiculà".

LUCIA: Vi piacciono<sup>56</sup> le canzoni napoletane?

MARIA: Immensamente. Come lei sa, molte canzoni napoletane come "O'Mari," "O Sole Mio," "Santa Lucia," "Torna a Sorrento," e tante altre ancora sono conosciute in tutto il mondo e si cantano in moltissime lingue. La musica di queste canzoni è così dolce, così melodiosa, e spesso così appassionata<sup>57</sup> che scende direttamente al cuore.

PROFESSORE: Sono sicuro che vi piacerebbe assistere alla festa di Piedigrotta in onore della Madonna. Questa è la festa delle

---

born). Here it agrees with *genitori*. 44. *A tavola*: "Let's sit at the table." The verb is understood. 45. *Ho una fame da lupo*: "I am hungry as a wolf," an idiomatic expression. 46. *Averne*. *Ne* is attached to the infinitive *avere*, and means "about it." 47. *Vi tratterrete* is future of *trattenersi*, which is conjugated like *tenere*. 48. *Una diecina di giorni*: "About ten days." 49. This eruption took place in the year 79 A.D. and completely buried the towns of Pompei (Pompeii) Stabia, and Ercolano (Herculaneum). 50. The excavations, which began in the

canzoni, ed in questa occasione viene scelta la più bella canzone dell'anno.

MARIA: Mi piacerebbe veramente. Quando si celebra questa festa?

LUCIA: Il sette di settembre.

CARLO: Faremo tutto il possibile di trovarci di nuovo a Napoli per questa festa.

PROFESSORE: Andrete anche a Sorrento, immagino.

CARLO: Senza dubbio. E lì andremo anche a fare i bagni,<sup>58</sup> e, se possibile, vorrei andare anche a pescare per alcune ore.

PROFESSORE: Ti piace la pesca?

MARIA: Mio marito è molto appassionato<sup>59</sup> della pesca. Sono andata diverse volte con lui, e adesso piace anche a me.



LUCIA: Immagino che abbiate intenzione di visitare tutta l'Italia.

CARLO: Se non tutta, una buona parte di sicuro.

PROFESSORE: Quanto tempo contate di rimanere in Italia?

---

year 1748, are a major attraction for tourists. 51. An idiom: "again." 52. *Credo di sì*: "I think so." Likewise, *credo di no* means "I don't think so." 53. Do not translate the word *signor*, which in Italian is often used in direct address before a title or profession, for the sake of politeness. 54. The *Funicolare*, cable car, which goes to the summit of Mt. Vesuvius, offers a panorama of breathtaking beauty. 55. *Resa famosa*: "made famous." 56. The verb *piacere* is mostly used in the third person singular and plural. The direct object of the English

MARIA: Otto o dieci settimane. Quando lasceremo Napoli andremo a Roma.

CARLO: Non prima di avere fatto una breve visita a Taormina, in Sicilia, mia cara. Non sono ancora stato a Taormina, e sono molto desideroso di vedere questo luogo che tutti definiscono<sup>60</sup> il paradiso dei turisti.

MARIA: Come vuoi<sup>61</sup> tu, amor mio. Ovunque andrai ti seguirò. Se vuoi passeremo lì tre o quattro giorni. Va bene così? Lo sai che per te io sono disposta a fare qualunque sacrificio.

CARLO: Non si può negare<sup>62</sup> che questo sia<sup>63</sup> veramente un grandissimo sacrificio!

PROFESSORE: E adesso, miei cari, prepariamoci per il teatro. (*Tutti si alzano da tavola.*) Sono quasi le otto, e la rappresentazione comincia alle otto e mezzo precise. (*Guarda l'orologio.*)

MARIA: Allora sbrighiamoci. Non voglio perdere una sola nota della bellissima musica di Puccini. Sono veramente ansiosa di vedere il San Carlo che, dicono, sia uno dei più bei teatri d'opera del mondo.



LUCIA: Vedo che siamo tutti pronti. Andiamo.

PROFESSORE: E il tassi?

LUCIA: La domestica ha telefonato mezz'ora fa. Dovrebbe già essere alla porta.

sentence becomes the subject of *piacere*, and the subject becomes an indirect object. Thus the sentence: *Vi piacciono le canzoni?* (Do you like the songs?) becomes: "are the songs pleasing to you?" In the compound tenses the auxiliary *essere* is used. Example: *Mi è piaciuto quel libro.* (I liked that book). 57. "Full of feeling." 58. An idiom: "To go bathing." 59. "Passionately fond." 60. *Che tutti definiscono*: "Which everybody calls." 61. "As you wish." *Vuoi* is

**PROFESSORE:** C'è infatti, e l'autista ha annunciato la sua presenza suonando la tromba della macchina.<sup>64</sup> Maria, posso avere l'onore di offrirti il braccio?<sup>65</sup>

**MARIA:** Con piacere.

**CARLO:** Professore, questa volta non se la passa liscia,<sup>66</sup> perchè io do il braccio alla sua signora, e così siamo pari. (*Tutti escono.*)

---

present of the irregular verb *volere*. 62. An impersonal verb: "one cannot deny."  
 63. *Sia*: present subjunctive of *essere*. 64. *Macchina* is often used instead of *automobile*. 65. *Il braccio*: "your arm." With parts of the body the possessive adjective is usually omitted in Italian. See Reference Grammar. 66. *Non se la passa liscia* is an idiomatic expression. It means, "You won't get away with it."





# Diciottesima Lezione

## NELLA CITTÀ ETERNA

### ALL'USCITA DELLA STAZIONE DI TERMINI

**CARLO:** Autista, è libera la sua vettura?

**AUTISTA:** Sì, signore; entrino pure. Dove vogliono andare?

**CARLO:** Ci porti all'Albergo Flora. Sa dov'è?

**AUTISTA:** Eh, si figuri!<sup>1</sup> È vicino a Villa Borghese.<sup>2</sup> È un ottimo albergo. Hanno fatto la prenotazione?

**CARLO:** Sì, abbiamo telegrafato da Napoli. Non vada<sup>3</sup> troppo veloce. Cammin facendo<sup>4</sup> vogliamo incominciare ad ammirare le bellezze di questa incantevole città. Anzi, invece di andare direttamente all'albergo, la prego di passare per il Colosseo.

**AUTISTA:** Sarà servito,<sup>5</sup> signore.

**MARIA:** Amor mio, mi sembra proprio di sognare! Questa è la grande, l'immortale, l'incantevole Roma, che per secoli dominò il mondo, portando ovunque civiltà e cultura.

**CARLO:** Guarda là, a sinistra, cara. Che cosa vedi?

**MARIA:** Quella grande cupola non può essere che<sup>6</sup> la Cupola di San Pietro, il capolavoro dell'immortale Michelangelo.

**CARLO:** Sai che Michelangelo aveva fatto prima la cupola del Duomo di Firenze. Il grande artista era orgoglioso di quella meravigliosa cupola, e nell'ammirarla ancora una volta<sup>7</sup> prima di partire<sup>8</sup> per Roma, sai cosa disse?<sup>9</sup>

**FOOTNOTES:** 1. *Si figuri*: "You can imagine." 2. *Villa Borghese*: One of the most beautiful parks in Rome. 3. *Vada* is imperative of *andare*. 4. "On the way." 5. *Sarà servito*: "as you wish." 6. See Note 24, Lesson 17. 7. Idiom: "once more." 8. After a preposition the Italian verb is in the infinitive. 9.

MARIA: Credo di sì,<sup>10</sup> ma non voglio toglierti il piacere di dirmelo.

CARLO: Allora te lo dico: "A Roma vado a far la tua sorella . . ."

MARIA: ". . . Più grande sì, ma non di te più bella."

CARLO: C'è molto, ma molto da vedere<sup>11</sup> a Roma. Per farci una buona idea<sup>12</sup> di Roma dovremmo<sup>13</sup> rimanerci almeno un mese.

MARIA: Purtroppo ciò non sarà possibile, mio caro sposo, ma credo che potremo rimanerci due settimane. Che ne dici?<sup>14</sup>

CARLO: Come vuoi, cara. Ma bisogna fare un programma che ti permetterà<sup>15</sup> di vedere più che sia possibile.<sup>16</sup> Certo che Roma merita una visita più lunga che le altre città. In primo luogo,<sup>17</sup> Roma è capitale della Repubblica Italiana.<sup>18</sup> Poi è la più grande città d'Italia, ed una delle più belle del mondo.

MARIA: Va bene; stasera faremo il nostro itinerario.

CARLO: Ecco il Colosseo, Maria. Che te ne pare?

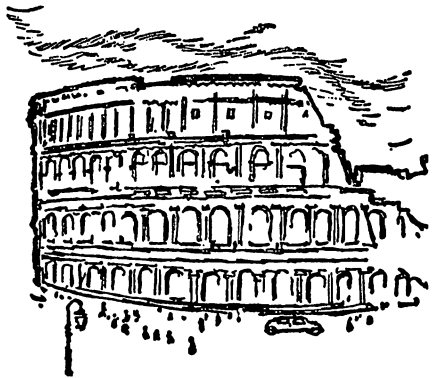
MARIA: Meraviglioso, imponente! Per me questo è il primo segno visibile dell'antica gloria di Roma. Mi sembra già di essere trasportata ai tempi dell'antichità. Posso quasi ricostruire nella mia mente lo splendore dell'antica Roma.

CARLO: Questa è la Via dei Fori Imperiali. Qui, a sinistra c'è l'antico Foro Romano, laggiù, vedi, c'è la bella Piazza Venezia.

MARIA: Dobbiamo visitare con cura tutti questi luoghi, e, naturalmente, ci toccherà fare molta strada a piedi.<sup>19</sup>

CARLO: E già! Non c'è altro mezzo.<sup>20</sup> Per visitare questi luoghi come si deve<sup>21</sup> bisognerà camminare molto.

MARIA: Bisognerà alzarci presto la mattina<sup>22</sup> e incominciare le nostre peregrinazioni di buon'ora.<sup>23</sup>



*Disse* is past definite of irregular verb *dire*. 10. See Note 52, Lesson 17. 11. "There is a great deal to see." 12 "To get a good idea." 13. Conditional of irregular verb *dovere*. 14. "What do you say (about it)?" 15. Future instead of subjunctive because a definite future action is indicated. 16. "As much as

CARLO: Ben detto, mia cara. E sai che faremo dopo la colazione del mezzogiorno?

MARIA: Continueremo a girare.

CARLO: Ti sbagli.<sup>24</sup> Faremo come fanno i romani. La maggior parte<sup>25</sup> di essi vanno a letto per un paio d'ore dopo la colazione, per riposarsi e per sfuggire al caldo.<sup>26</sup> "Paese che vai, usanze che trovi."<sup>27</sup> Andremo a letto anche noi, e verso le quattro del pomeriggio continueremo il nostro itinerario.



MARIA: Forse hai ragione. Non vale la pena<sup>28</sup> di stancarci troppo. Ecco il nostro albergo. (*Carlo e Maria scendono dalla vettura.*)

CARLO: Autista, quanto le dobbiamo?

AUTISTA: Seicento cinquanta lire, signore.

CARLO: Va bene. (*Gli dà il denaro.*) Ecco settecento lire. Tenga<sup>29</sup> il resto.

AUTISTA: Mille grazie,<sup>30</sup> signore.

(*Gli sposini entrano nell'albergo.*)

DIRETTORE DELL'ALBERGO: Ben venuti,<sup>31</sup> signori.<sup>32</sup>

CARLO: Io sono il signor Carlo Smith, e questa è la mia signora.

DIRETTORE: Abbiamo ricevuto la prenotazione e le abbiamo riservata una bella camera al<sup>33</sup> secondo piano. Alberto, porta le valigie dei signori nella camera trentadue. Intanto, vuole avere la bontà di mostrarmi il passaporto e di firmare sul registro?<sup>34</sup>

CARLO: Certo. (*Firma sul registro.*) Deve firmare anche mia moglie?

---

possible." *Sia* is subjunctive because *più* has the superlative force of *il più*. 17. *In primo luogo*: "in the first place." 18. Italy was a monarchy up to 1946 when, as the result of a plebiscite, it became a republic. 19. "We shall have to walk a great deal." In this sentence we actually have three idioms: *ci toccherà, fare strada, a piedi*. 20. "There is no other way." 21. "As one should." 22. "In the morning." 23. "Early." *Literally*, at a good hour. 24. "You are mistaken." The infinitive is *sbagliarsi*. 25. *La maggior parte*: "most." *Lit.*, the greater part.

**DIRETTORE:** Non è necessario. Ecco la chiave. C'è anche un messaggio per lei.

**CARLO:** Grazie. (*Aprè la busta e legge il biglietto. Poi rivolgendosi a Maria.*) Indovina di chi è questo messaggio?

**MARIA:** Preferisco non indovinare. Forse qualche tua vecchia fiamma?

**CARLO:** Macchè<sup>35</sup>! È della signorina Borgese, la nipote del professore Di Giacomo.

**MARIA:** Ah, benissimo. Il professore ci disse che avrebbe<sup>36</sup> informata sua nipote della nostra venuta a Roma.

**CARLO:** La signorina Borgese ci prega di telefonarle appena possibile dopo il nostro arrivo. (*Al direttore.*) C'è telefono<sup>37</sup> nella nostra camera?

**DIRETTORE:** Sì, signore. Se permettono li accompagno io stesso.

**CARLO:** Grazie. Molto gentile.<sup>38</sup>

**MARIA:** Hai il numero del telefono della signorina?

**CARLO:** Sì, è scritto<sup>39</sup> qui nel biglietto. È meglio che telefoni subito. (*Prende il telefono.*) Pronto! Mi dia il 60-345, per piacere . . . Pronto! . . . Signorina Borgese? . . . Sono proprio io, Carlo Smith . . . Sì, siamo arrivati all'albergo pochi minuti fa . . . Ma certo, venga pure<sup>40</sup> quando le fa comodo.<sup>41</sup> Mia moglie ed io non vediamo l'ora di conoscerla . . . Alle cinque? . . . Benissimo, l'attendiamo con ansia. Arrivederla a presto!

**MARIA:** Ammiro il tuo entusiasmo, caro.

**CARLO:** Ma . . .

**MARIA:** Non è necessario che dica<sup>42</sup> niente, Non ti allarmare. Se la signorina è gentile come lo zio sono sicura che anche a Roma avremo un'ottima guida.

---

26. "To escape the heat." *Per* means "in order to." 27. "When in Rome do as the Romans do." Notice the literal meaning of this saying in this instance. 28. Idiom: "It is not worth while." 29. Imperative of irregular verb *tenere*. 30. "Thanks a million." *Lit.*, a thousand thanks. 31. "Welcome." 32. Notice that, even though the majordomo is welcoming a lady and a gentleman, he uses the masculine plural form *signori*. 33. Here *al* means "on." 34. *Lit.*, to sign on the register. 35. *Macchè!*: "Not at all!" 36. Conditional of *avere*. 37. "Is

## QUALCHE ORA DOPO NELLA CAMERA DELL'ALBERGO FLORA

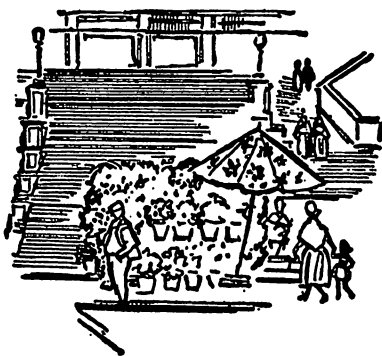
(Squillo<sup>43</sup> del telefono.)

MARIA: Vuoi rispondere tu?

CARLO: Va bene, rispondo io. Sarà<sup>44</sup> la signorina Borgese. Pronto!<sup>45</sup> . . . Ma sì, sì, salga pure.<sup>40</sup> (*A Maria.*) Ho indovinato. (*Apri la porta.*) Cara signorina, non so dirle quanto sono felice di conoscerla. Questa è Maria, mia moglie.

MARIA: Sono anch'io felicissima di fare la sua conoscenza. (*Strette di mano.*<sup>46</sup>)

SIGNORINA BORGESSE: È una immensa gioia anche per me. Lo zio mi ha scritto una lunghissima lettera parlandomi di loro. Io mi metto a loro completa disposizione. Ho molto tempo disponibile e, se vogliono, li accompagnerò con piacere dovunque desiderino<sup>47</sup> andare.



CARLO: Cara signorina, è superfluo dirle che per noi questa è una vera fortuna. Ma si accomodi, prego.

MARIA: Accettiamo con entusiasmo la sua gentile offerta. Siamo sicuri che lei conosce ogni angolo di Roma.

SIGNORINA BORGESSE: Come loro certamente conoscono New York. Mi sono permessa di portare loro una guida di Roma. È la migliore che esista,<sup>48</sup> e c'è anche una pianta ben dettagliata della città. Loro sanno benissimo che per visitare con cura tutta Roma non basterebbero diversi mesi. Quindi, dato che<sup>49</sup> la loro permanenza qui sarà di un paio di settimane al massimo,<sup>50</sup> così

there a telephone?" Notice the omission of the indefinite article in the Italian sentence. 38. "You are very kind." *Lei è* is understood. 39. Past participle of irregular verb *scrivere*. 40. The word *pure* is often used for emphasis. It is not to be translated. 41. "When it is suitable to you." 42. Subjunctive of irregular verb *dire*. 43. *Squillo*: "ring, ringing." 44. Future of probability. 45.

almeno mi ha scritto lo zio, se permettono, darò loro un consiglio.

CARLO: Ma dica, dica pure,<sup>40</sup> cara signorina.

SIG.NA BORGESE: Ecco. In questa guida sono tracciati diversi itinerari. La esaminino attentamente e facciano una lista dei luoghi che in ispecial<sup>51</sup> modo desiderano vedere.



MARIA: L'idea è eccellente, e noi gliene siamo molto grati. Questa sera passeremo qualche oretta<sup>52</sup> a fare i nostri piani. Però ho già in mente che cosa desidero fare la prima giornata.

CARLO: Scommetto che lo so. Vuoi vedere San Pietro ed il Vaticano.

MARIA: Come hai fatto a indovinarlo?<sup>53</sup>

CARLO: Eh! Ne hai parlato tanto!

SIG.NA BORGESE: Non potrebbero incominciare in modo migliore. San Pietro è la più bella chiesa del mondo.

MARIA: Ed è logico e naturale che questa basilica si trovi a Roma che è il centro del Cristianesimo.

CARLO: So che a Roma ci sono moltissime chiese, tutte bellissime.

SIG.NA BORGESE: Ciò è verissimo. In questa città ci sono più di quattrocento chiese, ma le più importanti, oltre a quella di San Pietro, sono le basiliche di San Paolo, di San Giovanni in Laterano e di Santa Maria Maggiore. Queste chiese, i palazzi dei papi ed i numerosi musei che spero avranno occasione di visitare, ricordano e tracciano le origini, lo sviluppo e lo splendore del Cristianesimo.

---

This is the Italian way of saying "Hello!" when answering the telephone. 46. "Handshakes," 47. *Desiderino* is subjunctive. It is required by the indefinite adverb *dovunque*. 48. Subjunctive after a relative superlative. 49. "Inasmuch as." 50. "At the most." 51. A variation of the word *speciale*. Nouns beginning with *s-impura* often take an *i* at the beginning, when the preceding word ends in

**MARIA:** Gli italiani sono quasi tutti cattolici e molto religiosi, non è vero?

**SIG.NA BORGESSE:** Sì, la grandissima maggioranza sono cattolici. Ma le altre religioni sono tollerate ed hanno i loro fedeli.

**CARLO:** Le due più grandi feste, indubbiamente, sono quelle di Natale e di Pasqua.

**SIG.NA BORGESSE:** Verissimo. Lei non può immaginare l'immensa folla che si raduna nella chiesa e nell'immensa piazza di San Pietro la notte di Natale<sup>54</sup> per sentire la Messa di mezzanotte, celebrata dal Papa. Naturalmente, anche le altre chiese sono molto affollate. Molta affluenza di pubblico c'è anche nelle chiese durante la Settimana Santa, specialmente il Sabato Santo, cioè la vigilia di Pasqua, che è il giorno della Risurrezione. Tutti i fedeli vengono ad adorare Gesù Cristo risorto, mentre da tutte le chiese squillano allegramente le campane, suonando a festa.

**MARIA:** Sarà uno spettacolo meraviglioso. Una mia amica mi ha parlato di un'usanza molto simpatica che ha luogo in molte città d'Italia il giorno di Pasqua.

**SIG.NA BORGESSE:** Quale?

**MARIA:** Prima di incominciare il pranzo pasquale<sup>55</sup> il padre di famiglia benedice la tavola e la famiglia con un ramo d'olivo, e poi tutti si danno<sup>56</sup> il bacio della pace.

**SIG.NA BORGESSE:** Già. E poi sperano che la pace sia duratura.

**CARLO:** Signorina, mia moglie ed io siamo molto desiderosi di vedere il Papa. È possibile?

**SIG.NA BORGESSE:** Sì. Non è facile ottenere un'udienza speciale, ma Sua Santità<sup>57</sup> concede spesso delle udienze a gruppi di persone che desiderano vederlo. Sono sicura che il loro desiderio sarà appagato. Forse ciò potrà avverarsi<sup>58</sup> domani stesso. Dato che

---

a consonant. 52. "A few hours." *Oretta* is a diminutive of *ora*, and implies pleasure. 53. How did you guess it? 54. *Notte di Natale*: "Christmas Eve." 55. "Easter dinner." *Pasquale* is an adjective derived from *Pasqua*. 56. "Give each other." 57. "His Holiness." 58. "May come true." 59. *Urbino*: birthplace of Raffael (Raphael). 60. "*Il Giudizio Universale*," "The Last Judgment";

andremo a San Pietro, visiteremo il Vaticano, specialmente i Musei Vaticani, dove si trovano le più preziose e complete raccolte di antichità del mondo; le quattro Stanze di Raffaello, in cui vedranno le sublimi creazioni d'arte dell'immortale pittore di Urbino;<sup>59</sup> e la Cappella Sistina, dove vedranno le opere d'arte dei più grandi artisti del Cinquecento: del Ghirlandaio, del Botticelli, del Perugino, e soprattutto di Michelangelo.

CARLO: Se non mi sbaglio è proprio nella Cappella Sistina che potremo ammirare i famosi affreschi di Michelangelo: Il Giudizio Universale,<sup>60</sup> La Creazione<sup>60</sup> ed il Diluvio Universale.<sup>60</sup>

SIG.NA BORGESSE: Esattamente.

MARIA: E poi, se non siamo troppo stanchi, mi piacerebbe visitare, sia pure di sfuggita,<sup>61</sup> la Biblioteca Vaticana che è senza dubbio la più interessante e ricca del mondo, perchè, a quanto mi è stato detto,<sup>62</sup> racchiude i libri più rari e più belli.

CARLO: Mi dica, per piacere, signorina, se il popolo italiano è contento della Conciliazione tra il Governo Italiano e la Santa Sede<sup>63</sup> avvenuta nel 1929.

SIG.NA BORGESSE: In gran parte sì. Come lei indubbiamente sa, quando nel 1870 l'unificazione d'Italia poteva dirsi quasi completa, il Papa rifiutò di cedere Roma a Vittorio Emanuele, benchè il popolo volesse che Roma fosse la capitale del nuovo regno d'Italia. Così, il 20 settembre 1870, le truppe italiane occuparono Roma e ne fecero la capitale. Il Papa allora, in segno di protesta, si rinchiuse come prigioniero nel Vaticano, e nè lui, nè i suoi successori ne uscirono più fino all'undici febbraio 1929, giorno in cui fu firmato il Patto del Laterano.<sup>64</sup> Fino a quel giorno si



*"La Creazione," "The Creation"; "Il Diluvio Universale," "The Flood."* 61. *Sia pure di sfuggita:* "Even if I do it hastily." 62. "From what I have heard." 63. *La Santa Sede:* "The Holy See." 64. *The Lateran Treaty.* 65. *Tanto . . . quanto:* "as . . . as." 66. *Nacque* (was born) is past definite of *nascere*. 67. *Nome di battesimo:* "first name." *Lit.,* name of baptism. 68. *Tante e tante:*



può dire che uno stato di guerra esistesse tra la Santa Sede ed il Governo d'Italia. Ciò non piaceva al popolo, che era tanto patriottico quanto<sup>65</sup> religioso. Così nacque<sup>66</sup> il più piccolo stato del mondo che è senza dubbio uno dei più importanti.

CARLO: Maria, signorina Borgese . . .

SIG.NA BORGESSE: Mi chiami semplicemente Rosella, che è il mio nome di battesimo.<sup>67</sup>

CARLO: Va bene. Rosella, Maria sentite: mi è venuta un'idea brillante.

MARIA: Un'idea brillante? È possibile?

CARLO: Non scherziamo! Dunque, ecco la mia idea. Dato che abbiamo tante e tante<sup>68</sup> cose da fare e da vedere a Roma, non sarebbe meglio prendere in noleggio<sup>69</sup> un'automobile per il periodo di tempo che resteremo qui?

SIG.NA BORGESSE: Non si può negare che l'idea sia eccellente. Sicuro che è possibile. Credo che sia il mezzo migliore e forse il più economico per visitare tutti i luoghi<sup>70</sup> della città.

MARIA: Ammetto anch'io che l'idea è buona. Così potremo veramente vedere tutta Roma, la parte antica e quella moderna.

SIG.NA BORGESSE: Giustissimo. Non debbono lasciare questa città portando con loro, come fanno tanti altri turisti, l'impressione che Roma sia soltanto una città antica. Roma è anche una città molto moderna, con nuovi quartieri residenziali, nuove vie bellissime, larghe ed alberate, nuovi parchi e monumenti. Il più imponente e meraviglioso di questi monumenti è quello di Vittorio Emanuele Secondo,<sup>71</sup> che fu il primo Re d'Italia. Probabilmente sanno che al centro di questo monumento c'è la tomba del Milite Ignoto.<sup>72</sup>

MARIA: Mi piacerebbe visitare anche le famose Catacombe<sup>73</sup> in cui si riunivano segretamente i Cristiani.

SIG.NA BORGESSE: Le Catacombe sono molto interessanti. Allora dovranno visitare anche le Fosse Ardeatine, scena di una delle più orrende stragi dell'epoca moderna.

---

"so many." 69. *Prendere in noleggio*: "to rent." 70. *Luoghi* is plural of *luogo* (place). 71. Victor Emanuel II (1820-1878) was the first king of United Italy. 72. "Unknown Soldier." 73. The miles and miles of Catacombs in Rome are of great interest to tourists. It was there that the early Christians held their secret

CARLO: Lo so. Purtroppo fu lì che 335 detenuti politici<sup>74</sup> italiani furono, per rappresaglia, orribilmente trucidati dai tedeschi nel 1944.

MARIA: Ciò è molto doloroso. Beh,<sup>75</sup> che facciamo adesso?

CARLO: Adesso usciamo. Facciamo una bella passeggiata e poi andremo a cena. Vuol concederci il piacere della sua compagnia, Rosella?

SIG.NA BORGESE: Molto volentieri. L'avverto però che domani sera verranno<sup>76</sup> a pranzo a casa mia. I miei genitori sono molto desiderosi di conoscerli.

MARIA: Non possiamo rifiutare un'offerta così gentile.

SIG.NA BORGESE: Domani sera conosceranno anche il mio fidanzato.

CARLO: Benissimo. E forse, se il suo fidanzato avrà tempo, potrà<sup>77</sup> accompagnarci anche lui nelle nostre peregrinazioni per la Città Eterna. (*Escono tutti e tre.*<sup>78</sup>)

---

meetings and performed their rituals. 74. "Political prisoners." 75. *Beh* is an exclamation meaning "well! so!" 76. Future of *venire*. 77. Future of *potere*. 78. *Tutti e tre*: "the three of them." Likewise, *tutti e due*: "both."



# Diciannovesima Lezione

## FIRENZE, CULLA DELLE ARTI

### IN UNA PIAZZA DI FIRENZE

**CARLO:** Mia cara Maria, ti debbo confessare una cosa.

**MARIA:** Grave?

**CARLO:** Molto.

**MARIA:** Ti ascolto. E quando avrai finito confesserò io una cosa a te.

**CARLO:** Ho appetito. Anzi, ho una fame da lupo.

**MARIA:** Ah, ah, ah!

**CARLO:** Che cosa c'è da ridere?

**MARIA:** Rido perchè questo è proprio quello che<sup>1</sup> volevo confessarti. Ho fame anch'io.

**CARLO:** Allora è inutile aspettare oltre.<sup>2</sup> Vedo un ristorante da quel lato della piazza. Andiamoci.<sup>3</sup>

**MARIA:** Andiamoci.

### AL RISTORANTE

**CAMERIERE:** Buon giorno, signori. Una tavola per due?

**CARLO:** Sì.

**CAMERIERE:** Si vogliono accomodare qui?

**CARLO:** Sì, va bene qui. (*Carlo e Maria siedono ad una tavola.*)

**CAMERIERE:** Vino bianco o rosso?

**CARLO:** Riguardo al vino ci rimettiamo a lei.<sup>4</sup> Mi piace un

**FOOTNOTES:** 1. *Proprio quello che:* "exactly what." 2. *Aspettare oltre:* "to wait any longer." 3. *The ci of andiamoci* means "there." 4. *Ci rimettiamo a lei:* "We leave it to you." 5. "Leave it to me!" 6. *Secondo quello che . . . :* "According to what . . ." 7. *Lista delle vivande:* "Menu." *Lit.,* list of the victuals.

buon bicchiere di vino, ma debbo ammettere che non sono un buon conoscitore.

**CAMERIERE:** Allora lascino fare a me<sup>8</sup> che sarò ben lieto di consigliarli secondo quello che<sup>9</sup> desiderano mangiare. Ecco la lista delle vivande.<sup>7</sup> Ritournerò fra<sup>8</sup> pochi minuti.

*(Un signore che è seduto alla tavola vicina si alza e si avvicina. Si chiama Gianni Pascolo.)*

**PASCOLO:** Chiedo loro scusa di<sup>9</sup> questa intrusione.

**CARLO:** Ma si figuril!<sup>10</sup> Non ci disturba affatto.

**PASCOLO:** Non ho potuto fare a meno<sup>11</sup> di avvicinarmi sentendoli parlare. Loro sono indubbiamente americani.

**CARLO:** Sì, signore.

**PASCOLO:** Non l'ho capito dal parlare perchè lei parla perfettamente l'italiano; ma lei e la sua signora hanno quel certo non so che<sup>12</sup> che distingue gli americani dagli altri forestieri.

**MARIA:** Lei è molto gentile, signore.

**PASCOLO:** Grazie, signora. Dunque, stavo per dire<sup>13</sup> che non appena mi sono convinto che sono americani mi ha invaso una certa nostalgia.

**CARLO:** Come mai?<sup>14</sup>

**PASCOLO:** Ecco, mi spiego. Ma prima permettano che mi presenti: Gianni Pascolo, ingegnere.

**CARLO:** Tanto piacere di conoscerla. Io sono Carlo Smith, e questa è mia moglie.

**PASCOLO:** Fortunatissimo.

**MARIA:** Piacere.

**CARLO:** Adesso che ci conosciamo vuole avere la bontà di sedersi alla nostra tavola?

**PASCOLO:** Lo faccio con piacere. Grazie infinite.



8. *Fra*: "within." 9. I apologize for . . ." 10. See Note 1, Lesson 18. 11. "I couldn't help . . ." 12. "That certain something." 13. "I was about to say . . ." 14. How come?" 15. *Minestrone* is a very thick soup prepared with an assortment of vegetables (celery, onion, cabbage, etc.) and legumes (beans, lentils, etc.)

MARIA: Poco fa lei parlava di nostalgia. È evidente che è stato in America.

PASCOLO: Proprio così, cara signora. Due anni, due bellissimi anni in cui ebbi occasione di conoscere, di ammirare e anche di amare la loro bella patria.

CAMERIERE: Hanno deciso, signori?

CARLO: Sì. Per incominciare ci porti un po' d'antipasto: prosciutto, olive, sedani, eccetera.

CAMERIERE: Benissimo. E poi? Vogliono del brodo di pollo, del minestrone?<sup>15</sup>

CARLO: No. Poi porti costolette d'agnello con contorno<sup>16</sup> di spinaci per la signora, una bistecca con purè di patate per me, e quello che desidera l'ingegnere Pascolo.

CAMERIERE: Oh, quanto all'ingegnere io so benissimo che cosa vuole senza che me lo dica. Oggi è giovedì, quindi un quarto di pollo arrosto. Vero, ingegnere?

PASCOLO: Vero. Ormai questo caro cameriere conosce le mie abitudini. E, senti, Gianni, porta anche una bottiglia di vecchio Chianti.

MARIA: A proposito di vino,<sup>17</sup> ho notato che ogni volta che entriamo in un ristorante la prima cosa che il cameriere ci domanda è se vogliamo vino bianco o rosso.

PASCOLO: Già. E glielo spiego. Quasi tutti gli italiani bevono il vino durante i pasti, anche se molto modesti, consistenti in una minestra,<sup>18</sup> pane e formaggio. L'italiano deve avere il suo bicchiere di vino. È un'abitudine. Si dice che il buon vino faccia venire buoni pensieri. Le debbo<sup>19</sup> dire, però, che beviamo con moderazione.

CARLO: Il buon vino fa venire buoni pensieri. Mi piace questa espressione. Già, perchè, anche volendo, gli italiani non potrebbero bere del cattivo vino, perchè in Italia è tutto buono.

PASCOLO: Come trovano<sup>20</sup> la nostra Firenze?

MARIA: Divinamente bella. È innegabile che dal punto di

---

and is flavorfully seasoned. 16. "Side dish." 17. *A proposito di vino*: "talking of wine." 18. Same as *minestrone*, but with fewer ingredients. 19. *Debbo* or *devo*, present of irregular verb *dovere*. 20. *Come trovano*: "How do you like . . ." 21. *Non per nulla*: "That's why." *Lit.*, Not for nothing. 22. "The cradle of

vista culturale Firenze è la più importante città, non solo d'Italia, ma del mondo.

CARLO: Non per nulla<sup>21</sup> Firenze è chiamata "la culla delle arti."<sup>22</sup> Chi non sa che per oltre tre secoli questà città fu il centro della cultura mondiale? Ci sono tanti tesori d'arte che l'intera città può considerarsi un vero museo.

PASCOLO: Debbo dirle con orgoglio che ha ragione. Nessuna città ha dato al mondo tanti geni quanti ne<sup>23</sup> ha dati Firenze. E se non tutti questi grandi uomini nacquero<sup>24</sup> qui, quasi tutti vi<sup>25</sup> studiarono e vi lavorarono: Dante, Petrarca, Boccaccio, Machiavelli, Leonardo da Vinci, Michelangelo, Della Robbia, Brunelleschi e tanti, tanti altri ancora. Fu proprio qui che, dopo il periodo di decadenza intellettuale del Medio Evo, ebbe origine il Rinascimento, il luminoso periodo che va dal quindicesimo al sedicesimo secolo, epoca che diede al mondo un nuovo, luminoso indirizzo nel campo delle arti, delle scienze, della letteratura e della politica. E anche tutt'oggi,<sup>26</sup> Firenze continua a essere il centro delle industrie artistiche.

CARLO: Ha ragione, caro ingegnere. Firenze ci ha affascinati completamente.

MARIA: Abbiamo trascorse<sup>27</sup> delle ore indimenticabili ammirando estasiati i tesori artistici della Galleria degli Uffizi, del Palazzo Pitti, e di quel capolavoro d'architettura medioevale ch'è il Palazzo Vecchio. Tutto è arte a Firenze. Il Campanile di Giotto è indescrivibilmente bello.

PASCOLO: Immagino che hanno già visitato il Ponte Vecchio<sup>28</sup> con le sue piccole, ma graziose botteghe.

MARIA: Ah, sì. Ed abbiamo comprato lì, per ricordo, diversi oggetti d'argento ed in cuoio sbalzato.<sup>29</sup> Dei ricordi bellissimi. Adesso vorrei comprare dei buoni libri. So bene che posso comprarli dovunque, ma preferisco comprarli qui, a Firenze. Quali libri mi consiglia di comprare, ingegnere?

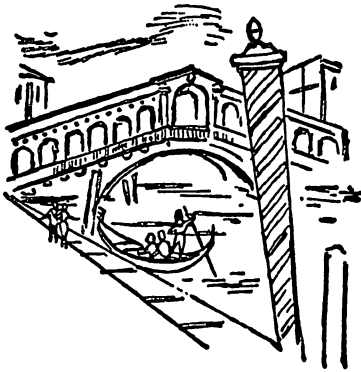
PASCOLO: Immagino che non vorrà<sup>30</sup> comprarne troppi, dato che devono viaggiare. Ma siccome lei è amante della letteratura,

---

arts." 23. Omit this *ne* (of them) in translation. 24. Plural of *nacque*, which is past definite of *nascere*. 25. *Vi*: "here." 26. *Tutt'oggi*: "nowadays." 27. Past participle of *trascorrere*: "to spend (time)." 28. The Ponte Vecchio (Old Bridge), which crosses the Arno River, is lined with quaint little shops where for

le consiglio di acquistare prima di tutto la "Divina Commedia" di Dante Alighieri.

MARIA: Ho già una copia della "Divina Commedia," ma in formato piccolo. Adesso vorrei<sup>31</sup> comprarne una in formato grande, quella con le illustrazioni di Botticelli. Per me la "Divina Commedia" è l'opera più bella e più completa che esista. Pochi momenti fa si parlava del Ponte Vecchio. Se non erro,<sup>32</sup> fu proprio su questo ponte che Dante un giorno incontrò Beatrice e se ne innamorò. Dante non sposò Beatrice, ma ella rimase per sempre la donna ideale del suo cuore e della sua mente, e divenne l'ispirazione della "Divina Commedia."



PASCOLO: E a lei dedicò anche una bella poesia! Ricorda come comincia?

"Tanto gentile e tanto onesta pare  
La donna mia quand'ella altrui saluta."

Poi le consiglio di comprare "Il Principe," di Machiavelli, in cui l'autore insegna come un principe deve governare, dipinge con esattezza gli eventi dei suoi tempi, e lancia la prima voce invocante la liberazione dell'Italia dal giogo straniero. Un altro libro che non dovrebbe mancare<sup>33</sup> nella sua biblioteca è il bellissimo romanzo di Manzoni, "I Promessi Sposi." Anche Manzoni, in questo libro, accende nel cuore degli italiani il fervente desiderio di vedere l'Italia libera e unita. Ancora un libro che le consiglio è il "Decamerone," del Boccaccio. In questa divertente raccolta di cento novelle il più grande prosatore di quell'epoca dipinge meravigliosamente gli usi e costumi dei suoi tempi.

CARLO: La prima cosa che faremo questo pomeriggio sarà di comprare tutti questi libri.

---

over 500 years goldsmiths and silversmiths have practiced their art. Longfellow, who loved Italy, pays tribute to this picturesque landmark of medieval Florence in his poem, "The Old Bridge." 29. Florence is famous for, among other things,

MARIA: Ho anche diverse altre cosette<sup>34</sup> da comprare: profumo, dentifricio, cipria, eccetera.

PASCOLO: C'è un'ottima profumeria poco distante da qui, in Via degli Speciali. E, perdonino ancora una volta la mia audacia. Posso domandare loro che cosa intendono fare stasera?

MARIA: Ma non parli di audacia. Noi siamo molto felici di questo piacevole incontro, e la consideriamo già un buon amico.

PASCOLO: Molto gentile, signora.

CARLO: Per stasera non abbiamo ancora niente in programma.

PASCOLO: Ottimamente bene!<sup>35</sup> Loro amano la musica?

MARIA: È il mio debole.<sup>36</sup>

PASCOLO: E allora li prego di concedermi l'onore ed il piacere di averli come miei ospiti al Politeama,<sup>37</sup> dove si dà un magnifico concerto di musica sinfonica.

CARLO: Accettato, caro ingegnere. Noi ci tratterremo qui tre o quattro giorni ancora, e spero che almeno una di queste sere sarà lei nostro ospite.

PASCOLO: Con immenso piacere. Grazie infinite.

MARIA: Ingegnere, ci parli, per piacere, di alcune feste per cui Firenze è tanto famosa. La Festa del Grillo, per esempio.

PASCOLO: Ah, sì, È una festa divertentissima che ha luogo alle Cascine,<sup>38</sup> per celebrare il ritorno della primavera. La gioia e l'allegrezza dei fiorentini in questa occasione è grandissima.

MARIA: Sarà un gran divertimento per i fiorentini, ma che c'entra il grillo?<sup>39</sup>

PASCOLO: Per un' antica usanza tutti portano un grillo in una piccolissima gabbia. Si dice che il grillo porti fortuna. Dopo la festa, però, i poveri grilli vengono messi in libertà, e questa è una fortuna per loro.

CARLO: Meno male. Così sono tutti felici.

---

its artistic objects of silver and embossed leather. 30. Future of irregular verb *volere*. Here it indicates probability. 31. Conditional of *volere*. 32. "If I am not mistaken." 33. "Should not be missing." 34. Diminutive of *cose* (things).



**PASCOLO:** Dato che loro americani sono amanti dello sport, sono sicuro che piacerebbe loro di assistere ad un'altra festa bellissima: il Calcio Fiorentino. Due squadre, una rappresentante gli abitanti di "qua dell'Arno," e l'altra gli abitanti di "là dell'Arno," giocano due partite di calcio: una la prima domenica di maggio e la seconda il ventiquattro giugno. Tutti i giocatori portano costumi del Rinascimento. Questa è un'altra occasione in cui i fiorentini si divertono un mondo. Ma questa festa ha anche un significato storico.

**MARIA:** Veramente? Quale?

**PASCOLO:** Nel 1530, durante una guerra, Firenze era stata assediata e un giorno, mentre i nobili fiorentini giocavano una partita di calcio, i nemici incominciarono a far fuoco<sup>40</sup> sulla città. Ma per dimostrare il loro coraggio i fiorentini continuarono la loro partita.



**CARLO:** Molto interessante. E giacchè si parla di feste, debbo confessare che ce n'è una alla quale, in ispecial modo<sup>41</sup> mi piacerebbe di assistere: la Festa del Palio che ha luogo a Siena.

**PASCOLO:** A, sì, questa è una festa veramente meravigliosa che attrae numerosi turisti. Consiste in una corsa di dieci cavalli, rappresentanti le dieci Contrade della città. La corsa si svolge<sup>42</sup> proprio sulla piazza maggiore della città. C'è una magnifica parata prima della corsa, e tutti quelli che vi partecipano indossano costumi medioevali. L'intera città è decorata di fiori e di bandiere. La gioia e l'entusiasmo degli abitanti, e anche dei forestieri,

35. "Finel" 36. "It's my weakness!" 37. The *Politeama* is a magnificent concert hall in Florence. 38. The *Cascine* is a beautiful park in Florence. 39. *Che c'entra il grillo?*: "What has the cricket got to do with it?" 40. *Far fuoco*: "to

non hanno limiti. Il cavallo vincitore viene portato in chiesa per ricevere la benedizione. Questa festa ha luogo il due luglio e si ripete il sedici agosto.

**CARLO:** Magnifico! Questa è una vera fortuna. Che ne dici, Maria? Possiamo prolungare la nostra visita qui di quattro giorni ancora?

**MARIA:** Perchè no? Abbiamo ancora molte cose da vedere da queste parti. È molto lontana Siena?

**PASCOLO:** Appena un centinaio di chilometri. Ci<sup>43</sup> si arriva in meno di due ore. E, se loro permettono, li accompagnerò io.

**CARLO:** Sa, caro ingegnere, che noi siamo forse i più fortunati turisti che siano mai venuti in Italia?

**PASCOLO:** Come mai?

**CARLO:** Perchè tanto a Napoli come a Roma abbiamo avuto la fortuna di incontrare dei buoni amici che ci hanno fatto da guida.<sup>44</sup> E qui, a Firenze, abbiamo lei. Inutile dirle che accettiamo di tutto cuore<sup>45</sup> la sua gentile offerta.

**PASCOLO:** Li assicuro che sarà un gran piacere per me. E che cosa hanno intenzione di fare durante questi quattro giorni?

**MARIA:** Non mancherà certo il modo di occuparli. Domani vogliamo andare a Fiesole, a visitare quell'incantevole monastero di cui ho tanto sentito parlare.

**PASCOLO:** Non avranno a pentirsene. Fiesole è poco distante. Il monastero è situato in cima ad una collina, e di lassù avranno occasione di ammirare un panorama stupendo.

**CARLO:** Dopodomani andremo a Pisa che, secondo i miei calcoli, possiamo raggiungere in circa due ore.

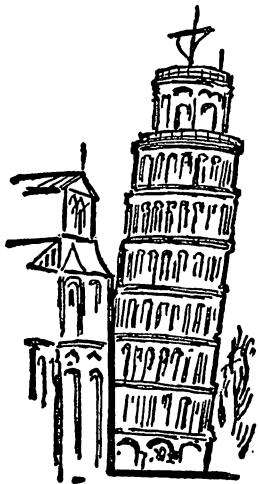
**MARIA:** Sono molto ansiosa di vedere la famosa Torre Pendente. Si può salire sulla Torre?

**PASCOLO:** Certo. E anche dalla Torre potranno ammirare il magnifico panorama degli Appennini e delle verdi colline di

---

fire." 41. See Note 51, Lesson 18. 42. *Si svolge*: "takes place." 43. *Ci*: "there." 44. Idiom: "to act as a guide." 45. *Di tutto cuore*: "wholeheartedly." 46. "Law of falling bodies." 47. *Allora siamo a posto*: "Then everything is

Livorno. Quando saranno sulla Torre si ricorderanno del grande astronomo, fisico e matematico Galileo, che proprio da quella torre dimostrò la legge della gravità dei corpi.<sup>48</sup> Visiteranno anche il Duomo, che è bellissimo. Fu nel santuario del Duomo che Galileo, osservando l'oscillazione della grande lampada, scoprì la legge del pendolo.



CARLO: Galileo fu veramente un grande uomo. A lui dobbiamo, fra tante altre cose, l'invenzione del termometro, del telescopio e del microscopio.

MARIA: Dopo la nostra visita a Pisa sai che cosa mi piacerebbe di fare?

CARLO: Non lo so. Dimmelo, e sarai acccontentata.

MARIA: Mi piacerebbe andare a fare i bagni. Sono sicura che ci deve esser qualche bella spiaggia non molto lontano da Pisa.

PASCOLO: Infatti, cara signora, a solo pochi chilometri da Pisa si trova Viareggio, senza dubbio una delle più belle stazioni balneari del mondo.

CARLO: Allora siamo a posto.<sup>47</sup> Quando saremo a Pisa, invece di far ritorno a Firenze, andremo direttamente a Viareggio e vi rimarremo un paio di giorni. Poi ritorneremo qui per fare la nostra gita a Siena con il gentilissimo signor Pascolo.

MARIA: Benone,<sup>48</sup> mio carol

CARLO: Ed ora, dopo questo delizioso pasto, andiamo a fare quattro passi.<sup>49</sup> E più tardi andremo a visitare la bella chiesa di San Lorenzo dove si trovano le tombe dei Medici, scolpite da Michelangelo. Cameriere, il conto per piacere.

PASCOLO: Se permettono . . .

---

O.K." 48. *Benone* is an augmentative of *bene*. 49. "Let's go for a stroll."

**CARLO:** Niente affatto,<sup>50</sup> caro ingegnere, oggi lei è nostro ospite.

**PASCOLO:** Allora ci rivedremo stasera. In quale albergo alloggiavano?

**CARLO:** Al Grand Hotel.

**PASCOLO:** Verrò a prenderli alle otto. A stasera dunque.

**CARLO E MARIA:** Arrivederla. (*Tutti e tre si alzano ed escono.*)

---

50. *Niente affatto!*: "Don't even think of it!"



## Ventesima Lezione

### NELL'ITALIA SETTENTRIONALE

**MARIA:** Mio caro sposo, sarebbe impossibile dirti quanto sono felice. Questo viaggio, che purtroppo volge alla fine,<sup>1</sup> mi ha riempito il cuore di una gioia infinita. Non avrei mai potuto, nemmeno lontanamente, immaginare che l'Italia fosse così bella.

**CARLO:** Sì, il buon Dio è stato molto generoso verso l'Italia. Adesso capisco le parole di Longfellow che disse: "Aprite il mio cuore e vi troverete incisa la parola *Italia*." Portiamo con noi molti ricordi di questo "Bel Paese." Che cosa ti è piaciuto<sup>2</sup> di più, Maria?

**MARIA:** Questa è la domanda più difficile che tu possa<sup>3</sup> farmi. Ti risponderò semplicemente: tutto! Le bellissime città di Napoli, Roma, Firenze, Pisa; e poi Siena. Chi avrebbe mai potuto credere che la Festa del Palio fosse così bella? E poi la città che più di ogni altra volevo vedere: Venezia, la città romantica, la città dei sogni e della poesia, che sorge dalla laguna.

**CARLO:** Hai ragione, mia cara; Venezia è fantasticamente bella. Quel labirinto di canali, quelle graziose gondole<sup>4</sup> che scivolano silenziosamente sull'acqua, destramente spinte<sup>5</sup> dai gondolieri che stanno sempre ritti in piedi<sup>6</sup> dietro ai passeggeri. È incredibile che si sia potuto costruire<sup>7</sup> una città così bella su centinaia di isolette rocciose.

**MARIA:** Chissà per quale bizzarra idea la costruirono proprio in mezzo al mare.<sup>8</sup>

---

FOOTNOTES: 1. *Volge alla fine*: "Is coming to an end." 2. See Note 56, Lesson 17. 3. Subjunctive of *potere*. Subjunctive is required by the relative superlative. 4. At the time of the Venetian Republic the luxury of the gondolas and the rivalry of the owners were so great that the Doge ordered an end to all that, and since

**CARLO:** Non fu per bizzarria, mia cara, ma per assoluta necessità. Devi sapere che dopo la caduta dell'Impero Romano molte persone dovettero rifugiarsi sulle piccole isole della laguna per sfuggire all'oppressione degli invasori, Poco a poco<sup>9</sup> essi costruirono le prime case ed i primi ponti. Fu così che sorse<sup>10</sup> Venezia, che più tardi divenne una potente repubblica navale.

**MARIA:** Bravo il mio Carlo!<sup>11</sup> Par i da uomo dotto:<sup>12</sup> C'è una gran differenza fra le prime case di allora ed i sontuosi palazzi di adesso, specialmente quelli che si trovano ai due lati del Canal Grande.



**CARLO:** Il tutto<sup>13</sup> sembra veramente un sogno incredibile, non è vero?

**MARIA:** Quel che è ancora più meraviglioso è il fatto che anche Venezia ha i suoi inestimabili tesori d'arte. Ricordi la bellissima basilica di San Marco con la sua meravigliosa ed immensa piazza?

**CARLO:** Non potrei immaginare una piazza più bella di quella di San Marco, con quell'imponente Campanile.

**MARIA:** Il Campanile mi è sembrato di costruzione recente.

**CARLO:** Lo è infatti. Nel 1902 avvenne un disastro! Il bellissimo Campanile crollò! Ma gli orgogliosi veneziani, addolorati ma non scoraggiati, lo ricostruirono "com'era, dov'era."<sup>14</sup>

**MARIA:** Non è interessante anche la Torre dell'Orologio con quelle due gigantesche statue dei mori che battono le ore sulla campana coi loro pesanti martelli? E il Lido, non è anche quella una spiaggia magnifica?

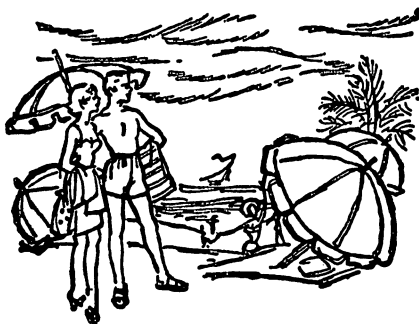
**CARLO:** Veramente stupenda. Tutto è bello a Venezia. Io non

---

that time gondolas have been painted black. 5. "Skillfully driven." 6. *In piedi*: "standing." 7. See Reference Grammar. 8. *In mezzo al mare*: "In the middle of the sea." 9. Idiom: "little by little." 10. *Sorse* is past definite of *sorgere* (to rise). 11. "Good for you, Charles!" 12. *Da uomo dotto*: "like a

credo ci sia al mondo una città che possa paragonarsi<sup>15</sup> a Venezia, giustamente chiamata "La Regina dell'Adriatico."

MARIA: È interessante il fatto che a Venezia non ci sono nè automobili, nè biciclette. La gondola è l'unico mezzo<sup>16</sup> di trasporto.



CARLO: Hai notato che in alcune parti d'Italia si fa ancora grande uso della bicicletta? Dico "in alcune parti" perchè la bicicletta in molti luoghi è già stata sostituita da migliaia e migliaia di piccole motociclette. Ma è pittoresco delle volte vedere centinaia e centinaia di biciclette per<sup>17</sup> le strade.

MARIA: È il mezzo di trasporto più economico, a meno che<sup>18</sup> non si voglia<sup>19</sup> andare a piedi, che è un mezzo ancora più economico, ma più sicuro.

CARLO: E più lento. E a Milano, che cosa ti è piaciuto di più?

MARIA: Anche Milano è una città molto interessante.

CARLO: Dal punto di vista economico e commerciale Milano è senza dubbio la più importante città d'Italia. Ciò è principalmente dovuto alla sua favorevole posizione nella pianura del Po,<sup>20</sup> che ne fa<sup>21</sup> un grandissimo centro di comunicazioni.

MARIA: Ma anche a Milano ci sono dei tesori d'arte d'instimabile valore, come "Il Cenacolo"<sup>22</sup> di Leonardo Da Vinci, nella chiesa di Santa Maria delle Grazie. Quando ho visto questo famosissimo affresco il mio cuore ha palpitato d'emozione.<sup>23</sup> Che lavoro stupendo! Il tempo però lo aveva un po' rovinato, ma, grazie alla tecnica moderna, è stato restaurato alla perfezione. Che genio quel Leonardo da Vinci!

CARLO: Per me Leonardo da Vinci fu il genio più grande e più completo dell'umanità. E pensa che egli non fu soltanto un

man of learning." 13. *Il tutto*: "the whole thing." 14. "As it was, where it was." 15. "That could be compared." 16. *L'unico mezzo*: "the only means." 17. *Per* in this case means "in." 18. *A meno che* is an idiom: "unless." 19.

pittore incomparabile. Oltre ad essere un ottimo architetto, scultore, matematico, scrittore, musicista, anatomico, geologo, egli fu un grande scienziato ed un grande inventore. Sai che egli ideò<sup>24</sup> l'aeroplano ed il sottomarino, convinto che un giorno l'uomo avrebbe volato come gli uccelli, ed esplorato le profondità degli oceani come i pesci. È mai vissuto al mondo un uomo più grande?

MARIA: Una cosa mi ha fatto dispiacere.<sup>25</sup>

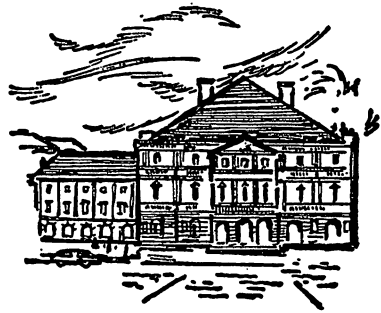
CARLO: Veramente? Che cosa?

MARIA: Il fatto che a Milano non siamo potuti andare alla Scala.

CARLO: Hai ragione, cara. Purtroppo, durante la stagione estiva il teatro è chiuso. È un vero peccato<sup>26</sup> che tu non lo abbia visto. Io ebbi<sup>27</sup> il piacere di assistere a diverse rappresentazioni l'ultima volta che fui<sup>28</sup> in Italia. La Scala come sai, è il più famoso teatro d'opera del mondo. Qualsiasi artista che ottiene un successo<sup>29</sup> alla Scala vede la gloria spalancargli tutte le porte.

MARIA: Non fu in questo teatro che Verdi ottenne il suo primo successo?

CARLO: Sì, egli incominciò la sua illustre carriera alla Scala, quando, all'età di ventisei anni, presentò la sua prima opera, "l'Uberto." Verdi fu un compositore prolifico. Immagina—ventotto opere, fra le quali "Aida," "Rigoletto," "La Forza del Destino," "Il Trovatore," "La Traviata," "Otello," una più bella dell'altra. E sai quando compose "Falstaff," la sua ultima opera ed una delle più belle? All'età di ottantaquattro anni!



MARIA: Straordinario! Mi piace moltissimo la musica di Verdi perchè è bella, melodiosa, commovente, facile a ricordarsi. Chi,

---

Subjunctive of *volere*. 20. *Pianura del Po*: "the plain of the Po." The Po Valley, the most fertile part of Italy, is called the "breadbasket of Italy." 21. *Ne fa*: "makes it (of it)." 22. "The Last Supper." 23. "With emotion." 24. "Con-



avendo sentito un'opera di Verdi, non esce dal teatro canterellando un'aria di quell'opera?

CARLO: E dire che al giovane Verdi fu rifiutata una borsa di studio<sup>30</sup> al Conservatorio di Milano perchè i professori non credevano che avesse abbastanza talento per la musica! E il Duomo di Milano, che impressione ti ha fatta?

MARIA: Caro mio, l'impressione non può essere che una: divinamente bello! Quello stile gotico così festoso e gaio, tutte quelle guglie e quelle statue danno al Duomo l'apparenza di un gigantesco e bellissimo ricamo. Tutte quelle magnifiche vetrate istoriate<sup>31</sup> sono sicuramente fra le più belle del mondo. Dopo avere viste tante chiese, una più bella dell'altra, si penserebbe che nessun'altra chiesa potrebbe farti impressione.<sup>32</sup> Eppure, vedi il Duomo e non puoi fare a meno<sup>33</sup> di domandarti: ma non finiscono mai le meraviglie di questa incantevole Italia?

CARLO: Anche a Genova, l'ultima grande città che visiteremo, avremo molto da vedere. Il treno arriverà fra una diecina di minuti.

MARIA: Sai, Carlo, che mi piacciono molto i treni italiani? Sono alquanto differenti dai nostri. Ogni carrozza ha diversi scompartimenti separati, ognuno di otto posti. E per andare da uno scompartimento all'altro c'è quel piccolo corridoio da un lato della carrozza.

CARLO: Sai chi troveremo alla stazione? Il mio carissimo amico, il dottor Barletta.

MARIA: Lo sa che arriviamo con questo treno?

CARLO: Certo, gli ho telegrafato!

MARIA: Ah, sì; ricordo. Siete buoni amici?

CARLO: È uno dei miei amici più cari. Siamo come fratelli.

#### IN CASA DEL DOTTOR BARLETTA A GENOVA

CARLO: Carissimo Totò, noi apprezziamo la tua gentile ospitalità, ma volerci in casa tua per tutto il tempo che saremo qui mi pare approfittare un po' troppo da parte nostra. Perchè non ci hai prenotata una camera all'albergo?

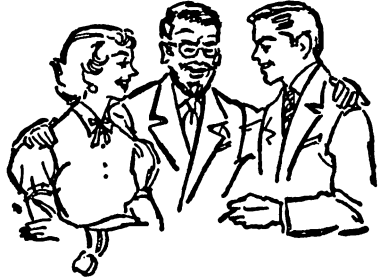
---

ceived the idea of." 25. "Has displeased me." 26. "It's really too bad!" 27. *Ebbi* is past definite of *avere*. 28. *Fui* is past definite of *essere*. 29. "Who

TOTÒ: Ma che albergo? Scherzi? La mia casa è casa tua. Come vedi abbiamo abbastanza spazio qui. Avete la vostra camera e nessuno vi disturberà. Dopo tanti anni di attesa vorresti negarmi il piacere di averti con me? E poi sai bene che dobbiamo continuare le nostre battaglie.

MARIA: Oh, Dio, delle battaglie?

TOTÒ: Sì, dobbiamo continuare le nostre partite a scacchi.<sup>34</sup> Non so se tuo marito te lo ha detto, ma questo era il nostro passatempo prediletto quando egli era qui. E debbo confessare che allora il tuo maritino<sup>35</sup> ebbe quasi sempre la fortuna dalla sua parte.<sup>36</sup> Adesso voglio la rivincita e spero che il risultato sia alquanto diverso.



OLGA (*moglie di Totò*): Ma tu scherzi. Credi che Carlo abbia fatto questo viaggio per venire a sprecare il suo tempo a giocare a scacchi<sup>37</sup> con te?

CARLO: Cara Olga, il tempo impiegato a fare una partita a scacchi non è mai sprecato. E poi, se tuo marito vuole ancora qualche lezione, io non posso negargli questo piacere.

TOTÒ: Vedremo, vedremo. Questa volta la vittoria mi arriдерà.<sup>38</sup> Dunque, parliamo adesso delle altre cose che faremo. Dico faremo perchè fortunatamente ho potuto ottenere la mia vacanza adesso, e quindi potremo passare quasi tutto il tempo insieme.

MARIA: Prima di tutto voglio vedere tutto ciò che c'è d'interessante a Genova, questa orgogliosa città dove nacque il grande e intrepido navigatore Cristoforo Colombo. Esiste ancora la sua casa?

TOTÒ: La casa propriamente no.<sup>39</sup> Ma si possono ancora vedere i ruderi della sua umile casetta,<sup>40</sup> che i genovesi considerano come una preziosa reliquia. Tanti e tanti turisti accorrono e fanno sempre delle fotografie.<sup>41</sup>

is successful." 30. *Una borsa di studio*: "a scholarship." 31. "Stained-glass windows." 32. "Could impress you." 33. *Non puoi fare a meno*: "You can't

MARIA: Vengono molti turisti a Genova?

OLGA: Sì, da ogni parte del mondo.

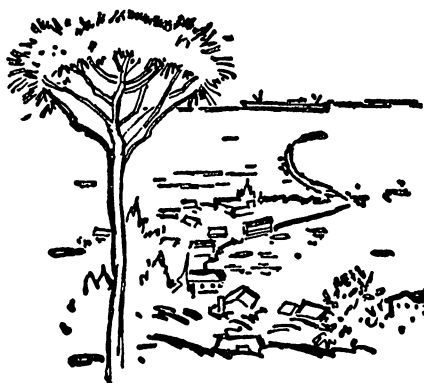
TOTÒ: Prima di tutto dovete sapere che Genova è il porto più importante non solo d'Italia, ma di tutto il Mediterraneo.

CARLO: I francesi probabilmente non sono d'accordo<sup>42</sup> con te su questo punto.

TOTÒ: Lo so, ma non importa. La più grande attrazione è forse il clima, che anche d'inverno è molto mite e piacevole. Sulla costa ligure si può dire che la primavera sia eterna.

MARIA: La costa ligure è famosa per le sue numerose e bellissime spiagge, non è vero?

OLGA: E andremo a visitarne parecchie: Santa Margherita, Rapallo, Chiavari e Portofino fra quelle che si trovano sulla Riviera di Levante;<sup>43</sup> Pegli, Arenzano e Alassio sulla Riviera di Ponente.<sup>44</sup> Naturalmente parlo di quelle più vicine a Genova. Ovunque vedrete dei panorami gloriosi, delle scene di incomparabile bellezza.



CARLO: So che la vegetazione sulla costa ligure è molto rigogliosa: dei lussureggianti giardini di aranci, di limoni e di olivi, e dei bellissimi fiori dappertutto. Ovunque ci sono palme in abbondanza, anche nelle vie di Genova che è molto più a nord di New York.

MARIA: Genova mi ha fatto una bella impressione. Ci sono molti palazzi veramente stupendi.

TOTÒ: Sono prova perenne della sua antica gloria e ricchezza. Avete notato il bel palazzo del Banco di San Giorgio? È quasi tutto di marmo. Come sapete, una volta Genova era una potente

---

help." 34. "Games of chess." 35. *Maritino* is diminutive of *marito*. 36. *Dalla sua parte*: "on his side." 37. An idiom: "to play chess." 38. "Victory will smile upon me." 39. *Propriamente no*: "Not exactly." 40. *Casetta*: "little

repubblica navale, ma in continua lotta contro altri stati d'Italia, specialmente Pisa e Venezia.

**CARLO:** Peccato<sup>45</sup> che quegli stati erano sempre in lotta fra di loro.<sup>46</sup> Se invece fossero stati uniti, la storia d'Italia probabilmente sarebbe stata molto diversa e non si sarebbero combattute le sanguinose guerre dell'Indipendenza.

**MARIA:** Non fu da questa città che il grande liberatore Giuseppe Garibaldi iniziò la spedizione dei Mille?<sup>47</sup>

**OLGA:** Sì, dalla piccola rada di Quarto, qui vicino.

**TOTO:** Sapete che proprio a Genova nacque Giuseppe Mazzini, che fu l'anima del Risorgimento?<sup>48</sup>



**CARLO:** Sono stato sempre un ammiratore di questo grande pensatore e apostolo della libertà. Dobbiamo andare a Staglieno, dove si trova la sua tomba.

**MARIA:** Sì, dobbiamo vedere Staglieno. Ho sempre sentito dire<sup>49</sup> che è il più bel cimitero del mondo.

**TOTO:** Staglieno, miei cari, non è soltanto un cimitero, ma un immenso museo dove si trovano delle statue, delle cappelle ed altri lavori d'arte veramente meravigliosi.

**CARLO:** Allora uno di questi giorni vi andremo per ammirare questi altri capolavori del genio italiano.

**MARIA:** E così, ben presto, avrò fine<sup>50</sup> come un sogno, questo nostro incantevole viaggio. Quanti bei ricordi porteremo con noi. Ovunque abbiamo trovato bellezza, arte e generosa ospitalità. Ricorderò sempre gli italiani; questo popolo buono, generoso, ospitale, laborioso ed intelligente. Mi sento commossa al pensiero che dobbiamo presto dire addio a questa bella Italia.

house." Diminutive of *casa*. 41. *Fare una fotografia*: "to take a picture."  
 42. *Non sono d'accordo*: "Do not agree." 43. "Of the east." 44. "Of the west."  
 45. "Too bad!" 46. "At war against each other." 47. Garibaldi, with his 1000

TOTÒ: Io ti ringrazio anche a nome dei miei connazionali, per le tue belle espressioni. E vi assicuro che gli americani occupano un posto di preferenza nel cuore di ogni italiano. Questa vostra gita in Italia non sarà l'ultima di certo. Sono sicuro che ritornerete.

MARIA: Questa è la mia speranza.

CARLO: Ed anche la mia. No, questo non sarà il nostro ultimo viaggio in Italia, e quindi, quando vi lasceremo, non vi diremo addio, ma arrivederci!

---

soldiers, called "Red Shirts," left on his expedition to Sicily on May 6, 1860.  
48. *Risorgimento* is the period of Italian unification, roughly from 1815 to 1870.  
49. "I have heard." 50. "Will end."

# Reference Grammar



**ALTHOUGH ALL** the necessary grammatical explanations for each of the Twenty Lessons have been provided in the footnotes of the lessons, a complete **REFERENCE GRAMMAR** is provided here for the convenience of the student. Each part of speech (the Article, Noun, Verb, etc.) is explained thoroughly in all its uses. Therefore, should the student wish complete information about any point of grammar, he can easily find it in this handy **REFERENCE GRAMMAR**.

# Study Plan for Reference Grammar

SINCE THE MATERIAL of the REFERENCE GRAMMAR is not arranged in order of difficulty or frequency of occurrence but is classified by subjects (the Article, Noun, Adjective, etc.), it is suggested that the student refer to and study the following paragraphs along with each lesson, for guidance in the grammatical points covered in each lesson. The easiest way of locating any paragraph (§) is to flip through the pages of the grammar watching for the § number which is in bold face alongside of the page number.

**Lesson I** The definite article §1. Special uses of the definite article §2. The present indicative tense §54. Possessive adjectives §16. Gender of nouns §7. First conjugation §48.

**Lesson II** Comparison of adjectives §17. Imperative mood §64. Personal subject pronouns §19. Second conjugation §49. *-isco* verbs §50. Direct object pronouns §20.

**Lesson III** The indefinite article §4. Position of adjectives §11. Agreement of adjectives §10. Imperfect tense §56. The verb *avere* §47. Demonstrative pronouns §25. The preposition *da* §34. The preposition *di* §35.

**Lesson IV** Reflexive verbs §52. Reflexive pronouns §28. Future tense §60. Present perfect tense §55. Past participle §45. Plural of nouns §8.

**Lesson V** Interrogative adjectives §15. Interrogative pronouns §23. Comparison of equality §17-2. Disjunctive pronouns §22. Verbs with the auxiliary *essere* §51. Irregular adjectives §18.

**Lesson VI** Present participle §45-1. Masculine and feminine nouns ending in *a* §7-4, 5. Classes of adverbs §30.

- Lesson VII** The preposition *a* §33. Present subjunctive tense §65. Omission of definite article §3. Double pronouns §29. Formation of adverbs §31.
- Lesson VIII** The verb *stare* §54-3. Indefinite pronouns §26. Contractions §6.
- Lesson IX** Impersonal expressions §53. The subjunctive with certain expressions §65-1,d. Intransitive verbs §42.
- Lesson X** Verbs that take the preposition *a* §33-5. *Loro* as possessive §16-6,9. The infinitive §43. Plural of adjectives §12.
- Lesson XI** Demonstrative pronouns §25. Future of probability §60-4. Impersonal verbs §53. Indirect object pronouns §21.
- Lesson XII** Comparison of adverbs §32. Relative pronouns §24. Irregular verbs §55-4. Servile verbs §66.
- Lesson XIII** Present conditional tense §62. Irregular comparison of adjectives §17-3,d, 18. Indirect object pronoun §21.
- Lesson XIV** Omission of possessive adjective §16-13. Subordinating conjunctions §39. Indefinite adjectives §14.
- Lesson XV** Agreement of past participle §45-5. Transitive verbs §41. Conjugation of verbs §46.
- Lesson XVI** Interrogative pronouns §23. Diminutive suffixes §9. Repetition of prepositions §37.
- Lesson XVII** Interjections §40. Past definite tense §56.
- Lesson XVIII** Past conditional tense §62. Coordinating conjunctions §38. The *gerund* §44.
- Lesson XIX** Future perfect tense §61. Indefinite pronouns §26. Past anterior tense §57.
- Lesson XX** Pluperfect indicative tense §59. Past conditional tense §63. Review irregular verbs.



# REFERENCE GRAMMAR

## Table of Contents

### THE ARTICLE

- §1 The Definite Article 199  
(1) Agreement of. (2) Translation of "the."
- §2 Special Uses of the Definite Article 200  
(1) With nouns in general use. (2) With countries and other geographical units. (3) With titles. (4) With languages. (5) With proper nouns. (6) With possessive adjectives. (7) With nouns in series. (8) Telling time. (9) With days of the week. (10) With dates. (11) With nouns of quantity. (12) With parts of the body.
- §3 Omission of the Definite Article 201  
(1) Before proper nouns with numerals. (2) Before nouns in apposition. (3) Before possessive adjectives, in direct address. (4) Before singular modified nouns denoting members of family. (5) Before possessives that stand as predicates. (6) After the prepositions *in* and *di*.
- §4 The Indefinite Article 202  
(1) Agreement of. (2) List of. (3) Used with series of nouns.
- §5 Omission of the Indefinite Article 203  
(1) Before *cento* and *mille*. (2) In exclamations. (3) Before nouns in apposition. (4) Before nouns preceded by *da*. (5) Before unmodified predicate nouns.
- §6 The Contractions 203

### THE NOUN

- §7 The Gender of Nouns 204  
(1) Masculine and feminine genders. (2) Nouns ending in *-o*. (3) Nouns ending in *-a*. (4) Masculine and feminine nouns ending in *-a*. (5) Certain feminine nouns. (6) Masculine and feminine nouns ending in *-e*. (7) Feminine nouns ending in *-i*. (8) Nouns ending in *-o*, having form ending *-a*. (9) Masculine and feminine nouns ending in *-e*. (10) Irregular feminine forms. (11) Masculine nouns and feminine counterparts. (12, 13) Nouns of animals. (14) Names of months. (15) Days of the week. (16) Countries.

§8	The Plural of Nouns	207
	(1) Plural of masculine nouns. (2) Feminine nouns ending in <i>-a</i> . (3) Feminine nouns ending in <i>-e</i> . (4) Nouns ending in <i>-i</i> . (5) Nouns that do not change in the plural. (6) Nouns ending in <i>-io</i> . (7) Nouns ending in <i>-ca</i> and <i>-ga</i> . (8) Nouns ending in <i>-cia</i> and <i>-gia</i> . (9) Nouns ending in <i>-co</i> . (10) Nouns ending in <i>-go</i> . (11) Nouns with irregular plurals. (12) Nouns used only in plural. (13) Nouns used mostly in plural. (14) Nouns used only in singular. (15) Nouns changing the singular ending to <i>-a</i> . (16) Nouns with feminine and masculine plurals. (17) Nouns ending with accented vowel. (18) Monosyllabic nouns. (19) Surnames. (20) Nouns ending in consonant. (21) Nouns composed of verb and plural noun.	
§9	Augmentatives and Diminutives	211
	(1) The suffix <i>-one</i> . (2) The suffix <i>-accio</i> . (3) The suffix <i>-otto</i> . (4) The suffix <i>-ino</i> . (5) The suffixes <i>-ello</i> , <i>-etto</i> , <i>-uccio</i> , <i>-olino</i> , <i>-icino</i> .	

### THE ADJECTIVE

§10	The Adjective	212
	(1) Classes of adjectives. (2) Agreement of. (3) Adjectives modifying two or more nouns.	
§11	Position of Adjectives	213
	(1) Normal usage. (2) Demonstrative adjectives. (3) Numerals. (4) Adjectives <i>molto</i> and <i>tutto</i> . (5) Possessive adjectives. (6) Common adjectives. (7) Adjectives with <i>figurative</i> and <i>literal</i> meanings.	
§12	Plural of Adjectives	214
	(1) Agreement with nouns. (2) Ending in <i>-co</i> . (3) <i>Pari</i> .	
§13	Demonstrative Adjectives	214
	(1) <i>Questo</i> . (2) <i>Codesto</i> . (3) <i>Quello</i> . (4) <i>Stesso</i> and <i>medesimo</i> . (5) <i>Tale</i> .	
§14	Indefinite Adjectives	215
	(1) Four forms. (2) Invariable adjectives.	
§15	Interrogative adjectives	215
	(1) <i>Che</i> . (2) <i>Quale</i> . (3) <i>Quanto</i> . (4) <i>Di chi</i> .	
§16	The Possessive Adjectives	216
	(1) "My". (2) "Your" (fam. sing.). (3) "Your" (pol. sing.). (4) "Our". (5) "Your" (fam pl.). (6) "Your" (pol. pl.) and "their". (7) Agreement of. (8) Use of definite article. (9) <i>Loro</i> and definite article. (10) <i>Mamma</i> , <i>babbo</i> and article. (11) <i>Essere</i> and definite article. (12) Direct address. (13) Parts of body and articles of clothing. (14) Indefinite article. (15) Definite article. (16) <i>Altrui</i> . (17) <i>I miei</i> , etc., as nouns. (18) <i>Proprio</i> .	
§17	Comparison of Adjectives	219
	(1) Comparative of equality. (2) Comparative of inequality. (3) Relative superlative. (4) Absolute superlative.	
§18	Some Irregular Adjectives	223
	(1) <i>Bello</i> . (2) <i>Grande</i> . (3) <i>Buono</i> . (4) <i>Santo</i> .	

## THE PRONOUN

§19	Personal Subject Pronouns	224
	(1) As subject. (2) Notes.	
§20	Direct Object Pronouns	225
	(1) List of. (2) Normal position. (3) With compound tense. (4) <i>Lo</i> and <i>la</i> before vowel. (5) <i>Ecco</i> and direct object pronoun. (6) With infinitive. (7) With affirmative imperative.	
§21	Indirect Object Pronouns	226
	(1) List of. (2) Normal usage. (3) Use of <i>loro</i> . (4) With compound tense. (5) With infinitive. (6) With affirmative imperative.	
§22	Disjunctive Pronouns	227
	(1) List of. (2) Normal usage. (3) <i>Lui</i> and <i>lei</i> . (4) Use of <i>stesso</i> . (5) Use of <i>lui</i> , <i>lei</i> , <i>loro</i> . (6) With animals or objects.	
§23	Interrogative Pronouns	228
	(1) <i>Chi?</i> (2) <i>Che cosa?</i> (3) <i>Quale?</i> (4) <i>Di Chi?</i>	
§24	Relative Pronouns	229
	(1) <i>Che</i> . (2) <i>Cui</i> . (3) <i>Cui</i> . (4) <i>Il quale</i> . (5) <i>Cio che</i> . (6) <i>Chi</i> .	
§25	Demonstrative Pronouns	231
	(1) <i>Questo</i> , <i>quello</i> , and <i>codesto</i> . (2) <i>Questi</i> and <i>quegli</i> . (3) <i>Cio</i> .	
§26	Indefinite Pronouns	231
	(1) <i>Nessuno</i> . (2) <i>Nulla</i> or <i>niente</i> . (3) <i>Ognuno</i> . (4) <i>Qualcuno</i> . (5) <i>Chiunque</i> . (6) <i>Tutto</i> , <i>tutti</i> . (7) <i>Alcuni</i> . (8) <i>Altri</i> . (9) <i>Checche</i> .	
§27	The Possessive Pronouns	232
§28	Reflexive Pronouns	232
	(1) List of. (2) Normal usage.	
§29	The Double Pronouns	233
	(1) Direct and indirect object. (2) <i>Mi</i> , <i>ti</i> , <i>ci</i> , <i>vi</i> , and <i>si</i> . (3) <i>Gli</i> and <i>le</i> . (4) Normal usage. (5) Use of <i>loro</i> . (6) Indirect object.	

## THE ADVERB

§30	Classes of Adverbs	234
§31	Formation of Adverbs	236
§32	Comparison of Adverbs	236
	(1) Same as adjectives. (2) Absolute superlative form. (3) Irregular comparatives. (4) Relative superlative. (5) Absolute superlative. (6) Diminutive or augmentative ending.	

## THE PREPOSITION

§33	The Preposition <i>a</i>	237
	(1). Before indirect object nouns. (2) Before disjunctive pronouns. (3) Before cities. (4) Idioms. (5) Before some infinitives. (6) To indicate price. (7) To indicate time. (8) In some adverbial locutions.	

§34	The Preposition <i>da</i>	239
	(1) To indicate movement. (2) To indicate to or at a person's place. (3) To indicate origin. (4) Before an infinitive or a noun. (5) To indicate cause, reason, or agent. (6) To indicate a trait or characteristic. (7) In certain expressions. (8) To indicate place of action. (9) To indicate age or condition. (10) In certain adverbial locutions.	
§35	The Preposition <i>di</i>	241
	(1) To indicate possession. (2) Materials or contents. (3) Authorship. (4) In comparisons. (5) With noun modifying another noun. (6) With some infinitives. (7) Before certain nouns or pronouns. (8) Before infinitives. (9) To indicate time. (10) To indicate manner. (11) With definite article. (12) In certain expressions. (13) In some adverbial locutions.	
§36	Other Common Prepositions	243
	(1) <i>In</i> . (2) <i>Con</i> . (3) <i>Per</i> . (4) <i>Su</i> .	
§37	Repetition of Prepositions	244
§38	Coordinating Conjunctions	244
§39	Subordinating Conjunctions	245

## THE INTERJECTION

§40	Some Common Interjections	245
-----	---------------------------	-----

## THE VERB

§41	The Transitive Verbs	246
§42	The Intransitive Verbs	246
§43	The Infinitive	247
	(1) Infinitive endings. (2) Normal usage. (3) After prepositions. (4) Depending on noun. (5) Depending on adjective. (6) Depending on another verb. (7) <i>Per</i> before an infinitive. (8) Direct, indirect, and reflexive pronouns. (9) Past infinitive. (10) Auxiliary verb.	
§44	The Gerund	249
§45	The Participle	249
	(1) Present participle. (2) Normal usage of present participle. (3) Past participle. (4) Normal usage of past participle. (5) Past participle in absolute construction. (6) Direct, indirect, and reflexive pronouns. (7) Compound tenses.	
§46	The Conjugation of Verbs	251
	(1) Indicative Mood. (2) Conditional Mood. (3) Imperative. (4) Subjunctive Mood. (5) Infinitive. (6) Participle. (7) Gerund.	
§47	Conjugation of the Verbs <i>Essere</i> and <i>Avere</i>	251
§48	The First Conjugation	256

§49	The Second Conjugation	259
§50	The Third Conjugation	261
§51	Verbs with the Auxiliary <i>Essere</i> (1) Verbs taking <i>essere</i> . (2) Reflexive verbs with <i>essere</i> . (3) Passive voice verbs taking <i>essere</i> . (4) Impersonal verbs taking <i>essere</i> . (5) Agreement of past participle. (6) Compound tenses of <i>andare</i> with <i>essere</i> .	264
§52	The Reflexive Verbs (1) Infinitive endings. (2) Conjugation. (3) In compound tenses. (4) With direct objects. (5) Reflexive pronouns. (6) <i>Mi, ti, si, ci, and vi</i> . (7) List of.	266
§53	Impersonal Verbs (1) Definition. (2) Expressions referring to weather. (3) Impersonal expressions taking <i>avere</i> or <i>essere</i> . (4) List of.	268
§54	The Present Indicative Tense (1) Of regular verbs. (2) Normal use. (3) Progressive present. (4) Additional use.	269
§55	The Present Perfect Tense (1) Formation of. (2) Normal usage. (3) With certain expressions. (4) Present perfect of irregular verbs.	269
§56	The Past Definite Tense (1) Past definite of regular verbs. (2) Normal usage.	270
§57	The Past Anterior Tense	271
§58	The Imperfect Indicative Tense (1) Imperfect indicative of regular verbs. (2) Normal usage.	271
§59	The Pluperfect Indicative Tense (1) Formation of. (2) Normal usage.	272
§60	The Future Tense (1) Future of regular verbs. (2) Normal usage. (3) After <i>se, quando, and appena</i> . (4) To express probability. (5) Expression "to be about to". (6) Future of irregular verbs.	272
§61	The Future Perfect Tense (1) Formation of. (2) Use of.	274
§62	The Present Conditional (1) Formation of. (2) Use of conditional. (3) Compared with English. (4) Normal usage.	275
§63	The Past Conditional Tense (1) Formation of. (2) Use of.	275
§64	The Imperative Mood (1) First person singular. (2) Commands. (3) Formation of. (4) Omission of personal pronouns. (5) Negative forms. (6) <i>Noi</i> form. (7) <i>Egli, ella, essi, and esse</i> forms.	276
§65	The Subjunctive Mood (1) Uses of. (2) Subjunctive tenses.	277
§66	Servile Verbs	282
	List of Irregular Verbs	284

## The Article (L'Articolo)

### § 1 The Definite Article

1. The definite article ("the" in English) agrees in gender and number with the noun it modifies.

2. There are seven ways of saying "the" in Italian:

a. *il* is used before singular masculine nouns, except as explained in *c* and *d* below:

*il libro*  
the book

*il padre*  
the father

b. *la* is used before singular feminine nouns, except as explained in *d*:

*la penna*  
the pen

*la classe*  
the classe

c. *lo* is used before singular masculine nouns beginning with *z* or *s-impura* (*s* followed by a consonant):

*lo zio*  
the uncle

*lo studente*  
the student

*lo specchio*  
the mirror

*lo zucchero*  
the sugar

d. *l'* is used before singular nouns (masculine or feminine) beginning with a vowel:

*l'aeroplano*  
the airplane

*l'opera*  
the opera

e. *i* is used before plural masculine nouns, except as explained in *g*:

*i libri*  
the books

*i padri*  
the fathers

f. *le* is used before feminine plural nouns:

*le penne*  
the pens

*le classi*  
the classes

NOTE: Even though you will occasionally see *l'* used before plural feminine nouns beginning with a vowel, good usage

does not permit the dropping of the *e*. Thus it is better to say *le opere* than *l'opere*.

g. *gli* is used before plural masculine nouns beginning with *z*, *s-impura*, or a vowel:

*gli zii*  
the uncles

*gli studenti*  
the students

*gli orologi*  
the watches

NOTE: *gl'* may be used before plural masculine nouns beginning with *i*. Thus you may say *gl'italiani* or *gli italiani*.

## § 2 Special Uses of the Definite Article

1. Before nouns used in an abstract or in a general sense:

*La salute è importante.*  
Health is important.

*Il ferro è utile.*  
Iron is useful.

2. Before names of continents, countries, states, provinces, large islands, rivers:

*l'Italia*  
Italy

*l'Europa*  
Europe

*il Tevere*  
the Tiber

*la Sicilia*  
Sicily

*gli Stati Uniti*  
the United States

3. Before titles or professions followed by a person's name:

*Il presidente Martino*  
President Martino

*Il professore Di Giacomo*  
Professor Di Giacomo

*La signorina Borgese*  
Miss Borgese

NOTE: The definite article, however, is omitted, when addressing a person:

*Si accomodi, signorina Borgese.*  
Make yourself comfortable, Miss Borgese.

More normally, however, proper names are not used with titles in direct address. It is better to say:

*Buon giorno, signor professore.*  
Good morning, Professor.

4. Before names of languages, except when the language is preceded by *parlare*:

*Io studio l'italiano e lo spagnolo.*  
I study Italian and Spanish.

BUT:

*Io parlo italiano.*  
I speak Italian.

5. Before a proper noun when preceded by an adjective:

*la cara Maria*  
dear Mary

6. Before possessive adjectives and possessive pronouns:

*il mio libro*  
my book

*i suoi amici*  
his friends

NOTE: The definite article is omitted when the possessive adjective comes before a singular, unmodified noun denoting a member of the family or a relative:

**mio zio**  
my uncle

**tua madre**  
your [familiar] mother

However, the definite article must be used when the possessive adjective is *loro* (your [polite pl.], their) and before the words *babbo* (dad) and *mamma* (mother).

**il loro padre**  
their father

**la mia mamma**  
my mother

**il mio babbo**  
my dad

7. In a series of nouns the definite article must be used before each noun:

**Ho portato la penna, il quaderno ed i libri.**  
I brought *the* pen, *the* notebook, and *the* books.

8. In telling time:

**È l'una e mezzo.**  
It is half past one.

**Sono le tre e dieci.**  
It is ten after three.

9. Before days of the week, when a regular occurrence is implied:

**Io non vado a scuola il sabato.**  
I don't go to school on Saturday.

10. In dates:

**il quindici maggio**  
May fifteenth

11. Before a noun expressing quantity, to translate the English word *per* or *a*:

**Il caffè costa un dollaro la libbra.**  
Coffee costs one dollar a pound.

12. The definite article is used in place of the expected possessive adjective with parts of the body or personal articles of clothing when there is no ambiguity as to the possessor:

**Io alzo la mano.**  
I raise my hand.

**Egli si toglie il cappello.**  
He takes his hat off.

### § 3 Omission of the Definite Article

The definite article is omitted:

1. Before a proper noun followed by a numeral:

**Vittorio Emanuele Terzo**  
Victor Emanuel the Third

2. Before a noun used in apposition:

**Roma, capitale d'Italia**  
Rome, (the) capital of Italy

3. Before a possessive adjective, in direct address:

**Ragazzo mio, fa attenzione!**  
Pay attention, my boy!



4. When the possessive adjective comes before a singular, unmodified noun denoting a member of the family or a relative [see note of § 2-6 above].

**mio zio**  
my uncle

**mia sorella**  
my sister

5. When the possessive stands alone as the predicate in a sentence:

**Questo danaro è tuo.**  
This money is yours.

6. After the prepositions *in* and *di* before an unmodified name of a feminine country, continent, region, or large island ending in *a*:

**Io andrò in Italia.**  
I shall go to Italy.

**Essi sono in America.**  
They are in America.

**But:**

**Io andrò nell'Italia Settentrionale.**  
I shall go to Northern Italy.

#### § 4 The Indefinite Article

1. The indefinite article (sing. "a, an;" pl. "some," in English) agrees in gender and number with the noun it modifies.

2. There are seven indefinite articles in Italian:

- a. *un* is used before singular masculine nouns, except as explained in *c* below:

**un libro**  
a book

**un padre**  
a father

**un amico**  
a friend (m.)

- b. *una* is used before singular feminine nouns, except as explained in *d* below:

**una penna**  
a pen

**una classe**  
a class

- c. *uno* is used before singular masculine nouns beginning with *z* or *s-impura*:

**uno specchio**  
a mirror

**uno zero**  
a zero

**uno studente**  
a student

- d. *un'* is used only before singular feminine nouns beginning with a vowel:

**un'amica**  
a friend (f.)

**un'opera**  
an opera

- e. *dei* is used before plural masculine nouns, except as explained in *g* below:

**dei libri**  
some books

**dei maestri**  
some teachers

- f. *delle* is used before plural feminine nouns:

**delle penne**  
some pens

**delle classi**  
some classes

**NOTE:** It is better usage to write *delle opere* than *dell'opere*.

*g. degli* is used before plural masculine nouns beginning with *z*, *s-impura*, or a vowel:

*degli zii*  
some uncles

*degli studenti*  
some students

*degli amici*  
some friends

NOTE: The *i* of *degli* may be replaced by an apostrophe when the following noun begins with *i*:

*degli italiani* or *degl'italiani*  
some Italians

3. In a series of nouns the indefinite article must be used before each noun:

Ho comprato *una* penna, *un* quaderno e *dei* libri.  
I brought *a* pen, *a* notebook, and *some* books.

## § 5 Omission of the Indefinite Article

The indefinite article is omitted:

1. Before the words *cento* and *mille*:

Io ho guadagnato *cento* dollari.  
I earned *one hundred* dollars.

Io ho letto più di *mille* libri.  
I have read more than *one thousand* books.

2. In exclamations, with nouns preceded by *che* and *quale*:

Che bel fiore!  
What a beautiful flower!

Quale disgrazia è questa!  
What a misfortune this is!

3. Before a noun used in apposition:

Questo è Carlo, amico di mio figlio.  
This is Charles, a friend of my son.

4. Before a noun preceded by *da*, when *da* means "like, in the manner of":

Egli ha parlato *da* uomo.  
He spoke like a man.

5. Before an unmodified predicate noun:

Egli è falegname.  
He is a carpenter.

But:

Egli è *un* buon falegname.  
He is *a* good carpenter.

## § 6 The Contractions

A contraction results when a preposition unites with the definite article.

1. The following five prepositions contract with each one of the definite articles: *a* (to, at), *da* (from, at, by), *in* (in, into), *di* (of), *su* (on, upon) as shown in the following table:

TABLE OF CONTRACTIONS OF PREPOSITIONS WITH  
DEFINITE ARTICLES

	<i>il</i>	<i>lo</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>l'</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>gli</i>	<i>le</i>
<i>a</i>	al	allo	alla	all'	ai	agli	alle
<i>da</i>	dal	dallo	dalla	dall'	dai	dagli	dalle
<i>di</i>	del	dello	della	dell'	dei	degli	delle
<i>in</i>	nel	nello	nella	nell'	nei	negli	nelle
<i>su</i>	sul	sullo	sulla	sull'	sui	sugli	sulle

2. The preposition *con* contracts only with *il* and *i* and the results are *col* and *coi*:

**Io cammino *col* ragazzo.**  
I walk with the boy.

**Io cammino *coi* ragazzi.**  
I walk with the boys.

BUT:

**I scrivo *con la* penna.**  
I write *with the* pen.

Contractions of *con* with *la* (*colla*), *gli* (*cogli*), *lo* (*collo*), *l'* (*coll'*), *le* (*colle*) are now considered obsolete.

3. The preposition *per* no longer contracts with the definite articles. The contractions *pel*, *pei*, *pella*, etc. are considered obsolete. They are however used in poetry.

4. The contractions are used in exactly the same manner as the definite articles:

***dello* zio, *agli* studenti, *nello* specchio, *dall'*America, etc.**

5. The contractions *dal*, *dalla*, *dalla*, etc., besides meaning "from the," also mean "at" or "to someone's home, place, office," etc.

**Iersera sono andato *dalla* zia.**  
Last night I went *to* aunt's.

6. The contractions *del*, *della*, *dello*, etc., besides meaning "of the," also mean "some," and are, therefore, considered partitive articles:

**Ella compra *della* carne.**  
She buys *some* meat.

**Egli ha portato *dei* fiori.**  
He brought *some* flowers.

The same contractions also denote possession:

**L'amico *del* ragazzo è partito.**  
The boy's friend has left.

**Ecco i libri *degli* studenti.**  
Here are the students' books.

## The Noun (Il Nome)

### § 7 The Gender of Nouns

1. All nouns in Italian are either masculine or feminine. There is no neuter gender.
2. Practically all nouns ending in *-o* are masculine. There are very

few exceptions to this rule; the following two common words are feminine even though they end in *o*:

**la mano**  
the hand

**la radio**  
the radio

3. The great majority of nouns ending in *-a* are feminine. The following common nouns are masculine, even though they end in *-a*:

**il poeta**  
the poet

**il dramma**  
the drama

**il duca**  
the duke

**il poema**  
the poem

**il vaglia**  
the money order

**il pianeta**  
the planet

**il tema**  
the theme

**il sistema**  
the system

**il Papa**  
the Pope

**il problema**  
the problem

**il panorama**  
the panorama

**il cinema**  
the motion picture

**il diploma**  
the diploma

**il profeta**  
the prophet

theater

4. The following is a partial list of nouns ending in *-a* which are masculine when they refer to a man and feminine when they refer to a woman:

**il or la pianista**  
the pianist

**il or la dentista**  
the dentist

**l'artista**  
the artist

**il or la musicista**  
the musician

**l'atleta**  
the athlete

**l'organista**  
the organist

**il or la farmacista**  
the pharmacist

**il or la suicida**  
the suicide (the person)

**il or la giornalista**  
the journalist

**il or la socialista**  
the socialist

5. Some nouns are feminine, even though they usually refer to a man:

**la spia**  
the spy

**la guardia**  
the guard

**la guida**  
the guide

6. Many Italian nouns end in *-e*. Some of them are masculine, and some are feminine:

**il cane**  
the dog

**il ponte**  
the bridge

**la carne**  
the meat

**il pane**  
the bread

**la classe**  
the class

**la lite**  
the quarrel

7. There are a few nouns in Italian which end in *-i* in the singular. Almost all are feminine:

**la metropoli**  
the metropolis

**la parentesi**  
the parenthesis

**la paralisi**  
the paralysis

**la tubercolosi**  
tuberculosis

**l'eclissi**  
the eclipse

**l'analisi**  
the analysis

**la crisi**  
the crisis

**l'ipotesi**  
the hypothesis

## EXCEPTION:

**il brindisi**  
the toast

8. Some words ending in *-o* also have a form ending in *-a*, but the two words have different meanings. Here is a partial list:

**il collo**  
the neck

**la colla**  
the glue

**il mento**  
the chin

**la menta**  
the mint

**il colpo**  
the blow

**la colpa**  
the fault

**il modo**  
the manner

**la moda**  
the fashion

**il costo**  
the cost

**la costa**  
the coast

**il pianto**  
weeping

**la pianta**  
the plant

**il filo**  
the thread

**la fila**  
the row

**il punto**  
the dot

**la punta**  
the point

**il foglio**  
the sheet

**la foglia**  
the leaf

**il porto**  
the port

**la porta**  
the door

**il fosso**  
the ditch

**la fossa**  
the grave

**lo scalo**  
the dock

**la scala**  
the stairs

**il manico**  
the handle

**la manica**  
the sleeve

9. Some words end in *-e* in both the masculine and feminine, but have different meanings:

**il fine**  
the aim

**la fine**  
the end

**il fronte**  
the front

**la fronte**  
the forehead

10. Several masculine nouns have irregular feminine forms. Here is a partial list:

## MASCULINE

## FEMININE

**il dottore**  
the doctor

**la dottoressa**

**il poeta**  
the poet

**la poetessa**

**il principe**  
the prince

**la principessa**

**il duca**  
the duke

**la duchessa**

**il barone**  
the baron

**la baronessa**

**il conte**  
the count

**la contessa**

**lo studente**  
the student

**la studentessa**

## MASCULINE

## FEMININE

**il leone**  
the lion

**la leonessa**

**l'attore**  
the actor

**l'attrice**

**lo scrittore**  
the writer

**la scrittrice**

**il pittore**  
the painter

**la pittrice**

**il re**  
the king

**la regina**

**il gallo**  
the rooster

**la gallina**

**l'eroe**  
the hero

**l'eroina**

11. Some masculine nouns have an entirely different word for the feminine counterpart. Here is a list of the most common ones:

**il marito**  
the husband

**la moglie**  
the wife

<b>il padre</b> the father	<b>la madre</b> the mother
<b>il genero</b> the son-in-law	<b>la nuora</b> the daughter-in-law
<b>l'uomo</b> the man	<b>la donna</b> the woman
<b>il maschio</b> the male	<b>la femmina</b> the female
<b>il babbo</b> dad	<b>la mamma</b> mother
<b>il bue</b> bull	<b>la vacca</b> the cow

12. There are some nouns of animals which have no feminine form:

<b>il topo</b> the rat	<b>il coniglio</b> the rabbit
---------------------------	----------------------------------

13. There are some nouns of animals which have no masculine form:

<b>la volpe</b> the fox	<b>la balena</b> the whale
<b>la scimmia</b> the monkey	<b>la rondine</b> the swallow

14. The names of the months are masculine in Italian.

15. The names of the days of the week, except *domenica* (Sunday), are masculine in Italian.

16. The names of most countries are feminine:

<b>l'Italia</b> Italy	<b>la Grecia</b> Greece	<b>l'Olanda</b> Holland
<b>l'Inghilterra</b> England	<b>la Francia</b> France	<b>la Russia</b> Russia
<b>la Germania</b> Germany	<b>la Spagna</b> Spain	

However, there are several that are masculine. Here is a partial list:

<b>il Canada</b> Canada	<b>il Cile</b> Chile	<b>il Brasile</b> Brazil
<b>il Messico</b> Mexico	<b>il Giappone</b> Japan	<b>l'Egitto</b> Egypt
<b>il Belgio</b> Belgium	<b>il Perù</b> Peru	<b>gli Stati Uniti</b> the United States

## § 8 The Plural of Nouns

1. Masculine nouns, regardless of how they end in the singular, form their plural by changing the singular ending to *i*:

<b>il libro</b> the book	<b>il pittore</b> the painter	<b>il poeta</b> the poet
<b>i libri</b>	<b>i pittori</b>	<b>i poeti</b>

EXCEPTIONS:

<b>il uaglia</b> the money order	<b>i uaglia</b>	<b>il cinema</b> the motion picture theater	<b>i cinema</b>
-------------------------------------	-----------------	--	-----------------

2. Feminine nouns ending in *-a* change to *-e* in the plural:

<b>la porta</b> the door	<b>la studentessa</b> the student
<b>le porte</b>	<b>le studentesse</b>

3. Feminine nouns ending in *-e* change to *-i* in the plural:

<b>la classe</b> the class	<b>la frase</b> the phrase
<b>le classi</b>	<b>le frasi</b>

4. Nouns ending in *-i* do not change in the plural:

<b>la metropoli</b> the metropolis	<b>il brindisi</b> the toast
<b>le metropoli</b>	<b>i brindisi</b>

## 5. The following two words do not change in the plural:

<b>la specie</b> the species	<b>la serie</b> the series
<b>le specie</b>	<b>le serie</b>

6. Nouns ending in *-io* drop the *o* when the *i* is unstressed:

<b>il bacio</b> the kiss	<b>il figlio</b> the son
<b>i baci</b>	<b>i figli</b>

However, when the *i* is stressed, the *o* changes to *i*:

<b>lo zio</b> the uncle	<b>il mormorio</b> the murmur
<b>gli zii</b>	<b>i mormorii</b>

7. Nouns ending in *-ca* and *-ga*, end in *-che* and *-ghe* in the plural if they are feminine, and in *-chi* and *-ghi* if they are masculine:

<b>la bocca</b> the mouth	<b>il duca</b> the duke
<b>le bocche</b>	<b>i duchi</b>
<b>la riga</b> the ruler	<b>il collega</b> the colleague
<b>le righe</b>	<b>i colleghi</b>

8. Nouns ending in *-cia* and *-gia* follow the general rule when the *i* is stressed:

<b>la farmacia</b> the pharmacy	<b>la bugia</b> the lie
<b>le farmacie</b>	<b>le bugie</b>

However, when the *i* is not stressed, they usually end in *-ce* and *-ge*:

<b>la provincia</b> the province	<b>l'arancia</b> the orange	<b>la spiaggia</b> the beach
<b>le province</b>	<b>le arance</b>	<b>le spiagge</b>

## EXCEPTIONS:

<b>la camicia</b> the shirt	<b>la valigia</b> the valise	<b>la ciliegia</b> the cherry
<b>le camicie</b>	<b>le valigie</b>	<b>le ciliegie</b>

9. Nouns ending in *-co* usually end in *-chi* in the plural when the stress falls on the syllable preceding *co*, and in *ci* when the stress

falls on some other syllable. However, the exceptions are numerous. The following is a list of the more common nouns ending in *-co*, and their plural:

<b>il fuoco</b> fire	<b>il fico</b> the fig	<b>il monaco</b> the monk
<b>i fuochi</b>	<b>i fichi</b>	<b>i monaci</b>
<b>il manico</b> the handle	<b>il bosco</b> the woods	<b>il porco</b> the pig
<b>i manichi</b>	<b>i boschi</b>	<b>i porci</b>
<b>lo stomaco</b> the stomach	<b>l'amico</b> the friend	<b>l'equivoco</b> the misunderstanding
<b>gli stomachi</b>	<b>gli amici</b>	<b>gli equivoci</b>
<b>il cieco</b> the blind	<b>il nemico</b> the enemy	<b>il maniaco</b> the maniac
<b>i ciechi</b>	<b>i nemici</b>	<b>i maniaci</b>
<b>il carico</b> the load	<b>il greco</b> the Greek	
<b>i carichi</b>	<b>i greci</b>	

10. Nouns ending in *-go* change to *-ghi* in the plural:

<b>il borgo</b> the hamlet	<b>il dialogo</b> the dialogue
<b>i borghi</b>	<b>i dialoghi</b>

Some nouns ending in *-go* form the plural in either *-ghi* or *-gi*:

<b>l'astrologo</b> the astrologer	<b>l'antropologo</b> the anthropologist
<b>gli astrologhi or astrologi</b>	<b>gli antropologi or antropologi</b>

11. The following nouns have an irregular plural:

<b>l'uomo</b> the man	<b>(il) Dio</b> God	<b>la moglie</b> the wife
<b>gli uomini</b>	<b>gli Dei</b>	<b>le mogli</b>
<b>il bue</b> the ox, bull	<b>mille</b> one thousand	
<b>i buoi</b>	<b>mila</b>	

Notice the special use of *gli* before *Dei*.

12. The following nouns are used only in the plural:

<b>le nozze</b> the wedding	<b>le mutande</b> the underwear	<b>gli spinaci</b> spinach
<b>gli sponsali</b> the wedding	<b>le redini</b> the reins	<b>i viveri</b> the victuals
<b>le busse</b> the blows	<b>gli annali</b> the annals	

13. The following nouns are used mostly in the plural, very rarely in the singular:

<b>i calzoni</b> the trousers	<b>(sing. il calzone)</b>
<b>i pantaloni</b> the trousers	<b>(sing. il pantalone)</b>



**le forbici** (sing. la forbice)  
the scissors

**gli spaghetti** (sing. lo spaghetti)  
the spaghetti

14. The following nouns are used only in the singular:

<b>la fame</b> hunger	<b>il sangue</b> blood	<b>il miele</b> honey	<b>la requie</b> the rest, requiem
<b>la sete</b> thirst	<b>il fiele</b> the gall	<b>la prole</b> the offspring	<b>la senape</b> mustard

15. The following nouns form their plural by changing the singular ending to *a*, and thus become feminine:

<b>l'uovo</b> the egg	<b>il grido</b> the cry	<b>il ciglio</b> the eyelid
<b>le uova</b>	<b>le grida</b>	<b>le ciglia</b>
<b>il dito</b> the finger	<b>il lenzuolo</b> the bed sheet	<b>il ginocchio</b> the knee
<b>le dita</b>	<b>le lenzuola</b>	<b>le ginocchia</b> ( <i>also i ginocchi</i> )
<b>il paio</b> the pair	<b>il centinaio</b> about a hundred	
<b>le paia</b>	<b>le centinaia</b>	
<b>il miglio</b> the mile	<b>il migliaio</b> about a thousand	
<b>le miglia</b>	<b>le migliaia</b>	

16. The following nouns have both a feminine and a masculine plural, but with a difference in meaning:

<b>il braccio</b> the arm	<b>le braccia</b> <b>i bracci</b> (figurative)	<b>il muro</b> the wall	<b>le mura</b> (of a city) <b>i muri</b> (of a house)
<b>il membro</b> the member	<b>le membra</b> (of the body) <b>i membri</b> (of a club)	<b>il corno</b> the horn	<b>le corna</b> (of animals) <b>i corni</b> instruments
<b>il riso</b> rice, laughter	<b>le risa</b> laughter <b>i risi</b> rices	<b>il filo</b> the thread	<b>i fili</b> <b>le fila</b> (figurative)
<b>il labbro</b> the lip	<b>le labbra</b> (of man) <b>i labbri</b> (of animals, or figurative)	<b>il frutto</b> the fruit	<b>la (or le) frutta</b> (at the table) <b>i frutti</b> (figurative)
<b>l'osso</b> the bone	<b>le ossa</b> (of humans) <b>gli ossi</b> (of animals or in grease)		

17. Nouns ending with an accented vowel do not change in the plural:

<b>il caffè</b> coffee	<b>la virtù</b> virtue
<b>i caffè</b>	<b>le virtù</b>
<b>la città</b> the city	<b>la libertà</b> liberty
<b>le città</b>	<b>le libertà</b>

18. Monosyllabic nouns do not change in the plural:

<b>il re</b> the king
<b>i re</b>

19. Surnames do not change in the plural:

<b>il Barletta</b>
<b>i Barletta</b>

20. Nouns ending in a consonant do not change in the plural:

<b>il lapis</b> the pencil	<b>il gas</b> the gas
<b>i lapis</b>	<b>i gas</b>

21. Nouns composed of a verb and a plural noun do not change in the plural:

<b>il portalettere</b> the letter carrier	<b>il lustrascarpe</b> the shoeshine boy	<b>il tagliacarte</b> the paper cutter
<b>i portalettere</b>	<b>i lustrascarpe</b>	<b>i tagliacarte</b>

## § 9 Augmentatives and Diminutives

Many Italian nouns acquire different shades of meaning by the addition of suffixes, thus greatly enriching the language.

1. The suffix *-one* is attached to a noun (after the final vowel is dropped) to indicate bigness. The noun thus altered is always masculine, unless in the original form it has both a masculine and a feminine, in which case *-ona* is added to the feminine.

<b>un palazzo</b> a building	<b>un ragazzo</b> a boy
<b>un palazzone</b>	<b>un ragazzone</b>
<b>un ladro</b> a thief	<b>una ragazza</b> a girl
<b>un ladrone</b>	<b>una ragazzona</b>

Likewise, adjectives are altered by adding *-one* to the masculine and *-ona* to the feminine:

<b>stupido</b> stupid	<b>ricco</b> rich
<b>stupidone (m.)</b>	<b>riccone (m.)</b>
<b>stupidona (f.)</b>	<b>riccona (f.)</b>

2. The suffix *-accio* (*-accia* in the feminine) conveys bigness also, but in a disparaging sense:

**libro**

book

**libraccio****camera**

room

**cameraccia**

3. The suffix *-otto* (f. *-otta*) denotes mediocre bigness:

**un signore**

a gentleman

**un signorotto****una ragazza**

a girl

**una ragazzotta**

4. The suffix *-ino* (f. *-ina*) denotes smallness often coupled with grace:

**una stanza**

room

**una stanzina****una donna**

lady

**una donnina****un bicchiere**

glass

**un bicchierino**

5. The suffixes *-ello*, *-etto*, *-uccio*, *-olino*, *-icino*, and their feminine forms ending in *-a*, have the same meaning as *-ino* above:

**una stanza**

room

**una stanzetta****un povero**

poor man

**un poverello****un vecchio**

old man

**un vecchietto****un pesce**

fish

**un pesciolino****un libro**

book

**un libricino**

## The Adjective (L'Aggettivo)

### § 10 Classes and Forms of the Adjective

1. There are two classes of adjectives in Italian:

a. Those which end in *-o* in the masculine singular and have four forms:

**il ragazzo piccolo**

the little boy

**la ragazza piccola**

the little girl

**i ragazzi piccoli**

the little boys

**le ragazze piccole**

the little girls

b. Those which end in *-e* in the singular and have only two forms, the masculine and feminine forms being identical:

**il ragazzo grande**

the big boy

**la ragazza grande**

the big girl

**i ragazzi grandi**

the big boys

**le ragazze grandi**

the big girls

2. The adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun it modifies. See examples above.

3. An adjective which modifies two or more nouns is always masculine plural if at least one noun is masculine:

**La cucina, il salotto e la sala da pranzo sono piccoli.**

The kitchen, the living room, and the dining room are *small*.

## §11 Position of Adjectives

1. In Italian the normal position of the adjective is after the noun. This is especially true when the adjective denotes color, shape, size, nationality, or religion:

<b>un libro rosso</b> a red book	<b>un ragazzo italiano</b> an Italian boy
<b>una scatola rotonda</b> a round box	<b>una ragazza ebrea</b> a Jewish girl
<b>una matita lunga</b> a long pencil	

2. Demonstrative adjectives precede the noun:

**Quella signorina è molto simpatica.**  
That young lady is very charming.

**Questo libro è di Giovanni.**  
This book is John's.

3. Numerals precede the noun:

**Ho comprato venti libri.**  
I bought twenty books.

**Egli occupa il quinto posto.**  
He occupies the fifth place.

4. The adjectives *molto* and *tutto* (the latter followed by the definite article) precede the noun:

**Ci sono molte persone nella cucina.**  
There are many persons in the kitchen.

**Egli ha bevuto tutta la birra.**  
He drank all the beer.

5. Possessive adjectives normally precede the noun:

**Egli ha preso il mio libro.**  
He took my book.

6. The following common adjectives normally precede the noun unless they are modified by an adverb or special emphasis is desired:

<b>grande</b> big	<b>cattivo</b> bad	<b>bello</b> beautiful	<b>povero</b> poor
<b>piccolo</b> small	<b>giovane</b> young	<b>brutto</b> ugly	<b>santo</b> saintly
<b>buono</b> good	<b>vecchio</b> old	<b>ricco</b> rich	<b>ottimo</b> excellent

**Ella è una santa donna.**  
She is a saintly woman.

**Ho ricevuto un piccolo pacco.**  
I received a small package.

**Hai parlato alla vecchia signora?**  
Have you spoken to the old lady?

**BUT:**

**Ho ricevuto un pacco molto piccolo.**  
I received a very small package.

7. The following are some of the common adjectives which have a *figurative* meaning when placed before the noun, and a *literal* meaning when placed after the noun:

<b>povero</b> poor	<b>vecchio</b> old	<b>grande</b> big	<b>gentile</b> kind
<b>nuovo</b> new	<b>dolce</b> sweet	<b>piccolo</b> small	<b>certo</b> certain

**Ella è una *povera* donna.**  
She is a *poor* (unfortunate) woman.

**Ella è una donna *povera*.**  
She is a *poor* woman (financially).

**NOTE:** When an adjective precedes a noun, the article is determined by the adjective. Thus we say *il quadro*, but *lo splendido quadro*.

### § 12 Plural of Adjectives

1. For agreement with plural nouns, adjectives follow the same rules as the nouns.

2. For adjectives ending in *-co* see rule stated in § 8-9. The following three common adjectives are exceptions to that rule and form the plural in *ci*:

<b>amico</b> friendly	<b>amici</b>	<b>nemico</b> unfriendly	<b>nemici</b>	<b>greco</b> Greek	<b>grechi</b>
--------------------------	--------------	-----------------------------	---------------	-----------------------	---------------

3. The adjective *pari* (like, equal, even same) is invariable:

**numeri *pari***  
even numbers

### § 13 Demonstrative Adjectives

1. The demonstrative adjective *questo* (this) is used to indicate an object which is near the person who speaks. Since it ends in *-o* it has four forms:

**questo questa questi queste**

2. The demonstrative adjective *codesto* (that) is used to indicate an object near the person addressed. It also has four forms:

**codesto codesta codesti codeste**

3. The demonstrative adjective *quello* (that) is used to indicate an object which is far from both the person speaking and the person addressed. This adjective has various forms, similar to those of the contractions [See §6-1]:

<b><i>quel</i> ragazzo</b> <i>that</i> boy	<b><i>quei</i> ragazzi</b> <i>those</i> boys
<b><i>quella</i> lettera</b> <i>that</i> letter	<b><i>quelle</i> lettere</b> <i>those</i> letters
<b><i>quello</i> specchio</b> <i>that</i> mirror	<b><i>quegli</i> specchi</b> <i>those</i> mirrors

*quell'uomo*  
that man

*quell'amica*  
that friend (f.)

*quegli uomini*  
those men

*quelle amiche*  
those friends (f.)

4. The demonstrative adjectives *stesso* and *medesimo* (both meaning "same") are used to indicate something of which one has previous knowledge:

**Egli dice sempre le stesse cose.**  
He always says the same things.

**Tu ripeti il medesimo argomento.**  
You repeat the same argument.

5. The adjective *tale* (such) has the same meaning as *questo*, but refers to something previously mentioned:

**Io non posso credere tale storia.**  
I can't believe such a story.

## § 14 Indefinite Adjectives

The following is a list of the more common indefinite adjectives:

1. Those that have four forms:

**altro**  
other

**alcuno**  
some

**certo**  
certain

**molto**  
much

**troppo**  
too much

**poco**  
little

**Certe cose non le capisco.**  
I don't understand certain things.

**Tu bevi troppa birra.**  
You drink too much beer.

2. Those that are invariable and are always used in the singular:

**ogni**  
every

**qualche**  
some

**qualunque**  
any

**qualsiasi**  
any

**Hai qualche cosa per me?**  
Do you have something for me?

**Egli ripete qualunque cosa sente.**  
He repeats anything he hears.

**Ogni uomo ama la libertà.**  
Every man loves liberty.

## § 15 Interrogative Adjectives

The following are the Italian interrogative adjectives:

1. *Che?* (what?) This adjective is invariable but the noun that follows it may be of either number or gender:

**Che libri hai letto?**  
What books have you read?

**Che lingua parla egli?**  
What language does he speak?

2. *Quale?* (*pl. quali*) (which?).  
**Quale lezione ha imparato lei?**  
*Which lesson did you learn?*  
**Quali amici verranno?**  
*Which friends will come?*
3. *Quanto?* (four forms) (how much?).  
**Quanta carne devo comprare?**  
*How much meat must I buy?*  
**Quante valigie ha lei?**  
*How many suitcases have you?*
4. *Di chi?* (Whose?).  
**Di chi è questa penna?**  
*Whose pen is this?*  
**Di chi sono questi libri?**  
*Whose books are these?*

## § 16 The Possessive Adjectives

1. The word "my" is rendered in Italian by *il mio, la mia, i miei, le mie*.

**Il mio libro è qui.**  
*My book is here.*

**Questa è la mia penna.**  
*This is my pen.*

**Hai visto i miei amici?**  
*Have you seen my friends (m.)?*

**Hai ricevuto le mie lettere?**  
*Did you receive my letters?*

2. The word "your" (familiar singular, *tu*-form) is rendered by *il tuo, la tua, i tuoi, le tue*.

**Hai il tuo libro, Maria?**  
*Do you have your book, Mary?*

**Ecco i tuoi guanti.**  
*Here are your gloves.*

**Questa è la tua giacca.**  
*This is your jacket.*

**Mi piacciono le tue cravatte.**  
*I like your neckties.*

3. The words "your" (polite singular, *lei*-form), "his," and "her" are rendered by *il suo, la sua, i suoi, le sue*.

**Mi piace il suo cappello, signora.**  
*I like your hat, madam.*

**Ecco Carlo ed i suoi amici.**  
*Here is Charles and his friends (m.).*

**Sono queste le sue scarpe, signorina?**  
*Are these your shoes, miss?*

**La sua casa è molto bella.**  
*His (or her, your) house is very beautiful.*

**NOTE:** You need not worry about any confusion arising about who is the possessor, as the last example above might seem to indicate. When you say "*La sua casa è molto bella*", you will be able to tell by the context of the conversation to whom *la sua* refers. However, any possible ambiguity may be avoided by paraphrasing the sentence in which the possessive occurs. For example, instead of saying "*la sua casa*", you may say "*la casa di Carlo*" if you mean Charles' house.

4. The word "our" is rendered by *il nostro, la nostra, i nostri, le nostre*.

**Il nostro maestro è molto gentile.**  
Our teacher is very kind.

**Noi amiamo la nostra bandiera.**  
We love *our* flag.

**I nostri libri sono nuovi.**  
Our books are new.

**Ecco le nostre amiche!**  
Here are *our* friends (f.).

5. The word "your" (familiar plural, *voi*-form) is rendered by *il vostro, la vostra, i vostri, le vostre*.

**Io sono il vostro amico.**  
I am *your* friend.

**Amate la vostra patria!**  
Love *your* country!

**I vostri bicchieri sono vuoti.**  
*Your* glasses are empty.

**Le vostre domande non sono difficili.**  
*Your* questions are not difficult.

6. The words "your" (polite plural, *loro*-form) and "their" are rendered by *il loro, la loro, i loro, le loro*.

**Essi vogliono il loro denaro.**  
They want *their* money.

**Gli uomini amano la loro libertà.**  
Men love *their* liberty.

**I loro libri sono nuovi.**  
*Their* (or *your*) books are new.

**Esse giocano con le loro amiche.**  
They play with *their* friends (f.).

7. The possessive adjectives agree with the *thing possessed* and not with the *possessor*. See the above sentences for examples.

8. The possessive adjectives are preceded by the definite article except when followed by a singular noun indicating a member of the family or a relative. If, however, this noun is modified by an adjective or a suffix, the definite article must be used.



**Egli ama *sua* madre.**  
He loves *his* mother.

**Io gioco con *mia* sorella.**  
I play with *my* sister.

**But:**

**Egli ama *la sua cara* madre.**  
He loves *his dear* mother.

**Io gioco con *la mia* sorellina.**  
I play with *my little* sister.

9. The word *loro* is always preceded by a definite article:

***La loro* zia è arrivata.**  
*Their* aunt has arrived.

10. With the words *mamma* (mother) and *babbo* (dad) the possessive adjective is always preceded by the definite article:

***La sua* mamma è molto gentile.**  
*Your* mother is very kind.

***Il suo* babbo è in America.**  
*His* dad is in America.

11. The possessive adjective is used without the definite article when it follows any form of the verb *essere*.

**Questo denaro sarà *tuo*.**  
This money will be *yours*.

12. In direct address the possessive adjective follows the noun and is used without the definite article:

**Amico *mio*, perdonami!**  
Forgive me, *my* friend!

13. The possessive adjectives are usually omitted, and the definite article is used instead, with parts of the body or personal articles of clothing:

**Egli alzò *la* testa.**  
He raised *his* head.

**Dammi *il* cappello, Carlo.**  
Give me *your* hat, Charles.

14. With expressions such as "a friend of mine", "a cousin of his", etc. the indefinite article is used instead of the definite article:

**Ti presenterò ad *un mio* amico.**  
I shall introduce you to a friend of *mine*.

15. When a definite article preceding a possessive adjective is, in turn, preceded by a preposition, a contraction results [See § 6-1]:

**Io scrivo *al mio* amico.**  
I am writing *to my* friend.

**Egli gioca *coi suoi* amici.**  
He plays *with his* friends.

16. The possessive adjective *altrui* is invariable, and means "of others, other peoples," etc.

**Non rubare il denaro *altrui*.**  
Do not steal *other peoples'* money.

17. The possessives *i miei*, *i tuoi*, *i suoi* are, at times, used as nouns to indicate one's parents, and, in a broader sense, one's relatives.

**Come stanno i tuoi?**  
How are *your* folks?

18. The words *proprio*, *propria*, *propri*, *proprie*, meaning "own", are often used to add emphasis to the other possessive adjectives:

**Egli ha fatto questo con le sue proprie mani.**  
He did this with his *own* hands.

## § 17 Comparison of Adjectives

There are two grades of comparison in Italian — comparison of equality and comparison of inequality.

### 1. Comparative of Equality

a. A comparative of equality results when:

1) Two objects have the same quality in the same degree:

**Maria è tanto bella quanto Lucia.**  
Mary is *as* beautiful *as* Lucy.

2) Two different qualities are found in the same degree in one object:

**Ella è tanto buona quanto intelligente.**  
She is *as* good *as* she is intelligent.

3) Two distinct qualities are found in the same degree in two different objects:

**Maria è tanto bella quanto Lucia è intelligente.**  
Mary is *as* pretty *as* Lucy is intelligent.

The English expressions "as . . . as," "so . . . as," "as much . . . as" are translated in Italian by *tanto . . . quanto* (see examples in *a*, *b*, *c* above) or *così . . . come*:

**Il fratello è così buono come la sorella.**  
The brother is *as* good *as* the sister.

NOTE: The words in the first part of the comparison (*tanto* and *così*) may be omitted, and it is often desirable to do so. Thus the examples given above could read:

**Maria è bella quanto Lucia.**  
**Il fratello è buono come la sorella.**

### 2. Comparative of Inequality

a. Inequality is expressed by the words *più* (more) and *meno* (less).

b. A comparative of inequality results when:

1) Two objects have the same quality in a greater or lesser degree:

**Maria è più (or meno) bella di Lucia.**  
Mary is *more* (or *less*) beautiful than Lucy.

2) Two different qualities are found in a greater or lesser degree in one object:

**Ella è più (or meno) buona che intelligente.**  
She is *kinder* (or *less kind*) than she is intelligent.

3) Two distinct qualities are found in a greater or lesser degree in two different objects:

**Maria è più (or meno) bella che Lucia è intelligente.**  
Mary is *more* (or *less*) beautiful than Lucy is intelligent.

c. In the comparative of inequality the word *than* is translated by *di* before the following:

1) Nouns modified by an adjective:

**Carlo è più alto di Enrico.**  
Charles is taller *than* Henry.

**La terra è più piccola del sole.**  
The earth is smaller *than* the sun.

2) Pronouns modified by an adjective:

**Io sono più povero di lui.**  
I am poorer *than* he.

3) Numbers:

**Questo libro costa meno di dieci dollari.**  
This book costs less *than* ten dollars.

d. In the comparative of inequality the word "than" is translated by *che*:

1) When the comparison is between two nouns unmodified by an adjective:

**Egli mangia più carne che pane.**  
He eats more meat *than* bread.

2) When the comparison is between two pronouns unmodified by an adjective:

**Io amo più te che lui.**  
I love you more *than* I love him.

3) When the comparison is between two adjectives, two adverbs, or two verbs:

**Tu sei più fortunato che prudente.**  
You are luckier *than* (you are) prudent.

**Lei parla meglio italiano che inglese.**  
You speak Italian better *than* English.

**Gli piace più mangiare che lavorare.**  
He likes to eat more *than* (he likes) to work.

4) When the second part of the comparison is preceded by a preposition or a contraction of the preposition with the definite article:

**Lei ha dato più fiori a Maria *che* a me.**

You gave more flowers to Mary *than* to me.

**Egli gioca più col fratello *che* con la sorella.**

He plays more with the brother *than* with the sister.

### 3. *The Relative Superlative*

a. When the comparison is between more than two persons or things we have the relative superlative.

b. The English words "the most" and "the least" are translated by *più* and *meno* preceded by the definite article.

c. The English word "in" is translated by *di* or a contraction of *di* with the definite article.

**Carlo è il ragazzo più intelligente *della* classe.**

Charles is the most intelligent boy *in the* class.

**Maria è la meno studiosa *di* tutti.**

Mary is the least studious *of* all.

**Ho visitato le più belle città *del* mondo.**

I have visited the most beautiful cities *in the* world.

**Essi sono i più ricchi *della* città.**

They are the richest *in the* city.

d. The following common adjectives have an irregular comparative and superlative in addition to the regular forms:

<b>buono</b> good	<b>migliore</b> better	<b>il migliore</b> the best
<b>cattivo</b> bad	<b>peggiore</b> worse	<b>il peggiore</b> the worst
<b>grande</b> big	<b>maggiore</b> bigger	<b>il maggiore</b> the biggest
<b>piccolo</b> small	<b>minore</b> smaller	<b>il minore</b> the smallest
<b>alto</b> high, tall	<b>superiore</b> higher	<b>il superiore</b> the highest
<b>basso</b> low, short	<b>inferiore</b> lower	<b>l'inferiore</b> the lowest

- NOTES: (1) The final *e* of the comparative and superlative of the above adjectives is often dropped before a singular noun.
- (2) *Maggiore* is used to mean "greater, older" rather than "bigger."
- (3) *Minore* is used to mean "younger, minor" rather than "smaller."
- (4) *Superiore* is used to mean "higher, superior, better" rather than "taller."
- (5) *Inferiore* means "lower, inferior," never "shorter."

**È la miglior cosa che tu possa fare.**  
It is the *best* thing you can do.

**Essi sono i migliori alunni della classe.**  
They are the *best* pupils in the class.

**Questo vino è peggiore dell'altro.**  
This wine is *worse* than the other.

**Egli è il figlio minore.**  
He is the *youngest* son.

**La signorina abita al piano superiore.**  
The young lady lives on the floor above (*higher*).

**Ti hanno venduto un vino inferiore.**  
They have sold you an *inferior* wine.

#### 4. *The Absolute Superlative*

a. The absolute superlative is used to express a very high degree of a trait or characteristic of a person or thing, without any relation to other persons or things. It has no corresponding form in English, and can be translated only by using such words as "very, extremely, enormously," etc.

b. The superlative absolute is formed by adding *-ssimo* (or *-ssima*, *-ssimi*, *-ssime*) to the masculine plural form of the adjective. This rule automatically takes care of words ending in *-co*, *-go*, *-ca*, and *-ga*.

**Egli è un uomo ricchissimo.**  
He is an *extremely* wealthy man.

**I grattacieli di New York sono altissimi.**  
The skyscrapers of New York are *very* high.

**La signora è stanchissima.**  
The lady is *extremely* tired.

**Il delta di quel fiume è larghissimo.**  
The delta of that river is *enormously* wide.

c. The following common adjectives have irregular absolute superlative forms in addition to the regular forms:

<b>buono</b> good	<b>ottimo</b>	<b>alto</b> high, tall	<b>supremo or sommo</b>
<b>cattivo</b> bad	<b>pessimo</b>	<b>basso</b> low, short	<b>infimo</b>
<b>grande</b> big, great	<b>massimo</b>	<b>celebre</b> famous	<b>celeberrimo</b> (no regular form for this)
<b>piccolo</b> small	<b>minimo</b>		

**Ecco un ottimo bicchier di vino!**  
Here is an excellent glass of wine!

**Ti voglio dire una cosa di somma importanza.**  
I want to tell you something of *extreme* importance.

**Questi sono gli ordini del comando supremo.**  
These are the orders of the *supreme* command.

**È il minimo che tu possa fare.**  
It is the *least* you could do.

d. The absolute superlative is sometimes formed by simply repeating an adverb:

**Egli cammina piano piano.**  
He walks *very* slowly.

**Si mise a gridare forte forte.**  
He started shouting *very* loudly.

e. The absolute superlative is sometimes formed by having such adverbs as *immensamente*, *enormemente*, *estremamente* precede the adjective, or by having the expression *quanto mai* (*lit.*, as ever) follow the adjective:

**Ella è estremamente felice.**  
She is *extremely* happy.

**Egli è ricco quanto mai.**  
He is *enormously* rich.

## § 18 Some Irregular Adjectives

The four adjectives *bello*, *grande*, *buono*, and *santo* undergo the following changes when they are placed before a noun:

1. The adjective *bello* has all the forms of the contractions:

**un bel cane**  
a *beautiful* dog

**una bella ragazza**  
a *beautiful* girl

**un bell'uomo**  
a *handsome* man

**un bello specchio**  
a *beautiful* mirror

**i bei fiori**  
the *beautiful* flowers

**le belle città**  
the *beautiful* cities

**i begli occhi**  
the *beautiful* eyes

2. The adjective *grande* (big, large, great) becomes *gran* before a singular masculine noun not beginning with *z*, *s-impura*, or a vowel. It becomes *grand'* before a singular noun (masculine or feminine) beginning with a vowel.

**un gran palazzo**  
a *big* building

**un grand' amico**  
a *great* friend

**un grande scienziato**  
a *great* scientist

3. The adjective *buono* becomes *buon* before a singular masculine noun not beginning with *z* or *s-impura*, and *buon'* before a singular feminine noun beginning with a vowel.

**un buon libro**  
a *good* book

**un buon orologio**  
a *good* watch

**un buono zio**  
a *good* uncle

**una buon'amica**  
a *good* friend (f.)

4. The adjective *santo* (saintly, holy) becomes *san* before a singular masculine noun not beginning with *z*, *s-impura*, or a vowel, and *sant'* before a singular noun beginning with a vowel.

**San Carlo**  
Saint Charles

**Sant'Angelo**  
St. Angel

**Sant'Elena**  
St. Helen

**Santo Stefano**  
St. Stephen

**Santa Maria**  
St. Mary

## The Pronoun (Il Pronome)

### § 19 Personal Subject Pronouns

1. The personal pronouns, used as subjects of verbs, in Italian are:

<b>io</b>	<b>noi</b>
<b>I</b>	we
<b>tu</b>	<b>voi</b>
you, thou (familiar singular)	you (familiar plural)
<b>lei</b>	<b>loro</b>
you (polite singular)	you (polite plural)
<b>egli</b>	<b>essi</b>
he	they (masc.)
<b>ella</b>	<b>esse</b>
she	they (fem.)

2. Notes on the personal subject pronouns:

a. *Io* is never capitalized in Italian unless it begins a sentence.

b. *Tu* is the familiar form and is used only in speaking to a close friend, a relative, a child, or an animal.

c. The pronoun *lei*, which is used in polite, formal address, used to be capitalized even in the middle of a sentence. This, as a general rule, is no longer done, except when writing to someone in a very high and respected position, as a sign of respect.

d. *Ella* (capitalized) is often used instead of *lei* for the reason explained in *c* above. In such cases, of course, it means "you."

e. The word *essa* may be used instead of *ella* to mean "she."

f. The words *egli* and *ella* are used only to indicate persons. *Esso* and *essa* are used to indicate animals or objects, although more often than not, they are simply omitted.

g. The word "it" (*esso* or *essa*) usually is not translated when it is the subject of a verb:

**Non è necessario.**  
It is not necessary.

h. *Voi* (which is a plural pronoun) is often used to address one person. In such cases, however, the verb is in the plural, but a qualifying adjective, if there be one, is singular:

**Maria, voi siete molto generosa.**  
Mary, you are very generous.

i. The personal subject pronouns are often omitted when the verb ending clearly indicates what the subject is. Thus, instead of saying *noi balliamo* (we dance) we may simply say *balliamo*, because the verb ending, *-iamo*, refers only to *noi*.

## § 20 Direct Object Pronouns

## 1. The direct object pronouns in Italian are:

<b>mi</b>	<b>ci</b>
<b>me</b>	<b>us</b>
<b>ti</b>	<b>vi</b>
you (fam. sing.)	you (fam. plur.)
<b>la</b>	<b>li</b>
you (pol. sing.), her, it (fem.)	you (pol. pl. masc.), them (masc. pl.)
<b>lo</b>	<b>le</b>
him, it (masc.)	you (pol. pl. fem.), them (fem. pl.)
<b>ne</b>	
some, some of it, some of them, any, any of it, any of them, of it, of them.	

## 2. The normal position of the direct object pronouns is before the verb:

<b>Io lo vedo.</b> I see <i>him</i> (or <i>it</i> ).	<b>Ella mi chiama.</b> She calls <i>me</i> .
<b>Io li compreró.</b> I shall buy <i>them</i> .	<b>Egli non ne mangia.</b> He doesn't eat <i>any</i> .

## 3. In a compound tense the direct object pronoun is placed before the auxiliary, and the past participle agrees with it:

<b>Io li ho comprati.</b> I have bought <i>them</i> .
<b>Egli non le ha incontrate.</b> He has not met <i>them</i> .

4. Before a vowel or vowel sound *lo* and *la* become *l'*; the others remain unchanged:

<b>Io l'ho incontrato.</b> I met <i>him</i> .
<b>Io l'ho incontrata.</b> I met <i>her</i> .

5. The direct object pronouns are attached to the word *ecco*:

<b>Ecco il libro</b> becomes <b>Eccolo.</b> Here is the book.	<b>Here it is.</b>
<b>Ecco le signore</b> becomes <b>Eccole.</b> Here are the ladies.	<b>Here they are.</b>

6. The direct object pronouns are attached to an infinitive after the latter loses its final *e*:

<b>Non è necessario farlo adesso.</b> It is not necessary to do <i>it</i> now.
---

NOTE: If the infinitive depends on another verb, the pronoun may be attached to the infinitive or precede the first verb:

<b>Essi vogliono vederla or Essi la vogliono vedere.</b> They want to see <i>it</i> .
--



However, when the infinitive depends on *fare*, *vedere*, *sentire*, or *lasciare*, the pronoun must be placed before this verb.

**Io lo vedrò partire.**  
I shall see *him* leave.

**Ella mi lascia parlare.**  
She lets *me* talk.

**Voi li sentirete cantare.**  
You will hear *them* sing.

**Essi ci fanno aspettare.**  
They make *us* wait.

7. The direct object pronouns are attached to the *tu*, *noi*, and *voi* forms of the affirmative imperative:

**tu form: Porta il libro.**  
carry the book.

**Portalo.**  
Carry *it*.

**noi form: Compriamo le arance.**  
Let us buy the oranges.

**Compriamole.**  
Let us buy *them*.

**voi form: Imparate la lezione.**  
Learn the lesson.

**Imparatela.**  
Learn *it*.

**BUT:**

**Non compriamo i libri. Non li compriamo.**  
Let us not buy the books. Let us not buy *them*.

## § 21 Indirect Object Pronouns

1. The indirect object pronouns in Italian are:

**mi**  
to me

**ci**  
to us

**ti**  
to you (fam. sing.)

**vi**  
to you (fam. pl.)

**le**  
to you (pol. sing.), to her

**loro**  
to you (pol. pl.), to them

**gli**  
to him

2. The indirect object pronouns are normally placed before the verb:

**Io parlo al professore. Io gli parlo.**  
I speak to the professor. I speak *to him*.

3. The indirect object pronoun *loro* always follows the verb:

**Io parlo alle signorine. Io parlo loro.**  
I speak to the young ladies. I speak *to them*.

4. In a compound tense the indirect object pronoun is placed before the auxiliary, but the past participle does not agree with it:

**Perchè non ci hai scritto?**  
Why haven't you written *to us*?

5. The indirect object pronouns (except *loro*) follow the same rule as the direct object pronouns in reference to the infinitive [See § 20-6].

**Voglio scrivere al mio amico.** *Gli* voglio scrivere *or*  
I want to write to my friend. **Voglio scrivergli.**  
I want to write to *him*.

**Voglio scrivere ai miei amici.** **Voglio scrivere loro.**  
I want to write to my friends. I want to write to *them*.

**BUT:** **Io gli farò vedere il quadro.**  
I shall let *him* see the picture.

6. The indirect object pronouns are attached to the *tu*, *noi* and *voi* forms of the affirmative imperative:

*tu* form:

**Porta il libro a Giovanni.** **Portagli il libro.**  
Bring the book to John. Bring *him* (to *him*) the book.

*noi* form:

**Mandiamo i fiori alla mamma.** **Mandiamole i fiori.**  
Let's send the flowers to mother. Let's send *her* the flowers.

*voi* form:

**Date il denaro all'uomo.** **Dategli il denaro.**  
Give the money to the man. Give *him* the money.

**BUT:** **Non date il denaro all'uomo.** **Non gli date il denaro.**  
Don't give the money to the man. Don't give *him* the money.  
**Parlate a quelle ragazze.** **Parlate loro.**  
Speak to those girls. Speak to *them*.

**NOTE:** The indirect object pronouns are to be used even when the word "to" is understood in English:

**Io gli ho mandato il libro.**  
I sent *him* the book.

## § 22 Disjunctive Pronouns

The following are called *disjunctive pronouns* because, unlike the other pronouns, they are used independently of the verb. They have special uses as explained in 2 below.

1. The disjunctive pronouns in Italian are:

<b>me</b>	<b>noi</b>
<b>te</b>	<b>us</b>
<b>te</b>	<b>voi</b>
you (fam. sing.)	you (fam. pl.)
<b>lei</b>	<b>loro</b>
you (pol. sing.), her	you (pol. pl.), them (persons,
<b>lui</b>	<b>essi</b>
<b>him</b>	them (masc.) (objects)
<b>esso</b>	<b>esse</b>
it (masc.)	them (fem.) (objects)
<b>essa</b>	<b>sè</b>
it (fem.)	himself, herself, itself, themselves

## 2. The disjunctive pronouns are used:

a. After prepositions (*a, da, di, in, per, con*, etc.):

**Egli parlava di *me*.**  
He was talking about *me*.

**Io non voglio andare con *lui*.**  
I don't want to go with *him*.

**Egli fa questo per *loro*.**  
He is doing this for *them*.

## b. After the verb, for contrast or emphasis:

**Ella ha chiamato *te*.**  
She called *you*.

**Egli ama lei, non *lui*.**  
He loves her, not *him*.

## c. In exclamations:

**Fortunato *me!***  
Lucky *me!*

3. *Lui* and *lei* may be used instead of *egli* and *ella* when greater emphasis is desired:

***Lui* (instead of *egli*) ha fatto questo.**  
*He* did this.

***Lei* (instead of *ella*) ha detto ciò?**  
Did *she* say that?

4. The adjective *stesso* is often used after the disjunctive or other pronouns if greater emphasis is desired:

**Egli parla sempre di sè *stesso*.**  
He always speaks of *himself*.

***Noi stessi* andremo là.**  
We *ourselves* shall go there.

5. The disjunctive pronouns *lui, lei, loro* are used:

## a. Only for persons.

b. After any form of the verb *essere*:

**Era *lui!***  
It was *he!*

**Non è stata *lei* che ha fatto questo.**  
It wasn't *she* who did this.

## c. In a compound subject:

**Tu e *lui* andrete a Roma.**  
You and *he* will go to Rome.

6. The disjunctive pronouns *esso, essa, essi, esse* are more commonly used for animals or objects.

## § 23 Interrogative Pronouns

1. The interrogative pronoun *chi?* (who? whom?) is of both genders,

and is usually followed by a singular verb. Only when *chi?* is used with any form of *essere* (to be) may the verb be plural:

**Chi vuole mangiare?**  
Who wants to eat?

**Con chi parlavi?**  
With whom were you talking?

**Chi sono quegli uomini?**  
Who are those men?

2. *Che cosa?* (what?) is always singular, and refers only to things. In lieu of *che cosa?*, *che?* or *cosa?* may be used alone:

**Che cosa ha detto? or Che ha detto? or Cosa ha detto?**  
What did he say?

3. *Quale?* (which? which one?) and *Quali?* (which? which ones?):

**Ecco i libri. Quale (or quali) vuoi?**  
Here are the books. Which (one or ones) do you want?

**Di quelle attrici, quale è la più bella?**  
Of those actresses, which one is the most beautiful?

4. *Di chi?* means "whose?":

**Di chi è questa borsetta?**  
Whose handbag is this?

**Di chi sono queste sigarette?**  
Whose cigarettes are these?

## § 24 Relative Pronouns

1. *Che* (who, whom, that, which) is the most common of the relative pronouns. It is used both as the subject or the direct object of a verb. It should not be used after a preposition.

**L'uomo che parla è mio zio.**  
The man who is talking is my uncle.

**Quelli che studiano imparano.**  
Those who study learn.

**Mi piace il libro che mi hai dato.**  
I like the book (that) you gave me.

Notice in the above sentence that the word "that", which may be and is often omitted in English, may not be omitted in Italian.

2. *Cui* means "whom" or "which" when it is preceded by a preposition. It is used for both persons and things, and is both singular and plural.

**I ragazzi di cui parlo.**  
The boys of whom I am talking.

**La penna con cui scrivo è nuova.**  
The pen with which I am writing is new.

3. *Cui* preceded by the definite article or a contraction means "whose."

**L'uomo il cui figlio è avvocato.**  
The man whose son is a lawyer.

**L'uomo la cui figlia è qui.**  
The man *whose* daughter is here.

**L'uomo i cui figli sono qui.**  
The man *whose* sons are here.

**L'uomo del cui figlio io parlo.**  
The man of *whose* son I am speaking.

4. *Il quale* and its variations, *la quale*, *i quali*, *le quali*, mean "who, whom, which." More often than not they are used after a preposition, which may contract with the definite article. They are used rather sparingly in place of *che* and *cui* when there is a possibility of ambiguity.

**Quel libro e la penna con la quale scrivo sono miei.**  
That book and the pen with *which* I am writing are mine.

**Il nipote di Carlo, il quale è arrivato poco fa.**  
Charles' nephew, *who* arrived a short while ago.

5. *Ciò che* means "what," but must be used only when the word "what" means "that which."

**Non mi piace ciò che hai fatto.**  
I don't like *what* you have done.

**Ciò che egli dice non è vero.**  
*What* he says is not true.

NOTE: *Quel che* or *quello che* may be used instead of *ciò che*.

**Ti darò quel che vuoi.**  
I shall give you *what* you want.

**Quello che voi dite è giusto.**  
*What* you are saying is just.

6. *Chi* means "he who, him who, the one who." It is always used with a singular verb, even though the English translation may be "those who, the ones who," etc.

**Chi studia impara.**  
*He who* studies learns. Or, *Those who* study learn.

**Chi visita l'Italia è colpito dalla sua bellezza.**  
*He who* visits Italy is struck by its beauty.

NOTES: a. *Colui che* (masc.) or *colei che* (fem.) or *coloro che* (the latter being plural, the verb must also be plural) may be used instead of *chi*.

**Colui che parla sarà punito.**  
*The one who* talks shall be punished.

**Colei che ama sarà amata.**  
*She who* loves will be loved.

**Coloro che studiano imparano.**  
*Those who* study learn.

b. *Chi* is at times used as a correlative pronoun, repeated before each verb. In such cases it is translated by "some, those who."

**Che bella festa! Chi balla, chi canta, chi mangia!**  
What a nice party! *Some* dance, *some* sing, *some* eat.

## § 25 Demonstrative Pronouns

1. There is no difference in form between the demonstrative pronouns *questo*, *quello*, and *codesto* and the corresponding demonstrative adjectives [See § 13].

**Quei ragazzi sono studiosi; *quello* non studia affatto.**

Those boys are studious; *that one* doesn't study at all.

NOTE: It should be noted, however, that *quello* as a pronoun has only four forms—*quello*, *quella*, *quelli*, and *quelle*.

2. The demonstrative pronouns *questi* (this one, the latter) and *quegli* (that one, the former) are commonly used in sentences with two substantives. They refer only to persons (masc. sing.), and are used only as subjects of the verbs:

**Conosco bene Carlo ò Luigi: *questi* è intelligente, *quegli* è uno stupido.**

I know Charles and Louis: *the latter* is intelligent, *the former* is a dunce.

3. The demonstrative pronoun *ciò* (this, that) may be used as subject or as object of the verb, and refers to something which has already been said or which is going to be said. It never refers to persons.

**Non hai studiato? *Ciò* è molto male.**

You haven't studied? *That* is very bad.

**È inutile ripeter *ciò*.**

It's useless to repeat *that*.

NOTE: At times *ciò* is replaced by the particle *ci*:

**Ha detto questo? Io non *ci* credo.**

Did he say that? I don't believe *it*.

## § 26 Indefinite Pronouns

The most common indefinite pronouns in Italian are:

1. *Nessuno* Nobody, no one

***Nessuno* verrà a cercarti qui.**

*No one* will come to look for you here.

2. *Nulla* or *niente* Nothing

***Nulla* mi impedisce di far *ciò*.**

*Nothing* prevents me from doing that.

NOTE: *Nessuno*, *nulla*, and *niente* require the negative particle *non* when preceded by the verb:

**Non verrà a cercarti *nessuno*.**

*Nobody* will come to look for you.

3. *Ognuno* Anybody, any one, everyone, everybody

***Ognuno* può fare quel gli piace.**

*Anybody* can do as he pleases.

4. *Qualcuno* Some one, somebody

*Qualcuno* è entrato nella mia stanza.  
Somebody entered my room.

5. *Chiunque* Whoever, anybody who

*Chiunque* mi cerchi, ditegli che non ci sono.  
Whoever looks for me, tell him I am not in.

6. *Tutto, tutti* All, everything

*Tutto* è facile quando si sa come.  
Everything is easy when you know how.

*Tutti* viaggerebbero se avessero denaro.  
All would travel if they had money.

7. *Alcuni* Some (normally used in the plural)

Dei miei amici, *alcuni* sono sotto le armi.  
Of my friends, some are in the army.

8. *Altri* Others. Refers only to persons. As a subject *altri* usually is singular and requires a singular verb; as an object it may be singular or plural.

*Altri* farebbe questo, ma io non posso farlo.  
Somebody else would do this, but I cannot do it.

Io non voglio uscire con *altri*.  
I don't want to go out with others.

9. *Checchè* Whatever

*Checchè* succede, dovete andarci.  
Whatever happens, you must go there.

## § 27 The Possessive Pronouns

The possessive pronouns (mine, yours, his, hers, etc.) are exactly like the possessive adjectives (my, your, his, her, etc.) [See § 16].

NOTE: The definite article is always used before the possessive pronouns, even when they refer to a member of the family or to a relative:

Ho perduto i miei libri ed i tuoi.  
I lost my books and yours.

Mia sorella e la tua sono uscite.  
My sister and yours went out.

## § 28 Reflexive Pronouns

## 1. The reflexive pronouns in Italian are:

**mi**  
myself

**ti**  
yourself (fam. sing.)

**si**  
yourself (pol. sing.), himself,  
herself, itself, themselves,  
yourselves (pol. pl.)

**ci**  
ourselves

**vi**  
yourselves (fam. plural)

2. The reflexive pronouns always precede the verb, except for the infinitive and *tu, noi, and voi* forms of the affirmative imperative [See § 20-3, 6, 7].

**Io mi lavo la faccia.**

I wash *my* face.

**Essi si alzano di buon'ora.**

They get up early.

**Allontanatevi!**

Move away!

**Divertiamoci!**

Let's have a good time (Let's enjoy *ourselves*)!

**Egli vuole alzarsi.**

He wants to get up.

NOTE: The reflexive pronouns are always used in Italian, whereas they are often omitted in the English translation, as may be seen in the examples above.

## § 29 The Double Pronouns

1. Both a direct and an indirect object are often used with the same verb.

**Io mando il libro a Carlo.**

I send the *book* to *Charles*.

When the object nouns are replaced by pronouns we get the following combinations:

TABLE OF DOUBLE PRONOUNS

MEANING	it (m.), him	it (f.), her	them (m.)	them (f.)	of him, of her, of it, of them, any, some
to me	<b>me lo</b>	<b>me la</b>	<b>me li</b>	<b>me le</b>	<b>me ne</b>
to you ( <i>lei</i> )	<b>te lo</b>	<b>te la</b>	<b>te li</b>	<b>te le</b>	<b>te ne</b>
to him, to her	<b>glielo</b>	<b>gliela</b>	<b>glieli</b>	<b>gliele</b>	<b>gliene</b>
to us	<b>ce lo</b>	<b>ce la</b>	<b>ce li</b>	<b>ce le</b>	<b>ce ne</b>
to you ( <i>voi</i> )	<b>ve lo</b>	<b>ve la</b>	<b>ve li</b>	<b>ve le</b>	<b>ve ne</b>
to you ( <i>loro</i> ), to them	<b>lo . . . loro</b>	<b>la . . . loro</b>	<b>li . . . loro</b>	<b>le . . . loro</b>	<b>ne . . . loro</b>
to himself, to herself, to themselves	<b>se lo</b>	<b>se la</b>	<b>se li</b>	<b>se le</b>	<b>se ne</b>

2. Notice from the above table that the indirect object pronouns *mi, ti, ci, vi, and si* change to *me, te, ce, ve, and se* before the direct object pronouns.

**Egli mi dà il denaro. Egli me lo dà.**

He gives *me* the money. He gives *it to me*.

**Essi ci mandano delle ciliegie. Essi ce ne mandano.**

They send us some cherries. They send *us some*.



3. The indirect object pronouns *gli* (to him) and *le* (to her, to you) become *gli* and combine with the direct object pronouns.

**Io porto i fiori alla mamma. Io glieli porto.**  
I bring the flowers to mother. I bring them to her.

4. The double pronouns normally precede the verb except an infinitive and the *tu*, *noi*, and *voi* forms of the affirmative imperative, in which cases they are attached to the end of the verb [See § 22-3, 6, 7].

**Porta questo regalo al tuo amico. Portaglielo.**  
Bring this present to your friend. Bring it to him.

**Mandatemi quelle sigarette. Mandatemele.**  
Send me those cigarettes. Send them to me.

**Vogliamo dargli quelle arance. Vogliamo dargliele.**  
We want to give him those oranges. We want to give them to him.

Remember that when you attach a single or a double pronoun to a verb form the stress of the verb remains unchanged in pronunciation.

5. The pronoun *loro* always follows the verb and never combines with the verb or with another pronoun:

**Noi scriviamo le lettere ai nostri amici. Noi le scriviamo loro.**  
We write the letters to our friends. We write them to them.

**Offrite i dolci alle signore. Offriteli loro.**  
Offer the candies to the ladies. Offer them to them.

6. Sometimes in English the word "to" as part of the indirect object pronouns has the meaning of "for," but the indirect object is still used in Italian.

**Il babbo mi comprerà il cavallo. Il babbo me lo comprerà.**  
Dad will buy me the horse. He will buy it for me.

## The Adverb (L'Avverbio)

### § 30 Classes of Adverbs

1. There are several classes of adverbs in Italian:

a. Adverbs of quality or manner, the most common of which are:

<b>bene</b> well	<b>peggio</b> worse	<b>anche</b> also, too	<b>invano</b> in vain
<b>meglio</b> better	<b>così</b> thus	<b>pure</b> also, too	<b>altrimenti</b> otherwise
<b>male</b> badly	<b>come</b> as, like	<b>insieme</b> together	

b. Adverbs of time, the most common of which are:

<b>sempre</b> always	<b>domani</b> tomorrow	<b>talvolta</b> sometimes
-------------------------	---------------------------	------------------------------

<b>mai</b> never	<b>dopodomani</b> the day after tomorrow	<b>ancora</b> yet, still
<b>ora</b> now	<b>ieri</b> yesterday	<b>a tempo</b> on time
<b>adesso</b> now	<b>l'altro ieri</b> the day before yesterday	<b>spesso</b> often
<b>allora</b> then	<b>stasera</b> tonight	<b>presto</b> early, soon
<b>poi</b> then, afterwards	<b>stamani or stamane</b> this morning	<b>tardi</b> late
<b>dopo</b> afterwards	<b>per tempo</b> early	<b>oggi</b> today
<b>prima</b> before		

c. Adverbs of place, the most common of which are:

<b>lontano</b> far	<b>dove</b> where	<b>avanti</b> forward
<b>vicino</b> near	<b>altrove</b> elsewhere	<b>indietro</b> backward
<b>presso</b> near	<b>dappertutto</b> everywhere	<b>davanti</b> before, in front of
<b>qua or qui</b> here	<b>dentro</b> inside, within	<b>dietro</b> behind
<b>lì or là</b> there	<b>fuori</b> outside, without	

d. Adverbs of quantity, the most common of which are:

<b>assai</b> much	<b>troppo</b> too much	<b>abbastanza</b> enough	<b>quasi</b> almost, nearly
<b>molto</b> much	<b>tanto</b> so much	<b>solo or soltanto</b> only	<b>più</b> more
<b>poco</b> little	<b>altrettanto</b> as much	<b>circa</b> nearly, about	<b>meno</b> less

e. Adverbial phrases, the most common of which are:

<b>di tanto in tanto</b> once in a while	<b>di bene in meglio</b> better and better	<b>di buona voglia</b> willingly
<b>delle volte</b> at times, sometimes	<b>di male in peggio</b> from bad to worse	<b>a malincuore</b> unwillingly, reluctantly
<b>qualche volta</b> sometimes	<b>ad un tratto</b> suddenly	<b>per lo più</b> mostly
<b>a poco a poco</b> little by little	<b>all'improvviso</b> suddenly, unexpectedly	<b>per lo meno</b> at least

f. Affirmative and negative adverbs, the most common of which are:

<b>sì</b> yes	<b>senza dubbio</b> undoubtedly	<b>forse</b> perhaps
<b>certo</b> certainly	<b>neppure or nemmeno</b> not even	<b>niente or nulla</b> nothing

<b>davvero</b> really	<b>no</b> no	<b>niente affatto</b> not at all
<b>nemmeno</b> not even	<b>non</b> not	

### § 31 Formation of Adverbs

1. Many adverbs of manner are formed by adding *-mente* to the singular feminine forms of adjectives:

ADJECTIVE	SING. FEM. FORM	ADVERB
<b>ricco</b> rich	<b>ricca</b>	<b>riccamente</b>
<b>divino</b> divine	<b>divina</b>	<b>divinamente</b>
<b>breve</b> brief	<b>breve</b>	<b>brevemente</b>

However, adjectives which end in *-ale*, *-ele*, *-ile*, *-ole*, *-are*, and *-ore* drop the final *e* before adding *-mente*:

<b>generale</b> general	<b>inutile</b> useless	<b>particolare</b> particular
<b>generalmente</b>	<b>inutilmente</b>	<b>particolarmente</b>
<b>fedele</b> faithful	<b>debole</b> weak	<b>maggiore</b> greater
<b>fedelmente</b>	<b>debolmente</b>	<b>maggiormente</b>

2. Several adjectives may be used as adverbs without changing form, although the alternate adverbial form may also be used:

**Parlate chiaro or chiaramente.**  
Speak clearly.

**Ella mi guardò fisso or fissamente.**  
She stared (*lit.*, looked straight) at me.

### § 32 Comparison of Adverbs

1. Most adverbs are compared in the same manner as the adjectives. The words *più* and *meno* are used for the comparative, and *il più* and *il meno* for the superlative:

**Vi prego di parlare più lentamente.**  
I beg you to speak more slowly.

**So che egli mi serve meno fedelmente del padre.**  
I know he serves me less faithfully than the father.

**Vi prego di parlare il più lentamente possibile.**  
I beg you to speak as slowly as possible.

2. Adverbs, like adjectives, also have an absolute superlative form. Simply add *-mente* to the singular feminine form of the absolute superlative of the adjective:

**Egli imparava tutto facilissimamente.**  
He learned everything very, very easily.

3. The following adverbs have irregular comparatives:

<b>bene</b> well	<b>miglio</b> better	<b>molto</b> much	<b>più</b> more
<b>male</b> badly	<b>peggio</b> worse	<b>poco</b> little	<b>meno</b> less

4. The relative superlatives of the above four adverbs are:

il meglio il peggio il più il meno

NOTE: These relative superlatives are normally used as substantives:

**È il meglio che egli possa fare.**  
It is *the best* he can do.

5. The absolute superlative of *bene* is *ottimamente* or *benissimo*, and that of *male* is *pessimamente* or *malissimo*.

Egli scrive *ottimamente* (or *benissimo*).  
He writes *exceptionally well*.

6. Some adverbs may take a diminutive or augmentative ending:

<b>benino</b> well	<b>benone</b> pretty well	<b>poco</b> little	<b>pocchetino</b> a very little
	<b>piano</b> slowly	<b>pianino</b> rather slowly	

7. The superlative of some adverbs may be formed by simply repeating them:

**È uscito subito subito.**  
He went out *immediately*.

## The Preposition (La Preposizione)

### § 33 The Preposition *a*

The preposition *a* (meaning "to" sometimes "at, in, for," etc.) or a contraction of *a* with the definite article [See § 6] is used:

1. Before indirect object nouns:

**Io parlo a Carlo.**  
I speak *to* Charles.  
**Io parlo ai ragazzi.**  
I speak *to the* boys.

NOTE: Frequently the preposition "to" is omitted in English, but it cannot be omitted in Italian:

**Egli dà il libro a Maria.**  
He gives (*to*) Mary the book.

2. Before disjunctive pronouns [See § 22]:

**Egli parla a me, non a lui.**  
He is speaking *to* me, not *to* him.

## 3. Before names of cities, in which case it may also mean "in:"

Noi andremo *a* Napoli.  
We shall go *to* Naples.

*A* Firenze ci sono molti tesori d'arte.  
*In* Florence there are many art treasures.

NOTE: The preposition *in* may be used instead of *a* in the sense of "within:"

Egli vive *a* (or *in*) Roma.  
He lives *in* Rome.

## 4. In a number of idioms where a different preposition or none at all might be expected in English (see list of idioms at end of Reference Grammar):

Ti aspettano *a* braccia aperte.  
They are waiting for you *with* open arms.

Egli non è buono *a* nulla.  
He is good *for* nothing.

Si gettò *a* capofitto nel lago.  
He threw himself headlong into the lake.

5. Before a number of infinitives depending upon *insegnare*, *imparare*, and other verbs usually denoting motion, progress, beginning, remaining, etc. Here is a partial list of such verbs:

aiutare <i>a</i> to help	mettersi <i>a</i> to start, begin	esitare <i>a</i> to hesitate
acconsentire <i>a</i> to consent	riuscire <i>a</i> to succeed	imparare <i>a</i> to learn
abituarsi <i>a</i> to get accustomed to	stare <i>a</i> to remain, wait, stay	incominciare <i>a</i> to begin
andare <i>a</i> to go	tardare <i>a</i> to be late	insegnare <i>a</i> to teach
continuare <i>a</i> to continue	venire <i>a</i> to come	invitare <i>a</i> to invite
divertirsi <i>a</i> to enjoy oneself		

Adesso incomincio *a* capire.  
Now I am beginning to understand.

Egli è venuto *a* vederla.  
He came to see her (or it).

Ella aiuta la mamma *a* pulire la casa.  
She helps mother to clean the house.

## 6. To indicate price of items:

Ho comprato queste cravatte *a* cento lire l'una.  
I bought these ties *at* a hundred lire each.

## 7. To indicate time:

Lo spettacolo comincia *alle* otto.  
The show starts *at* eight.

Carlo verrà *a* mezzogiorno.  
Charles will come *at* noon.

8. In a number of adverbial locutions, the most common of which are:

**A poco a poco impariamo.**  
Little by little we are learning.

**Attorno alla casa c'è il giardino.**  
Around the house there is the garden.

**Dietro a me siede Lucia.**  
Behind me sits Lucy.

**Il negozio è dirimpetto alla posta.**  
The store is opposite the post office.

**Ti aspetterò fino alle sei.**  
I shall wait for you until six.

**Rispetto a questo non so che dire.**  
Concerning this I don't know what to say.

**La signorina abita vicino a noi.**  
The young lady lives near us.

**Ho trovato una palla in mezzo alla strada.**  
I found a ball in the middle of the street.

**Le rose sono accanto all'albero.**  
The roses are at the side of the tree.

NOTE: *a* may become *ad* before a vowel:

**Dietro ad Anna.**  
Behind Anne.

### § 34 The Preposition *da*

The preposition *da* (meaning "from," also "at, for, by, with, as", etc.) or a contraction of *da* with the definite article [See § 6] is used:

1. To indicate movement from a place:

**Egli viene da Roma.**  
He comes from Rome.

2. To indicate "to or at a person's place," the nature of the place not being specified:

**Io vado dal dottore.**  
I am going to the doctor's.  
**Andrò da lui stasera.**  
I shall go to his place tonight.  
**Lo troverete da Giovanni.**  
You will find him at John's.

3. To indicate a person, place, or object from which something comes or originates:

**Ho ricevuto una lettera da Carlo.**  
I received a letter from Charles.  
**Il carbone si estrae dalla terra.**  
Coal is extracted from the earth.  
**L'ho preso dall'armadio.**  
I took it from the closet.

## 4. Before an infinitive or a noun to indicate purpose, convenience, capacity, duty:

**Scarpe *da* passeggio.**  
Shoes *for* walking

**Sala *d'*aspetto.**  
Waiting room

**Quest'acqua non è *da* bere.**  
This water is not *for* drinking.

**Non sono cose *da* dirsi.**  
These things are not to be told.

**Non c'è tempo *da* perdere.**  
There is no time to lose.

## 5. To indicate cause, reason, or an agent:

**Io tremavo *dal* freddo.**  
I was shivering *because of* the cold.

**Ho fatto questo *da* me.**  
I did this *by* myself.

**Abele fu ucciso *da* Caino.**  
Abel was killed *by* Cain.

## 6. To indicate a trait or characteristic of a person or thing:

**L'uomo *dalla* barba lunga.**  
The man *with a* long beard.

**La casa *dalle* persiane verdi.**  
The house *with* green shutters.

***Dal* rumore si sa che ci sono dei bambini.**  
*From* the noise one knows that there are children.

## 7. To translate the English expressions "as, like, in the manner of:"

**Egli parla *da* ragazzo intelligente.**  
He speaks *like an* intelligent boy.

**Egli vive *da* re.**  
He lives *like a* king.

Notice the omission of the indefinite article before *ragazzo* and *re* [See § 5-4].

## 8. To indicate a place where an action occurs:

**Si buttò *dalla* finestra.**  
He threw himself *out of* the window.

***Dalla* montagna si vede un panorama bellissimo.**  
*From* the mountain one sees a beautiful panorama.

**Il prete predica *dal* pulpito.**  
The priest preaches *from* the pulpit.

## 9. To indicate age or condition, in sentences such as these:

***Da* bambino avevo i capelli biondi.**  
*As a* child (when I was a child) I had blond hair.

***Da* studente egli era svogliato.**  
*As a* student he was unattentive.

## 10. In certain adverbial locutions such as:

***lontano da***  
far from

***da ora in poi***  
from now on

*fin (or fino) da*  
since, from

*Fin dall'infanzia egli è stato sempre fortunato.*  
*Since childhood he has always been lucky.*

NOTE: *Da* hardly ever becomes *d'* before a vowel.

### § 35 The Preposition *di*

The preposition *di* (of, by) or a contraction with the definite article is used:

1. To indicate possession:

*La casa dello zio*  
Uncle's house

*L'automobile di Giovanni*  
John's automobile

2. Material of which something is made, or contents:

*Un orologio d'oro*  
a gold watch

*Una veste di seta*  
a silk dress

*Un bicchiere di latte*  
a glass of milk

3. In a sense of literary or artistic authorship:

*Un romanzo di Manzoni*  
a novel by Manzoni

*Un quadro di Michelangelo*  
a painting by Michaelangelo

4. In comparisons (see § 17-B-3 and § 17-C-3).

5. If, in the equivalent English, a noun is used as an adjective to modify another noun, the tendency in Italian is to place the modifying noun in a prepositional phrase with *di*:

*Una lezione di francese*  
a French lesson

6. With infinitives depending upon an adjective:

*Egli è contento di andare là.*  
He is glad to go there.

*Sei felice di rivedermi?*  
Are you happy to see me again?

*Io sono orgoglioso di fare questo lavoro.*  
I am proud to do this work.

7. Before certain nouns or pronouns depending upon an adjective:

*Tu sei invidioso di lui.*  
You are envious of him.

*Noi siamo orgogliosi della nostra patria.*  
We are proud of our country.

*Non siete sicuri di me?*  
Aren't you sure of me?



8. Before a large number of infinitives depending upon other verbs. Here are some examples:

**Io penso di andar via.**  
I am thinking of going away.  
**Egli non desidera di fare ciò.**  
He doesn't wish to do that.  
**Non ti permetto di uscire.**  
I do not permit you to go out.  
**Ella offrì di accompagnarmi.**  
She offered to accompany me.  
**Hai paura di rimanere qui?**  
Are you afraid to remain here?

Other verbs are:

<b>avere ragione di</b> to be right	<b>proibire di</b> to prohibit	<b>rifutare di</b> to refuse
<b>avere torto di</b> to be wrong	<b>promettere di</b> to promise	<b>finire di</b> to finish
<b>dire di</b> to tell	<b>dimenticare di</b> to forget	<b>pregare di</b> to pray, to beg
<b>ordinare di</b> to order	<b>ricordare di</b> to remember	<b>cercare di</b> to try

9. To indicate time:

**Egli partì di mattina.**  
He left *in the* morning.

10. To indicate manner:

**Ella lo fa di buona voglia.**  
She does it willingly.  
**Io mangio di buon appetito.**  
I eat *with a* good appetite.  
**Essi si alzano di buon'ora.**  
They get up early.

11. Contracted with the definite article [see § 6-16] to mean "some:"

**Ci sono degli uomini.**  
There are *some* men.  
**Ho mangiato del pane.**  
I ate *some* bread.

12. Between the expressions *qualche cosa* or *nulla* and a modifying adjective:

**Non c'è nulla di nuovo.**  
There is nothing new.  
**Ti ha dato qualche cosa di buono?**  
Did he give you something good?

13. In a number of adverbial locutions, the most common of which are:

<b>a favore di</b> in favor of	<b>di tanto in tanto</b> once in a while	<b>a forza di</b> by dint of
<b>invece di</b> instead of	<b>di bene in meglio</b> better and better	<b>ad onta di</b> in spite of

**per mezzo di**  
by means of

**prima di**  
before

**dopo di**  
after

**di male in peggio**  
from bad to worse

**di gran lunga**  
by far

**a causa di**  
because of

**fuori di**  
out of

**al di là di**  
on that side of

### § 36 Other Common Prepositions

1. The preposition *in* (or a contraction of *in* with the definite article), meaning "in, into," is used:

a. To indicate location, real or figurative:

**Egli abita *in* Roma.**  
He lives *in* Rome.

**Ella vive *nei* sogni.**  
She lives *in* dreams.

b. To indicate time:

**Dante nacque *nel* 1265.**  
Dante was born *in* 1265.

***In* tre mesi finirò il lavoro.**  
*In* three months I shall finish the work.

c. To translate the word "to" in a verb of motion before names of countries:

**Io ritornerò *negli* Stati Uniti.**  
I shall return *to the* United States.

**La signora va *in* America.**  
The lady is going *to* America.

2. The preposition *con* or a contraction of *con* with *il* and *i* [See § 6-2], meaning "with," is used mostly as in English. These special uses, however, are of interest:

a. *Con* sometimes means "against":

**Egli combatteva *col* nemico.**  
He was fighting *against the* enemy.

b. *Con* sometimes means "toward":

**Egli è giusto *con* tutti.**  
He is just *toward* everybody.

c. *Con* sometimes means "in spite of":

***Con* tutta la sua intelligenza egli non è riuscito.**  
*In spite of* all his intelligence he did not succeed.

3. The preposition *per* (for, through, by) is mostly used as in English:

**Passarono *per* Firenze.**  
They passed *through* (or *by*) Florence.

**La notizia si sparse *per* tutta la città.**  
The news spread *through* the whole city.

It is also used in the Italian expressions meaning "to be about to":

**L'attrice stava *per* partire.**  
The actress was *about to* leave.

**Il ladro stava *per* confessare.**  
The thief was *about to* confess.

4. The preposition *su* (or a contraction of *su* with the definite article), meaning "on, upon" is mostly used as in English. These special uses, however, are of interest:

a. *Su* means "about" in sentences such as these:

**Era un uomo *sulla* sessantina.**  
He was a man of *about* sixty.

**Ella ha scritto un libro *sulla* vecchiaia.**  
She has written a book *on (about)* old age.

b. In the idiomatic expressions *dare su* (to face, to open upon) and *su due piedi* (right there and then, on the spot).

**La finestra *dà sul* giardino.**  
The window *faces* the garden.

***Su due piedi* mi disse che non l'avrebbe fatto.**  
*Right there and then* he told me he wouldn't do it.

### § 37 Repetition of Prepositions

When one preposition governs two words connected by a conjunction, such preposition must be repeated before each word in the Italian sentence:

**Parlerò *a* Carlo *e a* Maria.**  
I shall speak *to* Charles and Mary.

**Egli ha parlato *dell'*Italia *e della* Francia.**  
He spoke *of* Italy and France.

## The Conjunction (La Congiunzione)

### § 38 Coordinating Conjunctions

Coordinating conjunctions may join two sentences or two parts of a sentence. The most common ones in Italian are:

<b>e</b>	<b>però</b>	<b>cioè</b>
and	however	that is
<b>o</b>	<b>dunque</b>	<b>nè . . . nè</b>
or	therefore	neither . . . nor
<b>ma</b>	<b>perciò</b>	<b>infatti</b>
but	therefore	in fact

**L'uomo studia *e* apprende.**  
Man studies *and* learns.

**Carlo nè studia, nè apprende.**  
Charles *neither* studies *nor* learns.

**È partito, *ma* ha dimenticato il biglietto.**  
He left, *but* forgot the ticket.

**Penso, *dunque* esisto.**  
I think, *therefore* I exist.

§ 39 Subordinating Conjunctions

Subordinating conjunctions establish dependence between two verbs. The most common ones are:

<b>che</b> that	<b>quindi</b> therefore	<b>giacchè</b> inasmuch as
<b>come</b> how, as	<b>malgrado</b> in spite of	<b>dovunque</b> everywhere
<b>perchè</b> because	<b>mentre</b> while	<b>purchè</b> provided
<b>per</b> for	<b>benchè</b> although	<b>a patto che</b> on condition that
<b>quando</b> when	<b>sebbene</b> although	<b>nonostante</b> notwithstanding
<b>dove</b> where	<b>invece di</b> instead of	<b>neppure or nemmeno</b> neither, not even
<b>se</b> if		

**Non è giusto *che* lei faccia questo.**  
It is not right for you to do this.

**Sono venuto *per* salutarti.**  
I have come *to* (*for to*) greet you.

**Egli gioca, *mentre* dovrebbe studiare.**  
He plays *while* he ought to be studying.

**È venuto *perchè* ha bisogno del tuo aiuto.**  
He came *because* he needs your help.

NOTE: The conjunction *che* (that) is never omitted in Italian, as is often done in English:

**Credo *che* Maria verrà.**  
I think (*that*) Mary will come.

The Interjection (L'Interiezione)

§ 40 Some Common Interjections

The interjection or exclamation is an invariable part of speech which, in itself, has no particular meaning, but which, in a sentence, serves to express such basic feelings as joy, pleasure, astonishment, grief, disgust, etc. Here are some of the more common interjections in Italian and their approximate English meanings:

<b>ah!</b> ah! oh!	<b>evviva!</b> hurrah! long live!	<b>perbacco!</b> by Jove!
<b>oh!</b> oh!	<b>viva!</b> hail!	<b>perdinci!</b> by Jove! dear me!
<b>ahi!</b> ouch! oh dear!	<b>guai!</b> woe!	<b>accidempoli!</b> the deuce!
<b>ahimè!</b> alas!	<b>caspita!</b> what the deuce!	<b>peccato!</b> too bad!
<b>ecco!</b> there!		

## The Verb (Il Verbo)

### § 41 The Transitive Verbs

1. A transitive verb is one that takes a direct object:

**Io prendo il libro.**  
I *take* the book.

2. There are a number of verbs which are transitive in Italian but intransitive in English. Some of these are:

**Egli guarda il libro.**  
He *looks at* the book.

**Io cerco il libro.**  
I *look for* the book.

**Essi aspettano il treno.**  
They *are waiting for* the train.

**Noi ascoltiamo la musica.**  
We *listen to* the music.

3. Transitive verbs are always conjugated with *avere*.

### § 42 The Intransitive Verbs

1. An intransitive verb is one which does not have a direct object. It may express an action which:

- a. Is reflected on an indirect object introduced by a preposition:

**Io parlo al mio amico.**  
I *speak to* my friend.

- b. Remains on the subject itself, or expresses a state or condition of the subject:

**La signorina studia.**  
The young lady *is studying*.

**Il bambino dorme.**  
The child *is sleeping*.

2. There are a number of verbs which are intransitive in Italian but transitive in English. Some of these are:

**Io entro nella stanza.**  
I *enter* the room.

**Egli rispose alla mia lettera.**  
He *answered* my letter.

**Questo non mi conviene.**  
This does not *suit* me.

**Il pollo arrosto non piace a Carlo.**  
Charles doesn't *like* roast chicken.

**Io mi ricordo di lei.**  
I *remember* you.

(*Mi ricordo* is a form of *ricordarsi*, which is reflexive. However, the verb *ricordare* does take a direct object and is, therefore, transitive.)

## § 43 The Infinitive

1. The infinitive is the basic form of the verb, from which all other forms (in the case of the regular verbs) are derived. In English the infinitive is distinguished by the preposition "to" which precedes it. In Italian the infinitive is identified by its characteristic ending. There are three infinitive endings in Italian, and each one identifies its conjugation:

### FIRST CONJUGATION ENDING: *-are*

**parlare, cantare**  
to speak, to sing

### SECOND CONJUGATION ENDING: *-ere*

**perdere, vendere**  
to lose, to sell

### THIRD CONJUGATION ENDING: *-ire*

**dormire, finire**  
to sleep, to finish

2. The infinitive may be used in the function of a noun as the subject of a verb, as an object, or as a predicate noun. It may or may not be preceded by the definite article.

**Godere la vita è il desiderio di tutti.**  
*To enjoy life is everybody's wish.*

**Il dormire fa bene a tutti.**  
*Sleeping does everybody good.*

3. The infinitive is often used after prepositions when in English we would normally use a gerund (*-ing*). In these cases the infinitive is preceded by the definite article (or a contraction) except when it follows *prima di* (before), *dopo di* (after), and *senza* (without).

**Col viaggiare si imparano molte cose.**  
*Traveling one learns many things.*

**Prima di rispondere voglio rileggere la sua lettera.**  
*Before answering I want to read his letter again.*

**Uscì senza dire niente.**  
*He went out without saying anything.*

4. An infinitive often depends on a noun. In these cases it is preceded by *da* if use or purpose is implied; otherwise *di* is used.

**Mi dia dell'acqua da bere.**  
*Give me some drinking water.*

**Il suo desiderio di aiutare gli altri è grande.**  
*His desire to help others is great.*

5. An infinitive depending on an adjective may be introduced by the preposition *di*, *a*, or no preposition at all.

**Sono felice di fare questo per lei.**  
*I am happy to do this for you.*

**Queste cose sono *facili a fare*.**  
 These things are *easy to do*.

**È *difficile imparare tante cose*.**  
 It is *difficult to learn so many things*.

6. An infinitive depending on another verb may be introduced:
- a. By the preposition *a* [See § 33-5].
  - b. By the preposition *di* [See § 35-8].
  - c. By no preposition. The following is a list of the most common of these verbs:

<b>fare</b> to do, make	<b>dovere</b> must, ought to	<b>lasciare</b> to allow, let
<b>sentire</b> to hear	<b>preferire</b> to prefer	<b>parere</b> to seem
<b>volere</b> to want	<b>desiderare</b> to wish	<b>sembrare</b> to seem
<b>potere</b> to be able, can	<b>osare</b> to dare	<b>giovare</b> to be advantageous
<b>vedere</b> to see	<b>ardire</b> to dare	<b>bisognare</b> to need (impersonal)
<b>sapere</b> to know	<b>bastare</b> to suffice	<b>amare</b> to love, like

**L'ho *vista piangere*.**  
 I *saw* her cry.

**Essi non *sanno nuotare*.**  
 They don't *know how* to swim.

**Voi dovete *partire subito*.**  
 You must *leave* right away.

7. The English expression "in order to" (or "to" alone, if it means "in order to") is rendered by *per* before an infinitive.

***Per comprare queste cose ci vuole molto denaro.***  
*In order to* buy these things you need a great deal of money.

8. Direct, indirect (except *loro*), and reflexive pronouns are attached to an infinitive after the latter loses its final *e*.

9. The past infinitive is formed by the infinitive of the auxiliary verb and the past participle of the desired verb [See § 48, § 49, § 50].

10. Direct, indirect, and reflexive pronouns are attached to the auxiliary verb, which, as you already know, loses its final *e*:

**Dopo di *essermi alzato uscii*.**  
 After I got up I went out.

**Lacerò la lettera senza *averla letta*.**  
 He tore the letter without having read *it*.

## § 44 The Gerund

1. The present gerund of regular verbs is formed as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION: Drop *-are* and add *-ando*  
*parlando, ballando*

SECOND CONJUGATION: Drop *-ere* and add *-endo*  
*perdendo, leggendo*

THIRD CONJUGATION: Drop *-ire* and add *-endo*  
*sentendo, dormendo*

2. The present gerund translates the English present participle whether preceded by a preposition or not.

*Leggendo si imparano molte cose.*  
*By reading one learns many things.*

*L'appetito viene mangiando.*  
*Appetite comes while eating.*

*Vedendo che non c'era, andai via.*  
*Seeing that he wasn't there, I went away.*

NOTE: The present gerund is often called the present participle.

3. The past gerund is formed by the present gerund of the auxiliary verb and the past participle of the desired verb.

4. The past gerund is used as in English.

*Essendo arrivato prima del tempo, dovetti aspettare.*  
*Having arrived before time, I had to wait.*

*Non avendo studiato, egli non potè rispondere bene.*  
*Not having studied, he was unable to answer well.*

5. Direct, indirect (except *loro*), and reflexive pronouns are attached to the present gerund, whether used alone or as an auxiliary:

*Mettendomi in commercio, spero di fare fortuna.*  
*By going into business, I hope to make a fortune.*

*Avendola vista (la casa), decise di comprarla.*  
*Having seen it (the house), he decided to buy it.*

## § 45 The Participle

1. The present participle is formed as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION: Drop *-are* and add *-ante*  
*parlare parlante*  
*to speak*

SECOND CONJUGATION: Drop *-ere* and add *-ente*  
*perdere perdente*  
*to lose*

THIRD CONJUGATION: Drop *-ire* and add *-ente*  
*dormire dormente*  
*to sleep*



NOTE: Some third conjugation verbs add *-iente* instead of *-ente*:

<b>ubbidire</b>	<b>ubbidiente</b>	<b>nutrire</b>	<b>nutriente</b>
to obey		to nourish	

2. The present participle is rarely used, and a good many verbs do not have one. When used, the present participle has the function of an adjective or a noun:

<b>Un buon <i>cantante</i></b> a good <i>singer</i>	<b>Il grillo <i>parlante</i></b> the <i>talking</i> cricket
<b>L'<i>insegnante</i> d'italiano</b> the Italian <i>teacher</i>	<b>La Torre <i>Pendente</i></b> the <i>Leaning</i> Tower

3. The past participle of regular verbs is formed as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION: Drop *-are* and add *-ato*

**parlare parlato**

SECOND CONJUGATION: Drop *-ere* and add *-uto*

**perdere perduto**

THIRD CONJUGATION: Drop *-ire* and add *-ito*

**dormire dormito**

4. The past participle is mainly used in the formation of compound tenses.

5. The past participle is often used in an absolute construction; that is, without the auxiliary verb. In such cases it agrees with the subject if the verb is intransitive, and with the object if the verb is transitive.

***Imparata la poesia, egli uscì contento.***  
*Having learned the poem, he went out happy.*

***Partiti alle nove, essi arrivarono a mezzogiorno.***  
*Having left at nine, they arrived at noon.*

6. Direct, indirect (except *loro*), and reflexive pronouns are attached to the past participle used in an absolute construction. This, however, is not a frequent occurrence.

***Lavatesi le mani, incominciò a mangiare.***  
*Having washed his hands, he began to eat.*

7. The past participle used in compound tenses agrees with the preceding direct object, which may be a noun or a pronoun:

***La signorina che ho invitata.***  
*The young lady I invited.*

***Ho comprato i libri. Li ho comprati.***  
*I bought the books. I bought them.*

## § 46 The Conjugation of Verbs

The complete conjugation of a verb includes:

1. The indicative mood, which indicates certainty or reality, and which has eight tenses—four simple tenses and four compound tenses:

SIMPLE TENSES	COMPOUND TENSES
<b>presente</b> present	<b>passato prossimo</b> present perfect
<b>imperfetto</b> imperfect	<b>trapassato prossimo</b> pluperfect
<b>passato remoto</b> past definite	<b>trapassato remoto</b> past anterior
<b>futuro</b> future	<b>futuro anteriore</b> future perfect

2. The conditional mood, which expresses or implies a condition, and which has two tenses:

<b>presente</b> present	<b>passato</b> past
----------------------------	------------------------

3. The imperative, which expresses a command or exhortation, and which has only one tense.

NOTE: There is no imperative form for the first person singular (*io*).

4. The subjunctive mood, which is the mood of doubt, possibility, emotion, etc., and which has four tenses:

<b>presente</b> present	<b>passato</b> past
<b>imperfetto</b> imperfect	<b>trapassato</b> pluperfect

5. The infinitive, which has two forms:

<b>presente</b> present	<b>passato</b> past
----------------------------	------------------------

6. The participle, which has two forms:

<b>presente</b> present	<b>passato</b> past
----------------------------	------------------------

7. The gerund, which has two forms:

<b>presente</b> present	<b>passato</b> past
----------------------------	------------------------

## § 47 Conjugation of the Verbs *Essere* and *Avere*

Before discussing the uses of the different tenses let us first learn the complete conjugation of *avere* (to have) and *essere* (to be), which are the auxiliary verbs, and of the three regular conjugations.

Inasmuch as the singular forms for *lei* (you, polite), *egli* (he), *ella* (she), and the plural forms for *loro* (you, polite), *essi* (they, masc.) and *esse* (they, fem.) are the same, only one form will be given, except in the compound tenses of *essere*, where the past participle agrees with the subject.

**avere**  
to have

**essere**  
to be

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT

<b>io ho</b> I have, I am having, I do have	<b>io sono</b> I am
<b>tu hai</b> you have, you are having, you do have	<b>tu sei</b> you are
<b>egli ha</b> he has, he is having, he does have	<b>egli è</b> he is
<b>noi abbiamo</b> we have, we are having, we do have	<b>noi siamo</b> we are
<b>voi avete</b> you have, you are having, you do have	<b>voi siete</b> you are
<b>essi hanno</b> they have, they are having, they do have	<b>essi sono</b> they are

## PRESENT PERFECT

<b>io ho avuto</b> I had, I have had	<b>io sono stato (or stata)</b> I was, I have been
<b>tu hai avuto</b>	<b>tu sei stato (stata)</b>
<b>egli ha avuto</b>	<b>egli è stato</b> <b>ella è stata</b>
<b>noi abbiamo avuto</b>	<b>noi siamo stati (state)</b>
<b>voi avete avuto</b>	<b>voi siete stati (state)</b>
<b>essi hanno avuto</b>	<b>essi sono stati</b> <b>esse sono state</b>

## IMPERFECT

<b>io avevo</b> I had, I used to have, I was having	<b>io ero</b> I was, I used to be, I was being
<b>tu avevi</b>	<b>tu eri</b>
<b>egli aveva</b>	<b>egli era</b>
<b>noi avevamo</b>	<b>noi eravamo</b>
<b>voi avevate</b>	<b>voi eravate</b>
<b>essi avevano</b>	<b>essi erano</b>

## PLUPERFECT

<b>io avevo avuto</b>	<b>io ero stato (-a)</b>
<b>I had had</b>	<b>I had been</b>
<b>tu avevi avuto</b>	<b>tu eri stato (-a)</b>
<b>egli aveva avuto</b>	<b>egli era stato</b>
	<b>ella era stata</b>
<b>noi avevamo avuto</b>	<b>noi eravamo stati (-e)</b>
<b>voi avevate avuto</b>	<b>voi eravate stati (-e)</b>
<b>essi avevano avuto</b>	<b>essi erano stati</b>
	<b>esse erano state</b>

## PAST DEFINITE

<b>io ebbi</b>	<b>io fui</b>
<b>I had</b>	<b>I was</b>
<b>tu avesti</b>	<b>tu fosti</b>
<b>egli ebbe</b>	<b>egli fu</b>
<b>noi avemmo</b>	<b>noi fummo</b>
<b>voi aveste</b>	<b>voi foste</b>
<b>essi ebbero</b>	<b>essi furono</b>

## PAST ANTERIOR

<b>io ebbi avuto</b>	<b>io fui stato (-a)</b>
<b>I had had</b>	<b>I had been</b>
<b>tu avesti avuto</b>	<b>tu fosti stato (-o)</b>
<b>egli ebbe avuto</b>	<b>egli fu stato</b>
	<b>ella fu stata</b>
<b>noi avemmo avuto</b>	<b>noi fummo stati (-e)</b>
<b>voi aveste avuto</b>	<b>voi foste stati (-e)</b>
<b>essi ebbero avuto</b>	<b>essi furono stati</b>
	<b>esse furono state</b>

## FUTURE

<b>io avrò</b>	<b>io sarò</b>
<b>I will (or shall) have</b>	<b>I will (or shall) be</b>
<b>tu avrai</b>	<b>tu sarai</b>
<b>egli avrà</b>	<b>egli sarà</b>
<b>noi avremo</b>	<b>noi saremo</b>
<b>voi avrete</b>	<b>voi sarete</b>
<b>essi avranno</b>	<b>essi saranno</b>

## FUTURE PERFECT

<b>io avrò avuto</b>	<b>io sarò stato (-a)</b>
<b>I will (or shall) have had</b>	<b>I will (or shall) have been</b>
<b>tu avrai avuto</b>	<b>tu sarai stato (-a)</b>
<b>egli avrà avuto</b>	<b>egli sarà stato</b>
	<b>ella sarà stata</b>
<b>noi avremo avuto</b>	<b>noi saremo stati (-e)</b>
<b>voi avrete avuto</b>	<b>voi sarete stati (-e)</b>
<b>essi avranno avuto</b>	<b>essi saranno stati</b>
	<b>esse saranno state</b>

## CONDITIONAL MOOD

## PRESENT

<b>io avrei</b> I <i>would</i> (or <i>should</i> ) <i>have</i>	<b>io sarei</b> I <i>would</i> (or <i>should</i> ) <i>be</i>
<b>tu avresti</b>	<b>tu saresti</b>
<b>egli avrebbe</b>	<b>egli sarebbe</b>
<b>noi avremmo</b>	<b>noi saremmo</b>
<b>voi avreste</b>	<b>voi sareste</b>
<b>essi avrebbero</b>	<b>essi sarebbero</b>

## PAST

<b>io avrei avuto</b> I <i>would</i> (or <i>should</i> ) <i>have had</i>	<b>io sarei stato (-a)</b> I <i>would</i> (or <i>should</i> ) <i>have been</i>
<b>tu avresti avuto</b>	<b>tu saresti stato (-a)</b>
<b>egli avrebbe avuto</b>	<b>egli sarebbe stato</b>
	<b>ella sarebbe stata</b>
<b>noi avremmo avuto</b>	<b>noi saremmo stati (-e)</b>
<b>voi avreste avuto</b>	<b>voi sareste stati (-e)</b>
<b>essi avrebbero avuto</b>	<b>essi sarebbero stati</b>
	<b>esse sarebbero state</b>

## THE IMPERATIVE

<b>abbi (tu)</b> have	<b>sii</b> be
<b>abbia (lei, egli, ella)</b> have, let him have, let her have	<b>sia</b> be, let him be, let her be
<b>abbiamo (noi)</b> let us have	<b>siamo</b> let us be
<b>abbiate (voi)</b> have	<b>siate</b> be
<b>abbiano (loro, essi, esse)</b> have, let them have	<b>siano</b> be, let them be

NOTE: Normally the personal pronouns are not used in the imperative.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

## PRESENT

<b>che io abbia</b> I <i>have</i> , I <i>may have</i>	<b>che io sia</b> I <i>be</i> , I <i>may be</i>
<b>che tu abbia</b>	<b>che tu sia</b>
<b>che egli abbia</b>	<b>che egli sia</b>
<b>che noi abbiamo</b>	<b>che noi siamo</b>
<b>che voi abbiate</b>	<b>che voi siate</b>
<b>che essi abbiano</b>	<b>che essi siano</b>

## PAST

<b>che io abbia avuto</b> I <i>had</i> , I <i>might have</i>	<b>che io sia stato (-a)</b> I <i>have been</i> , I <i>may have been</i>
<b>che tu abbia avuto</b>	<b>che tu sia stato (-a)</b>

**che egli abbia avuto**

**che noi abbiamo avuto**  
**che voi abbiate avuto**  
**che essi abbiano avuto**

**che egli sia stato**  
**che ella sia stata**  
**che noi siamo stati (-e)**  
**che voi siate stati (-e)**  
**che essi siano stati**  
**che esse siano state**

**IMPERFECT**

**che io avessi**  
*I had, I might have*  
**che tu avessi**  
**che egli avesse**  
**che noi avessimo**  
**che voi aveste**  
**che essi avessero**

**che io fossi**  
*I was, I might be*  
**che tu fossi**  
**che egli fosse**  
**che noi fossimo**  
**che voi foste**  
**che essi fossero**

**PLUPERFECT**

**che io avessi avuto**  
*I had had, I might have had*  
**che tu avessi avuto**  
**che egli avesse avuto**

**che io fossi stato (-a)**  
*I had been, I might have been*  
**che tu fossi stato (-a)**  
**che egli fosse stato**  
**che ella fosse stata**  
**che noi fossimo stati (-e)**  
**che voi foste stati (-e)**  
**che essi fossero stati**  
**che esse fossero state**

- NOTES:** 1. The subjunctive is usually introduced by the word *che*.  
 2. The meanings given for the subjunctive are not complete. They can best be learned when the uses of the subjunctive are taken up.

**THE INFINITIVE**

**PRESENT**

**avere**  
 to have

**essere**  
 to be

**PAST**

**avere avuto**  
 to have had

**essere stato**  
 to have been

**THE PARTICIPLE**

**PRESENT**

**avente**  
 having

(missing)

**PAST**

**avuto**  
 had

**stato**  
 been

## THE GERUND

## PRESENT

avendo  
havingessendo  
being

## PAST

avendo avuto  
having hadessendo stato  
having been

## § 48 The First Conjugation

amare to love

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT

io *amo*  
I *love, I do love, I am loving*  
tu *ami*  
egli *ama*  
noi *amiamo*  
voi *amate*  
essi *amano*

## PRESENT PERFECT

io *ho amato*  
I *loved, I have loved*  
tu *hai amato*  
egli *ha amato*  
noi *abbiamo amato*  
voi *avete amato*  
essi *hanno amato*

## IMPERFECT

io *amavo*  
I *loved, I used to love, I*  
*was loving*  
tu *amavi*  
egli *amava*  
noi *amavamo*  
voi *amavate*  
essi *amavano*

## PLUPERFECT

io *avevo amato*  
I *had loved*  
tu *avevi amato*  
egli *aveva amato*  
noi *avevamo amato*  
voi *avevate amato*  
essi *avevano amato*

## PAST DEFINITE

io *amai*  
I *loved*  
tu *amasti*  
egli *amò*  
noi *amammo*  
voi *amaste*  
essi *amarono*

## PAST ANTERIOR

io *ebbi amato*  
I *had loved*  
tu *avesti amato*  
egli *ebbe amato*  
noi *avemmo amato*  
voi *aveste amato*  
essi *ebbero amato*

## FUTURE

io *amerò*  
I *will (or shall) love*  
tu *amerai*  
egli *amerà*  
noi *ameremo*  
voi *amerete*  
essi *ameranno*

## FUTURE PERFECT

io *avrò amato*  
I *will (or shall) have loved*  
tu *avrà amato*  
egli *avrà amato*  
noi *avremo amato*  
voi *avrete amato*  
essi *avranno amato*

## CONDITIONAL MOOD

PRESENT	PAST
<b>io amerei</b> <i>I would (or should) love</i>	<b>io avrei amato</b> <i>I would (or should) have loved</i>
<b>tu ameresti</b>	<b>tu avresti amato</b>
<b>egli amerebbe</b>	<b>egli avrebbe amato</b>
<b>noi ameremmo</b>	<b>noi avremmo amato</b>
<b>voi amereste</b>	<b>voi avreste amato</b>
<b>essi amerebbero</b>	<b>essi avrebbero amato</b>

## IMPERATIVE

<b>ama</b> love	<b>amiamo</b> let us love
<b>ami</b> love, let him love, let her love	<b>amate</b> love
	<b>amino</b> love, let them love

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT	PAST
<b>che io ami</b> <i>I love, I may love</i>	<b>che io abbia amato</b> <i>I have loved, I may have loved</i>
<b>che tu ami</b>	<b>che tu abbia amato</b>
<b>che egli ami</b>	<b>che egli abbia amato</b>
<b>che noi amiamo</b>	<b>che noi abbiamo amato</b>
<b>che voi amiate</b>	<b>che voi abbiate amato</b>
<b>che essi amino</b>	<b>che essi abbiano amato</b>
IMPERFECT	PLUPERFECT
<b>che io amassi</b> <i>I loved, I might love</i>	<b>che io avessi amato</b> <i>I had loved, I might have loved</i>
<b>che tu amassi</b>	<b>che tu avessi amato</b>
<b>che egli amasse</b>	<b>che egli avesse amato</b>
<b>che noi amassimo</b>	<b>che noi avessimo amato</b>
<b>che voi amaste</b>	<b>che voi aveste amato</b>
<b>che essi amassero</b>	<b>che essi avessero amato</b>

## THE INFINITIVE

PRESENT	PAST
<b>amare</b> to love	<b>avere amato</b> to have loved

## THE PARTICIPLE

PRESENT	PAST
<b>amante</b> loving, lover	<b>amato</b> loved



## THE GERUND

## PRESENT

**amando**  
loving

## PAST

**avendo amato**  
having loved

Verbs of the first conjugation have certain peculiarities:

1. Verbs which in the infinitive end in *-care* and *-gare* take an *h* between the stem and the ending when the ending is or begins with *e* or *i*.

## PRESENT

**cercare**  
to look for  
**io cerco**  
**tu cerchi**  
**egli cerca**  
**noi cerchiamo**  
**voi cercate**  
**essi cercano**

**pagare**  
to pay  
**io pago**  
**tu paghi**  
**egli paga**  
**noi paghiamo**  
**voi pagate**  
**essi pagano**

## FUTURE

**io cercherò**  
*I shall look for*  
**tu cercherai**  
**egli cercherà**  
**noi cercheremo**  
**voi cercherete**  
**essi cercheranno**

**io pagherò**  
*I shall pay*  
**tu pagherai**  
**egli pagherà**  
**noi pagheremo**  
**voi pagherete**  
**essi pagheranno**

## CONDITIONAL

**io cercherei**  
*I should look for*  
**tu cercheresti**  
**egli cercherebbe**  
**noi cercheremmo**  
**voi cerchereste**  
**essi cercherebbero**

**io pagherei**  
*I should pay*  
**tu pagheresti**  
**egli pagherebbe**  
**noi pagheremmo**  
**voi paghereste**  
**essi pagherebbero**

## IMPERATIVE

**cerca**  
look for  
**cerchi**  
**cerchiamo**  
**cercate**  
**cerchino**

**paga**  
pay  
**paghi**  
**paghiamo**  
**pagate**  
**paghino**

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

<b>che io cerchi</b> <i>I look for</i>	<b>che io paghi</b> <i>I may pay</i>
<b>che tu cerchi</b>	<b>che tu paghi</b>
<b>che egli cerchi</b>	<b>che egli paghi</b>
<b>che noi cerchiamo</b>	<b>che noi paghiamo</b>
<b>che voi cerchiate</b>	<b>che voi paghiate</b>
<b>che essi cerchino</b>	<b>che essi paghino</b>

2. Verbs which in the infinitive end in *-ciare* and *-giare* drop the *i* before *e* or *i*. This occurs in the *tu* and *noi* forms of the present indicative, in the *lei*, *noi*, and *loro* forms of the imperative, and the whole future, conditional, and present subjunctive tenses.

3. Other verbs which end in *-iare* drop the *i* only when the ending is or begins with *i*, except when in the first person singular of the present the stress falls on the *i*, as in *inviare* (to send) and *spiare* (to spy):

- Che cosa mi consigli?**  
*What do you advise me?*
- Perchè vi annoiate?**  
*Why are you bored?*
- Egli ti consiglierà di fare questo.**  
*He will advise you to do this.*

BUT:

- A chi invii questa lettera?**  
*To whom are you sending this letter?*

§ 49 The Second Conjugation

**temere** to fear

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT	PRESENT PERFECT
<b>io temo</b> <i>I fear, I do fear, I am fearing</i>	<b>io ho temuto</b> <i>I feared, I have feared</i>
<b>tu temi</b>	<b>tu hai temuto</b>
<b>egli teme</b>	<b>egli ha temuto</b>
<b>noi temiamo</b>	<b>noi abbiamo temuto</b>
<b>voi temete</b>	<b>voi avete temuto</b>
<b>essi temono</b>	<b>essi hanno temuto</b>
IMPERFECT	PLUPERFECT
<b>io temevo</b> <i>I feared, I used to fear, I was fearing</i>	<b>io avevo temuto</b> <i>I had feared</i>
<b>tu temevi</b>	<b>tu avevi temuto</b>
<b>egli temeva</b>	<b>egli aveva temuto</b>
<b>noi temevamo</b>	<b>noi avevamo temuto</b>
<b>voi temevate</b>	<b>voi avevate temuto</b>
<b>essi temevano</b>	<b>essi avevano temuto</b>

## PAST DEFINITE

io *temei* or *temetti*  
I *feared*  
tu *temesti*  
egli *temè* or *temette*  
noi *tememmo*  
voi *temeste*  
essi *temerono* or *temettero*

## PAST ANTERIOR

io *ebbi temuto*  
I *had feared*  
tu *avesti temuto*  
egli *ebbe temuto*  
noi *avemmo temuto*  
voi *aveste temuto*  
essi *ebbero temuto*

## FUTURE

io *temerò*  
I *will* (or *shall*) *fear*  
tu *temerai*  
egli *temerà*  
noi *temeremo*  
voi *temerete*  
essi *temeranno*

## FUTURE PERFECT

io *avrò temuto*  
I *will* (or *shall*) *have feared*  
tu *avrà temuto*  
egli *avrà temuto*  
noi *avremo temuto*  
voi *avrete temuto*  
essi *avranno temuto*

## CONDITIONAL MOOD

## PRESENT

io *temerei*  
I *would* (or *should*) *fear*  
tu *temeresti*  
egli *temerebbe*  
noi *temeremmo*  
voi *temereste*  
essi *temerebbero*

## PAST

io *avrei temuto*  
I *would* (or *should*) *have feared*  
tu *avresti temuto*  
egli *avrebbe temuto*  
noi *avremmo temuto*  
voi *avreste temuto*  
essi *avrebbero temuto*

## IMPERATIVE

*temi*  
fear  
*tema*  
fear, let him fear, let her  
fear

*temiamo*  
let us fear  
*temete*  
fear  
*temano*  
fear, let them fear

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

## PRESENT

che io *tema*  
I *fear*, I *may fear*  
che tu *tema*  
che egli *tema*  
che noi *temiamo*  
che voi *temiate*  
che essi *temano*

## PAST

che io *abbia temuto*  
I *have feared*, I *may have feared*  
che tu *abbia temuto*  
che egli *abbia temuto*  
che noi *abbiamo temuto*  
che voi *abbiate temuto*  
che essi *abbiano temuto*

IMPERFECT	PLUPERFECT
<b>che io temessi</b> <i>I feared, I might fear</i>	<b>che io avessi temuto</b> <i>I had feared, I might have feared</i>
<b>che tu temessi</b>	<b>che tu avessi temuto</b>
<b>che egli temesse</b>	<b>che egli avesse temuto</b>
<b>che noi temessimo</b>	<b>che noi avessimo temuto</b>
<b>che voi temeste</b>	<b>che voi aveste temuto</b>
<b>che essi temessero</b>	<b>che essi avessero temuto</b>

THE INFINITIVE

PRESENT	PAST
<b>temere</b> <i>to fear</i>	<b>avere temuto</b> <i>to have feared</i>

THE PARTICIPLE

PRESENT	PAST
<b>temente</b> <i>fearing</i>	<b>temuto</b> <i>feared</i>

THE GERUND

PRESENT	PAST
<b>temendo</b> <i>fearing</i>	<b>avendo temuto</b> <i>having feared</i>

§ 50 The Third Conjugation

The third conjugation verbs are of two kinds: the normal ones, like *dormire* (to sleep), and the *-isco* verbs, like *finire* (to finish). The *-isco* verbs have this peculiarity: in the singular and in the third person plural of the present indicative, imperative, and present subjunctive they take *-isc* between the stem of the verb and the ending. You can identify a verb as an *-isco* verb if only one consonant precedes the infinitive ending *-ire*. If two or more consonants precede the infinitive ending *-ire* then it is not an *-isco* verb. There are exceptions, however.

	<b>finire</b>	<i>to finish</i>
	PRESENT INDICATIVE	
<b>io finisco</b> <i>I finish, I do finish, I am finishing</i>	<b>noi finiamo</b>	
<b>tu finisci</b>	<b>voi finite</b>	
<b>egli finisce</b>	<b>essi finiscono</b>	
	IMPERATIVE	
<b>finisci</b> <i>finish</i>	<b>finiamo</b> <i>let us finish</i>	
<b>finisca</b> <i>let him finish, let her finish</i>	<b>finite</b> <i>finish</i>	
	<b>finiscano</b> <i>let them finish</i>	

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**che io finisca**  
 I finish, I may finish  
**che tu finisca**  
**che egli finisca**

**che noi finiamo**  
**che voi finiate**  
**che essi finiscano**

In all the other tenses the *-isco* verbs follow the pattern of *dormire*.

**dormire** to sleep

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT

**io dormo**  
 I sleep, I do sleep, I am  
 sleeping  
**tu dormi**  
**egli dorme**  
**noi dormiamo**  
**voi dormite**  
**essi dormono**

## PRESENT PERFECT

**io ho dormito**  
 I slept, I have slept  
**tu hai dormito**  
**egli ha dormito**  
**noi abbiamo dormito**  
**voi avete dormito**  
**essi hanno dormito**

## IMPERFECT

**io dormivo**  
 I slept, I used to sleep, I was  
 sleeping  
**tu dormivi**  
**egli dormiva**  
**noi dormivamo**  
**voi dormivate**  
**essi dormivano**

## PLUPERFECT

**io avevo dormito**  
 I had slept  
**tu avevi dormito**  
**egli aveva dormito**  
**noi avevamo dormito**  
**voi avevate dormito**  
**essi avevano dormito**

## PAST DEFINITE

**io dormii**  
 I slept  
**tu dormisti**  
**egli dormì**  
**noi dormimmo**  
**voi dormiste**  
**essi dormirono**

## PAST ANTERIOR

**io ebbi dormito**  
 I had slept  
**tu avesti dormito**  
**egli ebbe dormito**  
**noi avemmo dormito**  
**voi aveste dormito**  
**essi ebbero dormito**

## FUTURE

**io dormirò**  
 I will (or shall) sleep  
**tu dormirai**  
**egli dormirà**  
**noi dormiremo**  
**voi dormirete**  
**essi dormiranno**

## FUTURE PERFECT

**io avrò dormito**  
 I will (or shall) have slept  
**tu avrai dormito**  
**egli avrà dormito**  
**noi avremo dormito**  
**voi avrete dormito**  
**essi avranno dormito**

CONDITIONAL MOOD

PRESENT	PAST
<b>io dormirei</b> <i>I would (or should) sleep</i>	<b>io avrei dormito</b> <i>I would (or should) have slept</i>
<b>tu dormiresti</b>	<b>tu avresti dormito</b>
<b>egli dormirebbe</b>	<b>egli avrebbe dormito</b>
<b>noi dormiremmo</b>	<b>noi avremmo dormito</b>
<b>voi dormireste</b>	<b>voi avreste dormito</b>
<b>essi dormirebbero</b>	<b>essi avrebbero dormito</b>

IMPERATIVE

<b>dormi</b> sleep	<b>dormiamo</b> let us sleep
<b>dorma</b> sleep, let him sleep, let her sleep	<b>dormite</b> sleep
	<b>dormano</b> sleep, let them sleep

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT	PAST
<b>che io dorma</b> <i>I sleep, I may sleep</i>	<b>che io abbia dormito</b> <i>I have slept, I may have slept</i>
<b>che tu dorma</b>	<b>che tu abbia dormito</b>
<b>che egli dorma</b>	<b>che egli abbia dormito</b>
<b>che noi dormiamo</b>	<b>che noi abbiamo dormito</b>
<b>che voi dormiate</b>	<b>che voi abbiate dormito</b>
<b>che essi dormano</b>	<b>che essi abbiano dormito</b>
IMPERFECT	PLUPERFECT
<b>che io dormissi</b> <i>I slept, I might sleep</i>	<b>che io avessi dormito</b> <i>I had slept, I might have slept</i>
<b>che tu dormissi</b>	<b>che tu avessi dormito</b>
<b>che egli dormisse</b>	<b>che egli avesse dormito</b>
<b>che noi dormissimo</b>	<b>che noi avessimo dormito</b>
<b>che voi dormiste</b>	<b>che voi aveste dormito</b>
<b>che essi dormissero</b>	<b>che essi avessero dormito</b>

THE INFINITIVE

PRESENT	PAST
<b>dormire</b> to sleep	<b>avere dormito</b> to have slept

THE PARTICIPLE

PRESENT	PAST
<b>dormente</b> sleeping	<b>dormito</b> slept

THE GERUND

PRESENT	PAST
<b>dormendo</b> sleeping	<b>avendo dormito</b> having slept

§ 51    Verbs with the Auxiliary *Essere*

1. The great majority of Italian verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avere* in the compound tenses. However, there are several important verbs which take the auxiliary verb *essere*. The most common of these verbs are:

<b>andare</b> to go	<b>arrivare or</b> <b>giungere</b> to arrive	<b>essere</b> to be
<b>venire</b> to come	<b>ritornare</b> to return	<b>salire</b> to climb, to go up
<b>entrare</b> to enter	<b>diventare</b> to become	<b>scendere</b> to descend, to go down
<b>uscire</b> to go out	<b>nascere</b> to be born	<b>rimanere</b> to remain
<b>cadere</b> to fall	<b>morire</b> to die	<b>restare</b> to remain
<b>partire</b> to leave		

NOTES: a. *Morire* is commonly used only in the third person:

**La povera vecchia è morta ieri.**  
The poor old lady died yesterday.

b. *Salire* and *scendere* take the auxiliary verb *avere* if they have a direct object:

**Ho salito le scale lentamente.**  
I climbed the stairs slowly.

BUT:

**Sono salito lentamente.**  
I climbed slowly.

2. Reflexive verbs take the auxiliary *essere* [See § 52].

3. Verbs used in the passive voice take the auxiliary *essere*:

**Questa canzone è conosciuta dappertutto.**  
This song is known everywhere.

NOTE: The passive voice is used rather infrequently in Italian. More often than not the impersonal expression is used instead when no subject is mentioned. Thus the above example would be written:

**Questa canzone si conosce dappertutto.**

4. Impersonal verbs (used only in the third person singular) take the auxiliary *essere*:

**È necessario fare questo.**  
It is necessary to do this.

**Era impossibile partire a quell'ora.**  
It was impossible to leave at that hour.

However, most impersonal expressions denoting meteorological facts may take either *essere* or *avere*:

**È piovuto (or ha piovuto) tutta la notte.**  
It rained the whole night.

5. The past participle of verbs conjugated with *essere* agrees in gender and number with the subject:

Esse sono *andate* a casa.  
They went home.

I ragazzi si sono *divertiti*.  
The children enjoyed themselves.

Maria è *arrivata* questa mattina.  
Mary arrived this morning.

Quando è *nato* questo ragazzo?  
When was this boy *born*?

6. Here is the complete conjugation of the compound tenses of *andare*, one of the verbs that takes the auxiliary *essere*:

## PRESENT PERFECT

io *sono andato (-a)*  
I *went, I have gone*  
tu *sei andato (-a)*  
lei *è andato (-a)*  
egli *è andato*  
ella *è andata*  
noi *siamo andati (-e)*  
voi *siete andati (-e)*  
loro *sono andati (-e)*  
essi *sono andati*  
esse *sono andate*

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE

io *ero andato (-a)*  
I *had gone*  
tu *eri andato (-a)*  
lei *era andato (-a)*  
egli *era andato*  
ella *era andata*  
noi *eravamo andati (-e)*  
voi *eravate andati (-e)*  
loro *erano andati (-e)*  
essi *erano andati*  
esse *erano andate*

## PAST ANTERIOR

io *fui andato (-a)*  
I *had gone*  
tu *fosti andato (-a)*  
lei *fu andato (-a)*  
egli *fu andato*  
ella *fu andata*  
noi *fummo andati (-e)*  
voi *foste andati (-e)*  
loro *furono andati (-e)*  
essi *furono andati*  
esse *furono andate*

## FUTURE PERFECT

io *sarò andato (-a)*  
I *shall have gone*  
tu *sarai andato (-a)*  
lei *sarà andato (-a)*  
egli *sarà andato*  
ella *sarà andata*  
noi *saremo andati (-e)*  
voi *sarete andati (-e)*  
loro *saranno andati (-e)*  
essi *saranno andati*  
esse *saranno andate*

## PAST CONDITIONAL

io <i>sarei andato (-a)</i> I <i>would (or should) have gone</i>	noi <i>saremmo andati (-e)</i>
tu <i>saresti andato (-a)</i>	voi <i>sareste andati (-e)</i>
lei <i>sarebbe andato (-a)</i>	loro <i>sarebbero andati (-a)</i>
egli <i>sarebbe andato</i>	essi <i>sarebbero andati</i>
ella <i>sarebbe andata</i>	esse <i>sarebbero andate</i>



## PAST SUBJUNCTIVE

che io *sia andato* (-a)  
that I *have gone*, that I *may*  
*have gone*

che tu *sia andato* (-a)

che lei *sia andato* (-a)

che egli *sia andato*

che ella *sia andata*

che noi *siamo andati* (-e)

che voi *siate andati* (-e)

che loro *siano andati* (-e)

che essi *siano andati*

che esse *siano andate*

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

che io *fossi andato* (-a)  
that I *had gone*, that I *might have gone*

che tu *fossi andato* (-a)

che lei *fosse andato* (-a)

che egli *fosse andato*

che ella *fosse andata*

che noi *fossimo andati* (-e)

che voi *foste andati* (-e)

che loro *fossero andati* (-e)

che essi *fossero andati*

che esse *fossero andate*

## PAST INFINITIVE

*essere andato*  
to have gone

## PAST GERUND

*essendo andato*  
having gone

## § 52 The Reflexive Verbs

1. The infinitive of reflexive verbs in Italian ends in *-si*: *lavarsi* (to wash oneself), *sedersi* (to sit), *pentirsi* (to repent).

2. A reflexive verb is conjugated like any active verb. Each verb form, however, must be preceded by the reflexive pronoun (except as explained in 5 below):

io *mi lavo*  
I wash *myself*

tu *ti lavi*

lei *si lava*

egli *si lava*

ella *si lava*

noi *ci laviamo*

voi *vi lavate*

loro *si lavano*

essi *si lavano*

esse *si lavano*

3. In the compound tenses reflexive verbs take the auxiliary *essere*, and the past participle agrees with the subject, unless it is followed by a direct object:

io *mi sono lavato* (-a)  
I have washed *myself*

tu *ti sei lavato* (-a)

lei *si è lavato* (-a)

egli *si è lavato*

ella *si è lavata*

noi *ci siamo lavati* (-e)

voi *vi siete lavati* (-e)

loro *si sono lavati* (-e)

essi *si sono lavati*

esse *si sono lavate*

4. When a reflexive verb is followed by a direct object the past participle agrees with the direct object:

Io *mi sono lavate* le mani.  
I washed my hands.

5. The reflexive pronouns are attached to the *tu*, *noi*, and *voi* forms of the affirmative imperative, to the infinitive, to the past participle when used alone, and to the gerund:

**Alzati, Carlo.**

Get up, Charles.

**Alziamoci insieme.**

Let's get up together.

**Alzatevi presto.**

Get up early.

**Alzatosi, prese il cappello ed uscì.**

After he got up he took his hat and went out.

**Alzandomi di buon'ora io riesco a fare molto lavoro.**

By getting up early I succeed in doing a great deal of work.

**Essendosi alzato incominciò subito a lavorare.**

Having gotten up he quickly began to work.

6. The reflexive pronouns *mi*, *ti*, *si*, *ci*, and *vi* become *me*, *te*, *se*, *ce*, and *ve* when used in combination with another pronoun [See § 29 ]:

**Io mi sono lavate le mani; io me le sono lavate.**

I washed my hands; I washed them.

**Egli si è pentito di ciò che ha fatto; egli se n'è pentito.**

He has repented for what he did; he repented for it.

7. Many reflexive verbs in Italian are not reflexive in English. Here is a list of some of the most common Italian reflexive verbs:

<b>accontentarsi di</b> to be satisfied	<b>coricarsi</b> to go to bed	<b>raffreddarsi</b> to get cold, to catch a cold
<b>abituarsi</b> to get accustomed	<b>divertirsi</b> to enjoy oneself, to have a good time	<b>rallegrarsi</b> to rejoice
<b>addormentarsi</b> to fall asleep	<b>fermarsi</b> to stop	<b>ricordarsi</b> to remember
<b>affrettarsi</b> to hurry	<b>fidarsi</b> to trust	<b> sbagliarsi</b> to be mistaken
<b>allontanarsi</b> to move away	<b>innamorarsi</b> to fall in love	<b>scusarsi</b> to excuse oneself
<b>alzarsi</b> to get up, to rise	<b>ingannarsi</b> to be mistaken	<b>sedersi</b> to sit
<b>annoiarsi</b> to feel annoyed, bored	<b>lavarsi</b> to wash oneself	<b>sentirsi bene</b> to feel well
<b>arrabbiarsi</b> to get angry	<b>lamentarsi</b> to complain	<b>spaventarsi</b> to be frightened
<b>asciugarsi</b> to dry oneself	<b>meravigliarsi</b> to wonder	<b>spogliarsi</b> to undress
<b>avvicinarsi</b> to approach	<b>mettersi a</b> to start, to begin	<b>svegliarsi</b> to wake up
<b>bagnarsi</b> to get wet, bathe	<b>pentirsi</b> to repent	<b>vergognarsi</b> to be ashamed
<b>chiamarsi</b> to be called	<b>pettinarsi</b> to comb (oneself)	<b>vestirsi</b> to dress
	<b>radarsi</b> to shave (oneself)	<b>voltarsi</b> to turn (oneself)

## § 53 Impersonal Verbs

1. Impersonal verbs are so called because they have no definite subject. Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular. Impersonal verbs express a fact, a phenomenon, or a condition. In English the subject of an impersonal verb is "it."

2. Several impersonal expressions refer to weather conditions. Here are the most common:

<b>fa bel tempo</b> the weather is fine	<b>lampeggia</b> it is lightning
<b>fa cattivo (or mal) tempo</b> the weather is bad	<b>gela</b> it is freezing
<b>fa caldo</b> it is hot or warm	<b>grandina</b> it is hailing
<b>fa freddo</b> it is cold	<b>tira vento</b> it is windy
<b>fa fresco</b> it is cool	<b>si scivola</b> it is slippery
<b>piove</b> it is raining	<b>c'è fango</b> it is muddy
<b>neveca</b> it is snowing	<b>c'è umidità</b> it is damp, humid
<b>tuona</b> it is thundering	

3. Of the above expressions, those with *fare* take the auxiliary *avere* in the compound tenses; the others may take either *avere* or *essere*:

**Ha fatto freddo.**  
It has been cold.

**Ha piovuto or è piovuto.**  
It has rained.

**Ha nevicato or è nevicato.**  
It has snowed.

*C'è fango* and *c'è umidità*, of course, have the verb *essere*.

4. There are many other impersonal verbs. Here is a partial list of the most common ones. All of these take *essere* in the compound tenses.

<b>accade</b> it happens	<b>basta</b> it is enough	<b>è meglio</b> it is better
<b>bisogna</b> it is necessary	<b>occorre</b> it is required	<b>è certo</b> it is certain
<b>importa</b> it matters	<b>vale la pena</b> it is worth while	<b>è impossibile</b> it is impossible
<b>conviene</b> it is proper, fitting	<b>è necessario</b> it is necessary	<b>è giusto</b> it is right
<b>piace</b> it is pleasing	<b>è possibile</b> it is possible	<b>è tempo</b> it is time
<b>sembra</b> it seems	<b>è probabile</b> it is probable	<b>è evidente</b> it is evident

## § 54 The Present Indicative Tense

1. The present indicative of regular verbs is formed as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION: Drop *-are* and add: *-o, -i, -a, -iamo, -ate, -ano*  
[See § 48]

*parlare io parlo*

SECOND CONJUGATION: Drop *-ere* and add: *-o, -i, -e, -iamo, -ete, -ono* [See § 49]

*perdere io perdo*

THIRD CONJUGATION: Drop *-ire* and add: *-o, -i, -e, -iamo, -ite, -ono*  
[See § 50]

*dormire io dormo*

2. The present indicative in Italian is used to express the three forms of the English present:

*Io compro il giornale.* { *I buy* the newspaper. (Habitual Present)  
                                  { *I do buy* the newspaper. (Emphatic Present)  
                                  { *I am buying* the newspaper. (Progressive Present)

3. However, there is a progressive present in Italian also. It is formed by using a form of the verb
- stare*
- before the present gerund of the desired verb. This progressive present is used mostly for emphasis:

*Io sto leggendo il giornale.*

*I am reading the newspaper.*

*Il babbo stava scrivendo una lettera.*

*Dad was writing a letter.*

4. In addition to its normal function, the present tense is used in Italian to indicate an action begun in the past but continuing in the present.

*Io aspetto da un'ora.*

*I have been waiting for an hour.*

*Da quanto tempo sei qui?*

*How long have you been here?*

## § 55 The Present Perfect Tense

1. The present perfect is formed by the present indicative of the auxiliary verb and the past participle of the desired verb. The past participle of regular verbs is formed as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION: Drop *-are* and add *-ato*

*parlare io ho parlato*

SECOND CONJUGATION: Drop *-ere* and add *-uto*

*perdere io ho perduto*

THIRD CONJUGATION: Drop *-ire* and add *-ito*

*dormire io ho dormito*

2. The present perfect is used to express an action that took place recently or within a period of time not yet completed, such as this week, this month, this season, this year, this century.

**Egli ha comprato un'automobile.**  
He bought a car (recently, understood).

**Quest'anno ho guadagnato poco.**  
This year I earned little.

3. With such expressions as *ieri* (yesterday), *la settimana scorsa* (last week), and *il mese scorso* (last month), the past definite may be used, but in common usage the present perfect is preferred:

**La settimana scorsa siamo andati (or andammo) in campagna.**  
Last week we went to the country.

4. Although all the important irregular verbs are listed in the table of irregular verbs, the student ought to familiarize himself with the present perfect of the most common irregular verbs, here listed:

<b>bere</b> to drink <b>io ho bevuto</b>	<b>essere</b> to be <b>io sono stato</b>	<b>rompere</b> to break <b>io ho rotto</b>
<b>aprire</b> to open <b>io ho aperto</b>	<b>fare</b> to do, make <b>io ho fatto</b>	<b>scegliere</b> to select <b>io ho scelto</b>
<b>apprendere</b> to learn <b>io ho appreso</b>	<b>leggere</b> to read <b>io ho letto</b>	<b>scendere</b> to descend, go down <b>io sono sceso</b>
<b>chiudere</b> to close <b>io ho chiuso</b>	<b>mettere</b> to put <b>io ho messo</b>	<b>scrivere</b> to write <b>io ho scritto</b>
<b>coprire</b> to cover <b>io ho coperto</b>	<b>offendere</b> to offend <b>io ho offeso</b>	<b>spendere</b> to spend <b>io ho speso</b>
<b>correggere</b> to correct <b>io ho corretto</b>	<b>offrire</b> to offer <b>io ho offerto</b>	<b>tradurre</b> to translate <b>io ho tradotto</b>
<b>decidere</b> to decide <b>io ho deciso</b>	<b>prendere</b> to take <b>io ho preso</b>	<b>vedere</b> to see <b>io ho visto</b>
<b>dire</b> to say, tell <b>io ho detto</b>	<b>ridere</b> to laugh <b>io ho riso</b>	<b>vincere</b> to win <b>io ho vinto</b>
<b>dividere</b> to divide <b>io ho diviso</b>	<b>rispondere</b> to answer <b>io ho risposto</b>	

## § 56 The Past Definite Tense

1. The past definite of regular verbs is formed as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION: Drop *-are* and add: *-ai, -asti, -ò, -ammo, -aste, -arono* [See § 48]

**parlare io parlai**

**SECOND CONJUGATION:** Drop *ere* and add: *-ei, -esti, -è, -emmo, -este, erono* [See § 49]

*perdere io perdei*

**THIRD CONJUGATION:** Drop *ire* and add: *-ii, -isti, -ì, -immo, -iste, -irono* [See § 50]

*dormire io dormii*

2. The past definite is used to express an action which took place long ago, in narratives, and in expressions indicating elapsed time, such as *l'anno scorso* (last year), *due anni fa* (two years ago), etc.

**I soldati attaccarono la fortezza.**

The soldiers attacked the fortress (a considerable lapse of time understood)

**Cinque anni fa comprai una casa.**

Five years ago I bought a house.

The past definite *is not used* when the verb expresses:

- a. a continued action in the past.
- b. a habitual or customary action in the past.
- c. a description in the past [See §58 below].

## § 57 The Past Anterior Tense

1. The past anterior is formed by the past definite of the auxiliary verb and the past participle of the desired verb [See § 48, 49, 50].

2. The past anterior is used to express something that *had happened*, usually after the words *appena* (as soon as), *quando* (when), and *dopo* (after). Otherwise the pluperfect is used in preference to this tense.

**Dopo che ebbi finito il lavoro egli mi pagò.**

After I *had finished* the work he paid me.

**Appena essi furono partiti noi andammo a letto.**

As soon as they *had left* we went to bed.

## § 58 The Imperfect Indicative Tense

1. The imperfect indicative of regular verbs is formed as follows:

**FIRST CONJUGATION:** Drop *-are* and add: *-avo, -avi, -ava, -avamo, -avate, -avano* [See § 48]

*parlare io parlavo*

**SECOND CONJUGATION:** Drop *-ere* and add: *-evo, -evi, -eva, -evamo, -evate, -evano* [See § 49]

*perdere io perdevo*

**THIRD CONJUGATION:** Drop *-ire* and add: *-ivo, -ivi, -iva, -ivamo, -ivate, -ivano* [See § 50]

*dormire io dormivo*

## 2. The imperfect is used:

## a. To indicate an incomplete or continuing action in the past:

**Il professore spiegava la lezione.**

The professor *was explaining* the lesson.

**A quell'epoca l'Italia non era una nazione unita.**

At that time Italy *was not* a united nation.

**Io suonavo il pianoforte mentre ella cantava.**

I *played* (or *was playing*) the piano while she *sang* (or *was singing*).

b. To express customary, habitual, or continually recurring actions. These notions are usually conveyed in English by the phrase "used to" or "kept (doing)." Even though a different form of the verb may be used in English, the imperfect must be used in Italian if the phrase "used to" or "kept (doing)" can be substituted:

**Io mi alzavo alle sette ogni mattina.**     $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I got up at seven o'clock every morning.} \\ \text{I used to get up at seven o'clock every morning.} \\ \text{I would get up at seven o'clock every morning.} \end{array} \right.$

NOTE: "Would" is the characteristic word of the conditional. However, if it means "used to," the imperfect must be used, not the conditional.

c. In description in the past, no matter what tense is used in English:

**Tutti gli alberi erano in fiore.**

All the trees *were* in bloom.

**Il castello dominava il villaggio.**

The castle *overlooked* the village.

**Quando ero bambino avevo i capelli biondi.**

When I *was* a child I *had* blond hair.

## § 59 The Pluperfect Indicative Tense

1. The pluperfect is formed by the imperfect of the auxiliary verb and the past participle of the desired verb [See § 48, § 49, § 50].

2. The pluperfect in Italian has the same function as the pluperfect in English and presents no problem in translation. It expresses something that *had happened*, the same as the past anterior [See § 57 above].

**La moglie aveva parlato troppo.**

The wife *had spoken* too much.

**Esse erano arrivate prima di noi.**

They *had arrived* before us.

## § 60 The Future Tense

1. The future of regular verbs is formed as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION: Drop *-are* and add: *-erò, -erai, -erà, -eremo, -erete, -eranno* [See § 48]

**parlare    io parlerò**

SECOND CONJUGATION: Drop *-ere* and add: *-erò, -erai, -erà, -eremo, -erete, -eranno* [See §49]

*perdere io perderò*

THIRD CONJUGATION: Drop *-ire* and add: *-irò, -irai, -irà, -iremo, -irete, -iranno* [See § 50]

*dormire io dormirò*

2. The future is used to express an action that will happen at some future time:

*Essi partiranno domani sera.*  
They will leave tomorrow night.

3. The future is also used after the words *se* (if), *quando* (when), and *appena* (as soon as) when a future action is implied, even though in English the present is used:

*Noi pranzeremo appena il babbo verrà.*  
We shall have dinner as soon as dad comes.

*Quando leggerai il libro vedrai che ho ragione.*  
When you read the book you will see that I am right.

*Se lei canterà io suonerò il violino.*  
If you sing I shall play the violin.

4. The future is also used to express probability in the speaker's mind:

*Ella sarà ammalata.*  
She is probably ill.

5. The expression "to be about to" is translated by *stare per*:

*Io stavo per uscire.*  
I was about to go out.

6. All the important irregular verbs are listed and conjugated in the table of irregular verbs. However, the student ought to familiarize himself with the future of the most common irregular verbs, here listed:

**andare**

to go

**andrò, andrai, andrà, andremo, andrete, andranno**

**avere**

to have

**avrò, avrai, avrà, avremo, avrete, avranno**

**bere**

to drink

**berrò, berrai, berrà, berremo, berrete, berranno**

**dare**

to give

**darò, darai, darà, daremo, darete, daranno**

**dire**

to say, tell

**dirò, dirai, dirà, diremo, direte, diranno**



**dovere**  
to have to, must  
**dovrò, dovrai, dovrà, dovremo, dovrete, dovranno**

**essere**  
to be  
**sarò, sarai, sarà, saremo, sarete, saranno**

**fare**  
to do, make  
**farò, farai, farà, faremo, farete, faranno**

**potere**  
to be able to, may, can  
**potrò, potrai, potrà, potremo, potrete, potranno**

**rimanere**  
to remain  
**rimarrò, rimarrai, rimarrà, rimarremo, rimarrete, rimarranno**

**sapere**  
to know  
**saprò, saprai, saprà, sapremo, saprete, sapranno**

**stare**  
to stay  
**starò, starai, starà, staremo, starete, staranno**

**tenere**  
to hold  
**terrò, terrai, terrà, terremo, terrete, terranno**

**vedere**  
to see  
**vedrò, vedrai, vedrà, vedremo, vedrete, vedranno**

**venire**  
to come  
**verrò, verrai, verrà, verremo, verrete, verranno**

**volere**  
to want  
**vorrò, vorrai, vorrà, vorremo, vorrete, vorranno**

## § 61    The Future Perfect Tense

1. The future perfect is formed by the future of the auxiliary verb and the past participle of the desired verb [See § 48, § 49, § 50].
2. The rules for the use of the future perfect are the same as those given for the use of the future:

**Uscirò dopo che avrò finito di mangiare.**  
I shall go out after I (shall) have finished eating.

**Ella sarà stata ammalata.**  
She has probably been ill.



**Voi avreste dovuto studiare di più.**  
 You should (ought to) have studied more.

## § 64 The Imperative Mood

1. The first person singular of the imperative does not exist. You cannot reasonably give yourself a command.
2. The *tu*, *lei*, *noi*, *voi*, and *loro* forms of the imperative express direct command, whereas the *egli*, *ella*, *essi*, and *esse* forms express indirect commands.
3. The imperative of regular verbs is formed as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION: Drop *-are* and add: *-a*, *-i*, *-iamo*, *-ate*, *-ino*  
 [See § 48]

**parlare parla**

SECOND CONJUGATION: Drop *-ere* and add: *-i*, *-a*, *-iamo*, *-ete*, *-ano*  
 [See § 49]

**perdere perdi**

THIRD CONJUGATION: Drop *-ire* and add: *-i*, *-a*, *-iamo*, *-ite*, *-ano*  
 [See § 50]

**dormire dormi**

4. The personal pronouns are usually omitted in the imperative.
5. The negative forms (*non* before the verb) of the imperative are the same as the positive forms except the *tu* form, in which case the infinitive is used instead.

**Carlo, mangia la carne.**  
 Charles, eat the meat.

**Carlo, non mangiare la carne.**  
 Charles, don't eat the meat.

**BUT:**

**Ragazzi, mangiate la carne.**  
 Children, eat the meat.

**Ragazzi, non mangiate la carne.**  
 Children, don't eat the meat.

6. The *noi* form of the imperative is translated by "let us (let's)".  
**Andiamo in campagna.**  
*Let's go to the country.*
7. The *egli*, *ella*, *essi*, and *esse* forms of the imperative are translated by "let him, let her, let them."

**Consulti un avvocato.**  
*Let him (her) consult a lawyer.*

**Vendano la casa.**  
*Let them sell the house.*

## § 65 The Subjunctive Mood

The subjunctive mood in Italian is used in dependent clauses in which action is presented as a possibility and not as a fact. The tenses of the subjunctive are the present, past or perfect, imperfect, and pluperfect.

### 1. *Uses of the Subjunctive*

The subjunctive is always used in a subordinate clause. It is the verb in the main clause that determines whether the verb in the subordinate clause should be subjunctive or not. The subjunctive must be used when the verb in the main clause is one of:

#### a. *Volition, Wishing, Desiring, Ordering:*

**Egli vuole che io compri questo libro.**  
He wants me to buy this book.

**Io desidero che voi impariate questa lezione.**  
I want you to learn this lesson.

**Il generale ordina che i soldati avanzino.**  
The general orders that the soldiers advance.

#### b. *Doubt, Supposition, Hope, Belief:*

**Io dubito che Giovanni venga.**  
I doubt that John is coming.

**Crede lei che ella sia qui?**  
Do you think she is here?

**Spero che ella parli allo zio.**  
I hope she will speak to (her) uncle.

**Suppongo che egli canti bene.**  
I suppose he sings well.

#### c. *Emotion, such as wonder, fear, personal feeling:*

**Mi dispiace che ella non sia qui.**  
I am sorry she is not here.

**Egli teme che tu non finisca il lavoro.**  
He is afraid that you will not finish the work.

**Ella è felice che io le scriva ogni giorno.**  
She is happy that I write to her every day.

#### d. The subjunctive is also used after impersonal expressions, except those which express certainty:

**È necessario che inviti anche il fratello.**  
It is necessary for you to invite the brother also.

**È possibile che essi non capiscano l'italiano.**  
It is possible that they do not understand Italian.

**È probabile che vengano anch'essi.**  
It is probable that they too will come.

**È meglio che tu spedisca la lettera ora stesso.**  
It is better that you send the letter right now.

**BUT:**

**È evidente che ella non capisce questa lingua.**  
It is evident that she does not understand this language.

**È certo che egli non lavora.**  
*It is certain that he is not working.*

e. The subjunctive is used after an indefinite antecedent (that is, when the verb of the dependent clause refers to some person or thing which is not definite, certain or attained) and after such indefinite words as:

chiunque whoever	chechè whatever
qualunque whichever	qualsiasi cosa whatever
dovunque wherever	nessuno no one

**Qui non c'è nessuno che capisca l'italiano.**  
*There is no one here who understands Italian.*

**Dovunque egli vada c'è sempre qualcuno che lo conosce.**  
*Wherever he goes there is always someone who knows him.*

**Chechè egli dica, non gli rispondere.**  
*Whatever he says, don't answer him.*

**Voglio comprare una casa che non costi troppo.**  
*I want to buy a house that does not cost too much.*

Notice that in the last example, I have not bought the house yet, therefore *una casa* is an indefinite antecedent.

But:

**Ecco una casa che non costa troppo.**  
*Here is a house that does not cost too much.*

Now the house is no longer indefinite, therefore no subjunctive is used.

f. The subjunctive is used after a relative superlative and after these words:

il primo the first	il solo the only
l'ultimo the last	l'unico the only

These words have the force of a superlative.

**Egli è il più ricco uomo che ci sia al mondo.**  
*He is the richest man (that there is) in the world.*

**Questo è il libro più vecchio che io abbia.**  
*This is the oldest book I have.*

**Ella è l'unica ragazza che io ami.**  
*She is the only girl I love.*

**Carlo e Maria sono i soli che abbiano capito quello che egli ha detto.**

*Charles and Mary are the only ones who understood what he said.*

g. The subjunctive is used after adverbial expressions of time, purpose, condition, negation such as:

prima che before	a meno che unless	finchè until
---------------------	----------------------	-----------------

<b>affinchè</b> in order that	<b>a patto che</b> on condition that	<b>in caso che</b> in case
<b>di modo che</b> so that	<b>benchè</b> although	<b>se mai</b> in case
<b>senza che</b> without	<b>sebbene</b> although	<b>perchè</b> in order that, so that
<b>purchè</b> provided that		

**Voglio vederlo *prima che vada via.***  
I want to see him *before he goes away.*

**Sebbene egli *sia ricco, non è felice.***  
*Although he is rich he is not happy.*

**Verrò *purchè venga anche tu.***  
I will come *provided you come too.*

**h.** The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is used in *if* clauses which express a condition contrary to fact.

**Se io *avessi* denaro farei quel viaggio.**  
If I *had* money I would take that trip.

(The implication is that I don't have the money, therefore a condition contrary to fact exists. Keep in mind that the verb of the main clause is in the conditional).

**NOTE:** The subjunctive is not used in simple conditions:

**Se *mi scrivi* sarò molto felice.**  
If you write to me I shall be very happy.

## 2. The Subjunctive Tenses

### THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

**a.** The present subjunctive of regular verbs is formed as follows:

**FIRST CONJUGATION:** Drop *-are* and add: *-i, -i, -i, -iamo, -iate, -ino* [See § 48]

**parlare io parli**

**SECOND CONJUGATION:** Drop *-ere* and add: *-a, -a, -a, -iamo, -iate, -ano* [See § 49]

**perdere io perda**

**THIRD CONJUGATION:** Drop *-ire* and add: *-a, -a, -a, -iamo, -iate, -ano.*

**dormire io dorma**

*-isco* verbs drop *-ire* and add: *-isca, -isca, -isca, -iamo, -iate, -iscano* [See § 50]

**finire io finisca**

**b.** The endings of the present subjunctive of all irregular verbs, regardless of what conjugation they belong to, are: *-a, -a, -a, -iamo, -iate, -ano.*



## THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

e. The imperfect subjunctive of regular verbs is formed as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION: Drop *-are* and add: *-assi, -assi, -asse, -assimo, -aste, -assero* [See § 48]

*parlare che io parlassi*

SECOND CONJUGATION: Drop *-ere* and add: *-essi, -essi, -esse, -essimo, -este, -essero* [See § 49]

*perdere che io perdessi*

THIRD CONJUGATION: Drop *-ire* and add: *-issi, -issi, -isse, -issimo, -iste, -issero* [See § 50]

*dormire che io dormissi*

f. The imperfect subjunctive is used when the main verb is a past tense or conditional, and when the action of the subjunctive clause did not occur prior to the action of the main verb:

*Egli voleva che io cantassi.*

*He wanted me to sing.*

*Egli vorrebbe che io cantassi.*

*He would want me to sing.*

*Io ordinai che essi andassero a dormire.*

*I ordered them to go to sleep.*

## THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

g. The pluperfect subjunctive is formed by the imperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb and the past participle of the desired verb.

h. The pluperfect subjunctive is used when the main verb is a past tense or conditional and when the action of the subjunctive clause occurred before the action of the main verb:

*Il professore credeva che noi avessimo studiato.*

*The professor thought we had studied.*

*Noi avremmo studiato se avessimo avuto tempo.*

*We would have studied if we had had time.*

## NOTES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE:

i. If you study the examples given in the presentation of the subjunctive you will notice the different ways in which the Italian subjunctive can be translated into English. However, this should give you no reason for concern. Your first problem in translating into Italian is to determine whether conditions in the main verb require the use of the subjunctive in the subordinate clause. Your next problem is to select the proper verb and put it into the proper tense of the subjunctive according to the rules given, regardless of how the English sentence is worded.



j. Regardless of the rules, the subjunctive *is not used* when the verb in the subordinate clause indicates distant future or certainty. Thus, if you want to say: "I don't think he will go," if you want to imply that *his going* will take place at a future time, you will say in Italian: "*Non credo che egli andrà,*" even though *non credo* is a verb of doubt. Likewise, if you want to say: "She doesn't know that he has arrived," you will say: "*Ella non sa che egli è arrivato,*" because *è arrivato* is a certain, definite fact. But if you say: "*Ella non sa se egli sia arrivato,*" you are now implying a doubt or uncertainty because of the use of the word *se* (if).

k. The infinitive rather than the subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses when the subject of both the main and dependent verbs is the same:

***Io voglio partire.***  
*I want to leave.*

But:

***Io voglio che egli parta.***  
*I want him to leave.*

l. When the verb in the main clause is one of ordering or commanding the use of the subjunctive is often avoided by putting the subordinate verb in the infinitive and substituting an indirect object pronoun for the subject of the subordinate verb. This pronoun precedes the main verb. Thus, instead of saying:

***Ordinai che egli venisse.***  
*I ordered him to come.*

you may say:

***Gli ordinai di venire.***

## § 66 Servile Verbs

The verbs *volere* (to want), *potere* (to be able to, can), and *dovere* (to have to, must) are called servile verbs because when they are not used absolutely, that is, by themselves, they require an infinite as a predicate complement:

***Io voglio studiare.***  
*I want to study.*

***Essi devono partire.***  
*They must leave.*

***Tu non puoi uscire.***  
*You cannot go out.*

When these verbs are used absolutely they require the auxiliary *avere*.

***Io non ho potuto; egli non ha voluto; etc.***

But when they are followed by an infinitive, they require the auxiliary of the dependent infinitive:

**Io non ho potuto mangiare.**  
I was unable to eat.

**Io non son potuto venire.**  
I was unable to come.

(*Son* is often used instead of *sono*.)

**Egli ha dovuto lavorare.**  
He had to work.

**Egli è dovuto partire.**  
He had to leave.

**Essi sono dovuti andare.**  
They had to go.

When these three verbs are followed by a reflexive verb they take the auxiliary verb *essere* if the reflexive pronoun precedes the verb, and the auxiliary *avere* if the reflexive pronoun is attached to the infinitive:

**Egli non si è potuto alzare.** } He was unable to get up.  
**Egli non ha potuto alzarsi.** }

## List of Irregular Verbs

The following list gives the hundred most common Italian irregular verbs. Of the simple tenses, only those which are irregular and those which might present some problems in spelling are given. Since the past participle is given, the compound tenses, which are made with the past participle, are not included. The following abbreviations are used:

P.P.—Past Participle  
 PRES.—Present Indicative  
 P. DEF.—Past Definite  
 IMPF.—Imperfect Indicative  
 FUT.—Future

COND.—Conditional  
 IMPV.—Imperative  
 PRES. SUB.—Present Subjunctive  
 IMPF. SUB.—Imperfect Subjunctive

**Accendere**  
 to light

P.P. *acceso*  
 P. DEF. *accesi, accendesti, accese, accendemmo, accendeste, accesero*

**Accogliere**

to receive, to welcome

P.P. *accolto*  
 PRES. *accolgo, accogli, accoglie, accogliamo, accogliete, accolgono*  
 P. DEF. *accolsi, accogliesti, accolse, accogliemmo, accoglieste, accolsero*

**Accorgersi**

to notice, to perceive

P.P. *accorto*  
 P. DEF. *mi accorsi, ti accorgesti, si accorse, ci accorgemmo, vi accorgete, si accorsero*

**Accludere**

to inclose

P.P. *accluso*  
 P. DEF. *acclusi, accludesti, accluse, accludemmo, accludeste, acclusero*

**Affiggere**

to afflict

P.P. *afflitto*  
 P. DEF. *affissi, affiggesti, affisse, affiggemmo, affiggeste, affissero*

**Andare**

to go (takes auxiliary *essere*)

PRES. *vado, vai, va, andiamo, andate, vanno*  
 FUT. *andrò, andrai, andrà, andremo, andrete, andranno*  
 COND. *andrei, andresti, andrebbe, andremmo, andrete, andrebbero*  
 IMPV. *và, vada, andiamo, andate, vadano*

PRES. SUB. *vada, vada, vada, andiamo, andiate, vadano*

**Appartenere**

to belong (conjugated like *tenere*)

**Appendere**

to hang

P.P. *appeso*  
 P. DEF. *appesi, appendesti, appese, appendemmo, appendeste, appesero*

**Apprendere**

to learn (conjugated like *prendere*)

**Aprire**

to open

P.P. *aperto*  
 P. DEF. *aprii or apersi, apristi, aprì or aperse, aprimmo, apriste, aprirono or apersero*

**Ardere**

to burn

P.P. *arso*  
 P. DEF. *arsi, ardesti, arse, ardemmo, ardeste, arsero*

**Avere**

to have

PRES. *ho, hai, ha, abbiamo, avete, hanno*  
 P. DEF. *ebbi, avesti, ebbe, avemmo, aveste, ebbero*  
 FUT. *avrò, avrai, avrà, avremo, avrete, avranno*  
 COND. *avrei, avresti, avrebbe, avremmo, avreste, avrebbero*  
 IMPV. *abbi, abbia, abbiamo, abbiate, abbiano*  
 PRES. SUB. *abbia, abbia, abbia, abbiamo, abbiate, abbiano*

**Bere**

to drink (conjugated from the old infinitive *bevete*)

P.P. *bevuto*

P. DEF. *bevvi, bevesti, bevve, bevemmo, beveste, bevvero*

FUT. *berrò, berrai, berrà, berremo, berrete, berranno*

COND. *berrei, berresti, berrebbe, berremmo, berreste, berrebbero*

**Cadere**

to fall (takes auxiliary *essere*)

P. DEF. *caddi, cedesti, cadde, cademmo, cadeste, caddero*

FUT. *cadrò, cadrai, cadrà, cadremo, cadrete, cadranno*

COND. *cadrei, cadresti, cadrebbe, cadremmo, cadreste, cadrebbero*

**Chiedere**

to ask

P.P. *chiesto*

P. DEF. *chiesi, chiedesti, chiese, chiedemmo, chiedeste, chiesero*

**Chiudere**

to close

P.P. *chiuso*

P. DEF. *chiusi, chiudesti, chiuse, chiudemmo, chiudeste, chiusero*

**Cogliere**

to pick (flowers, etc.), to gather

P.P. *colto*

P. DEF. *colsi, cogliesti, colse, cogliemmo, coglieste, colsero*

**Compiere or Compire**

to accomplish, to finish

P.P. *compito or compiuto*

PRES. *compio, compi, compie, compiamo, compite, compiono*; also *compisco, compisci, compisce, compiamo, compite, compiscono*

FUT. *compirò, compirai, compirà, compiremo, compirete, compiranno*

COND. *compirei, compiresti, compirebbe, compiremmo, compireste, compirebbero*

IMEV. *compi, compia, compiamo, compite, compiano*

PRES. SUB. *compia, compia, compia, compiamo, compiate, compiano*; also *compisca, compisca, compiamo, compiate, compiscano*

**Concedere**

to grant, to concede

P.P. *concesso*

P. DEF. *concessi, concedesti, concessi, concedemmo, concedeste, concessero*

**Condurre**

to lead, to conduct (conjugated from old infinitive *conducere*)

P.P. *condotto*

PRES. GERUND. *conducendo*

PRES. *conduco, conduci, conduce, conduciamo, conducete, conducono*

IMPF. *conducevo, conducevi, conduceva, conducevamo, conducevate, conducevano*

P. DEF. *condussi, conducesti, condusse, conducemmo, conduceste, condussero*

FUT. *condurrò, condurrà, condurrà, condurremo, condurrete, condurranno*

COND. *condurrei, condurresti, condurrebbe, condurremmo, condurreste, condurrebbero*

IMPV. *conduci, conduca, conduciamo, conducete, conducano*

PRES. SUB. *conduca, conduca, conduca, conduciamo, conduciate, conducano*

IMPF. SUB. *conducessi, conducessi, conduceste, conducevamo, conducevate, conducevano*

**Conoscere**

to know (usually a person)

P.P. *conosciuto*

P. DEF. *conobbi, conoscesti, conobbe, conoscemmo, conosceste, conobbero*

**Coprire**

to cover

P.P. *coperto*

**Correggere**

to correct

P.P. *corretto*

P. DEF. *corressi, correggesti, corresse, correggemmo, correggeste, corressero*

**Correre**

to run (conjugated with *essere* when it means from one place to another, otherwise it is conjugated with *avere*)

P.P. *corso*

P. DEF. *corsi, corresti, corse, corremmo, correste, corsero*

**Crescere**

to grow (conjugated with *essere* except when it has a direct object)

P.P. *cresciuto*

P. DEF. *crebbi, crescesti, crebbe, crescemmo, cresceste, crebbero*

**Cuocere**  
to cook

P.P. *cotto*  
 PRES. *cuocio, cuoci, cuoce, cuociamo*  
 (cociamo), *cuocete (cocete), cuociono*  
 P. DEF. *cossi, cocesti, cosse, cuocemmo, cuoceste, cossero*  
 PRES. SUB. *cuocia, cuocia, cuocia, cuociamo, cuociate, cuociano*

**Dare**  
to give

P.P. *dato*  
 PRES. *do, dai, dà, diamo, date, danno*  
 P. DEF. *diedi, desti, diede, demmo, deste, diedero*  
 IMPF. *davo, davi, dava, davamo, davate, davano*  
 FUT. *darò, darai, darà, daremo, darete, daranno*  
 COND. *darei, daresti, darebbe, daremmo, dareste, darebbero*  
 IMPV. *dà, dia, diamo, date, diano*  
 PRES. SUB. *dia, dia, dia, diamo, diate, diano*  
 IMPF. SUB. *dessi, dessi, desse, dessimo, deste, dessero*

**Decidere**  
to decide

P.P. *deciso*  
 P. DEF. *decisi, decidesti, decise, decidemmo, decideste, decisero*

**Difendere**  
to defend

P.P. *difeso*  
 P. DEF. *difesi, difendesti, difese, difendemmo, difendeste, difesero*

**Dipingere**  
to paint

P.P. *dipinto*  
 P. DEF. *dipinsi, dipingesti, dipinse, dipingemmo, dipingeste, dipinsero*

**Dire**  
to say, to tell  
(conjugated from old infinitive *dicere*)

P.P. *detto*  
 PRES. GERUND. *dicendo*  
 PRES. *dico, dici, dice, diciamo, dite, dicono*  
 P. DEF. *dissi, dicesti, disse, dicemmo, diceste, dissero*  
 IMPF. *dicevo, dicevi, diceva, dicevamo, dicevate, dicevano*  
 FUT. *dirò, dirai, dirà, diremo, direte, diranno*  
 COND. *direi, diresti, direbbe, diremmo, direste, direbbero*  
 IMPV. *di' (or dici), dica, diciamo, dite, dicano*

PRES. SUB. *dica, dica, dica, diciamo, diciate, dicano*  
 IMPF. SUB. *dicessi, dicessi, diceste, dicessimo, diceste, dicessero*

**Dirigere**

to direct

P.P. *diretto*  
 P. DEF. *diressi, dirigesti, diresse, dirigemmo, dirigeste, diressero*

**Discutere**

to discuss

P.P. *discusso*  
 P. DEF. *discussi, discutesti, discusse, discutemmo, discuteste, discussero*

**Dividere**

to divide

P.P. *diviso*  
 P. DEF. *divisi, dividesti, divise, dividemmo, divideste, divisero*

**Dovere**

to have to, must

P.P. *dovuto*  
 PRES. *devo (or debbo), devi, deve, dobbiamo, dovete, devono (or debbono)*  
 P. DEF. *dovei (or dovetti), dovesti, dovè (or dovette), dovemmo, doveste, doverono (or dovertero)*  
 FUT. *dovrò, dovrai, dovrà, dovremo, dovrete, dovranno*  
 COND. *dovrei, dovesti, dovrebbe, dovremmo, doveste, dovrebbero*  
 PRES. SUB. *deva, deva, deva (or debba, debba, debba), dobbiamo, dobbiate, devano (or debbano)*

**Esprimere**

to express

P.P. *espresso*  
 P. DEF. *espressi, esprimesti, espresse, esprimemmo, esprimeste, espressero*

**Essere**

to be (conjugated with itself as auxiliary)

P.P. *stato*  
 PRES. *sono, sei, è, siamo, siete, sono*  
 P. DEF. *fui, fosti, fu, fummo, foste, furono*  
 IMPF. *ero, eri, era, eravamo, eravate, erano*  
 FUT. *sarò, sarai, sarà, saremo, sarete, saranno*  
 COND. *sarei, saresti, sarebbe, saremmo, sareste, sarebbero*  
 IMPV. *sii, sia, siamo, siate, siano*  
 PRES. SUB. *sia, sia, sia, siamo, siate, siano*  
 IMPF. SUB. *fossi, fossi, fosse, fossimo, foste, fossero*

**Fare**

to do, to make (conjugated from the old infinitive *facere*)

P.P. *fatto*  
 PRES. GERUND. *facendo*  
 PRES. *faccio, fai, fa, facciamo, fate, fanno*  
 P. DEF. *fecì, facesti, fece, facemmo, faceste, fecero*  
 IMPF. *facevo, facevi, faceva, facevamo, facevate, facevano*  
 FUT. *farò, farai, farà, faremo, farete, faranno*  
 COND. *farei, faresti, farebbe, faremmo, fareste, farebbero*  
 IMPV. *fa, faccia, facciamo, fate, facciamo*  
 PRES. SUB. *faccia, faccia, faccia, facciamo, facciate, facciamo*  
 IMPF. SUB. *facessi, facessi, facesse, facessimo, faceste, facessero*

**Fingere**

to pretend, to feign

P.P. *finto*  
 P. DEF. *finì, fingesti, finse, fingemmo, fingeste, finsero*

**Giungere**

to arrive, to reach (conjugated with *essere*)

P.P. *giunto*  
 P. DEF. *giunsi, giungesti, giunse, giungemmo, giungeste, giunsero*

**Leggere**

to read

P.P. *letto*  
 P. DEF. *lessi, leggesti, lesse, leggemmo, leggeste, lessero*

**Mantenere**

to maintain, to keep, to support (conjugated like *tenere*)

**Mettere**

to put

P.P. *messo*  
 P. DEF. *misi, mettesti, mise, mettemmo, metteste, misero*

**Mordere**

to bite

P.P. *morso*  
 P. DEF. *morsi, mordesti, morse, mordemmo, mordeste, morsero*

**Morire**

to die (conjugated with *essere*)

P.P. *morto*  
 PRES. *muoio, muori, muore, moriamo, muori, muoiono*  
 FUT. *morirò, morirai, morirà, moriremo, morirete, moriranno*  
 COND. *morrei, morresti, morirebbe, moriremmo, morireste, morirebbero*  
 NOTE: The regular forms for the future and conditional are also used.  
 IMPV. *muori, muoia, moriamo, morite, muoiano*  
 PRES. SUB. *muoia, muoia, muoia, moriamo, moriate, muoiano*

**Muovere**

to move (not to change residence)

P.P. *mosso*  
 PRES. *muovo, muovi, muove, muoviamo, movete, muovono*  
 P. DEF. *mossi, movesti, mosse, movemmo, moveste, mossero*  
 IMPV. *muovi, muova, muoviamo, movete, muovano*  
 PRES. SUB. *muova, muova, muova, muoviamo, moviate, muovano*

**Nascere**

to be born (conjugated with *essere*)

P.P. *nato*  
 P. DEF. *egli nacque, essi nacquero*

**Nascondere**

to hide, to conceal

P.P. *nascosto*  
 P. DEF. *nascosi, nascondesti, nascose, nascondemmo, nascondeste, nascosero*

**Offendere**

to offend

P.P. *offeso*  
 P. DEF. *offesi, offendesti, offese, offendemmo, offendeste, offesero*

**Offrire**

to offer

P.P. *offerta*  
 P. DEF. *offrìi (or offerìi), offrìsti, offrì (or offerse), offrìmmo, offrìste, offrìrono (or offersero)*

**Perdere**

to lose

P.P. *perduto or perso*  
 P. DEF. *persi (or perdei or perdetti), perdesti, perse (or perdè or perdeti), perdemmo, perdeste, persero (or perderono or perdettero)*

**Persuadere**  
to persuadeP.P. *persuaso*P. DEF. *persuasi, persuadesti, persuase, persuademmo, persuadeste, persuasero***Piacere**to like, to please, to be pleasing (conjugated with *essere*)

NOTE: This verb is used mostly in the third person singular and plural.

P.P. *piaciuto*PRES. *piaccio, piaci, piace, piacciamo, piacete, piacciono*P. DEF. *piacqui, piacesti, piacque, piacquero*PRES. SUB. *piaccia, piaccia, piaccia, piacciamo, piacciate, piacciano***Piangere**

to cry, to weep

P.P. *pianto*P. DEF. *piansi, piangesti, pianse, piangemmo, piangeste, piansero***Porre (Ponere)**

to put, to place

P.P. *posto*PRES. GERUND. *ponendo*PRES. *pongo, poni, pone, poniamo, ponete, pongono*P. DEF. *posi, ponesti, pose, ponemmo, poneste, posero*FUT. *porrò, porrai, porrà, porremo, porrete, porranno*COND. *porrei, porresti, porrebbe, porremmo, porreste, porrebbero*IMPF. *ponevo, ponevi, poneva, ponevamo, ponevate, ponevano*IMPV. *poni, ponga, poniamo, ponete, pongano*PRES. SUB. *ponga, ponga, ponga, poniamo, poniate, pongano*IMPF. SUB. *ponessi, ponessi, ponesse, ponessimo, poneste, ponessero***Potere**

to be able to, can, may

PRES. *posso, puoi, può, possiamo, potete, possono*FUT. *potrò, potrai, potrà, potremo, potrete, potranno*COND. *potrei, potresti, potrebbe, potremmo, potreste, potrebbero*IMPV. *possa, possa, possiamo, possiate, possano*PRES. SUB. *possa, possa, possa, possiamo, possiate, possano***Prendere**

to take

P.P. *preso*P. DEF. *presi, prendesti, prese, prendemmo, prendeste, presero***Produrre**to produce (conjugated like *condurre*)**Proteggere**

to protect

P.P. *protetto*P. DEF. *protessi, proteggesti, protesse, proteggemmo, proteggeste, protessero***Radere**

to shave

P.P. *raso*P. DEF. *rasi, redesti, rase, rademmo, radeste, rasero***Rendere**

to render, to give back

P.P. *reso*P. DEF. *resi, rendesti, rese, rendemmo, rendeste, resero***Ridere**

to laugh

P.P. *riso*P. DEF. *risi, ridesti, rise, ridemmo, rideste, risero***Rimanere**

to remain

P.P. *rimasto*PRES. *rimango, rimani, rimane, rimaniamo, rimanete, rimangono*P. DEF. *rimasi, rimanesti, rimase, rimanemmo, rimaneste, rimasero*FUT. *rimarrò, rimarrai, rimarrà, rimarremo, rimarrete, rimarranno*COND. *rimarrei, rimarresti, rimarrebbe, rimarremmo, rimarreste, rimarrebbero*IMPV. *rimani, rimanga, rimaniamo, rimanete, rimangono*PRES. SUB. *rimanga, rimanga, rimanga, rimanga, rimaniamo, rimaniate, rimangono***Rispondere**

to answer, to reply

P.P. *risposto*P. DEF. *risposi, rispondesti, rispose, rispondemmo, rispondeste, risposero***Ritenere**to retain (conjugated like *tenere*)

**Rompere**

to break

P.P. *rotto*

P. DEF. *ruppi, rompesti, ruppe, rompemmo, rompeste, ruppero*

**Salire**

to go up, to climb, to ascend, to get on

PRES. *salgo, sali, sale, saliamo, salite, salgono*

IMPV. *sali, salga, saliamo, salite, salgano*

PRES. SUB. *salga, salga, salga, saliamo, saliate, salgano*

**Sapere**

to know, to know how (*never* to know a person)

PRES. *so, sai, sa, sappiamo, sapete, sanno*

P. DEF. *seppi, sapesti, seppe, sapemmo, sapeste, seppero*

FUT. *saprò, saprai, saprà, sapremo, saprete, sapranno*

COND. *saprei, sapresti, saprebbe, sapremmo, sapreste, saprebbero*

IMPV. *sappi, sappia, sappiamo, sappiate, sappiano*

PRES. SUB. *sappia, sappia, sappia, sappiamo, sappiate, sappiano*

**Scegliere**

to choose, to select

P.P. *scelto*

PRES. *scelgo, scegli, sceglie, scegliamo, scegliete, scelgono*

P. DEF. *scelsi, sceglieisti, scelse, scegliemmo, sceglieste, scelsero*

IMPV. *scegli, scelga, scegliamo, scegliete, scelgano*

PRES. SUB. *scelga, scelga, scelga, scegliamo, scegliate, scelgano*

**Scendere**

to descend, to go down, to get down, to get off

P.P. *sceso*

P. DEF. *scesi, scendesti, scese, scendemmo, scendeste, scesero*

**Sciogliere**

to untie, to dissolve, to melt

P.P. *sciolto*

P. DEF. *sciolsi, scioglieisti, sciolse, sciogliemmo, scioglieste, sciolsero*

IMPV. *sciogli, sciolga, sciogliamo, sciogliete, sciolgano*

PRES. SUB. *sciolga, sciolga, sciolga, sciogliamo, sciogliate, sciolgano*

**Scomparire**

to disappear

P.P. *scomparso* or *scomparito*

PRES. *scompaio, scompari, scompare, scompariamo, scomparite, scompaiono*

P. DEF. *scomparii* (or *scomparvi* or *scomparsi*), *scomparisti, scomparì*

(or *scomparue* or *scomparse*), *scomparimmo, scompariste, scompariono*

(or *scomparvero* or *scomparsero*)

IMPV. *scompari, scompaia, scompariamo, scomparite, scompaiano*

PRS. SUB. *scompaia, scompaia, scompaia, scompariamo, scompariate, scompaiano*

NOTE: Besides the forms given above, this verb also has the regular *-isco* forms in the present indicative, imperative, and present subjunctive [See §50].

**Scoprire**

to discover

P.P. *scoperto*

P. DEF. *scoprii* (or *scopersi*), *scopristi, scopri* (or *scoperse*), *scoprimmo, scopriste, scoprirono* (or *scopersero*)

**Scrivere**

to write

P.P. *scritto*

P. DEF. *scrissi, scrivesti, scrisse, scrivemmo, scriveste, scrissero*

**Sedere**

to sit

PRES. *siedo* (or *seggo*), *siedi, siede, sediamo, sedete, siedono* (or *seggono*)

IMPV. *siedi, segga, sediamo, sedete, seggano*

PRES. SUB. *segga, segga, segga* (or *sieda, sieda, sieda*), *sediamo, sediate, seggano* (or *siedano*)

**Soffrire**

to suffer

P.P. *sofferto*

P. DEF. *soffrii* (or *sofferesi*), *soffristi, soffri* (or *sofferese*), *soffrimmo, soffriste, soffrirono* (or *sofferesero*)

**Sorgere**

to arise, to rise

P.P. *sorto*

P. DEF. *sorsi, sorgesti, sorse, sorgemmo, sorgeste, sorsero*



## 290 IRREGULAR VERBS

### Sorridere

to smile (conjugated like *ridere*)

### Spargere

to spread, to scatter

P.P. *sparso*

P. DEF. *sparsi, spargesti, sparse, spargemmo, spargeste, sparsero*

### Spegnere or Spengere

to extinguish

P.P. *spento*

PRES. (regular) also *io spengo, essi spengono*

P. DEF. *spensi, spegnesti, spense, spegnemmo, spegneste, spensero*

IMPV. *spegni, spenga, spegniamo, spegnete, spengano*

PRES. SUB. *spenga, spenga, spenga, spengiamo, spegniate, spengano*

### Spendere

to spend

P.P. *speso*

P. DEF. *spesi, spendesti, spese, spendemmo, spendeste, spesero*

### Spingere

to push, to shove, to thrust

P.P. *spinto*

P. DEF. *spinsi, spingesti, spinse, spingemmo, spingeste, spinsero*

### Stare

to stay (sometimes, to be, to stand) (conjugated with *essere*)

P.P. *stato*

PRES. *sto, stai, sta, stiamo, state, stanno*

P. DEF. *stetti, stesti, stette, stemmo, steste, stettero*

IMPF. *stavo, stavi, stava, stavamo, stavate, stavano*

FUT. *starò, starai, starà, staremo, starete, staranno*

COND. *starei, staresti, starebbe, staremmo, stareste, starebbero*

IMPV. *stà, stia, stiamo, state, stiano*

PRES. SUB. *stia, stia, stia, stiamo, stiate, stiano*

IMPF. SUB. *stessi, stessi, stesse, stessimo, steste, stessero*

### Stringere

to hold fast, to squeeze, to grasp, to bind fast

P.P. *stretto*

P. DEF. *strinsi, stringesti, strinse, stringemmo, stringeste, strinsero*

### Supporre

to suppose (conjugated like *porre*)

### Svenire

to faint (conjugated like *venire*; takes the auxiliary *essere*)

### Tacere

to be silent, to keep quiet

P.P. *taciuto*

PRES. *taccio, taci, tace, tacciamo, tacete, tacciono*

P. DEF. *tacqui, tacesti, tacque, tacemmo, taceste, tacquero*

IMPV. *taci, taccia, tacciamo, tacete, tacciano*

PRES. SUB. *taccia, taccia, taccia, tacciamo, tacciate, tacciano* (may also be written with one *c*)

### Tenere

to hold, to have, to keep

PRES. *tengo, tieni, tiene, teniamo, tenete, tengono*

P. DEF. *tenni, tenesti, tenne, tenemmo, teneste, tennero*

FUT. *terrò, terrai, terrà, terremo, terrete, terranno*

COND. *terrei, terresti, terrebbe, terremmo, terreste, terrebbero*

IMPV. *tieni, tenga, teniamo, tenete, tengano*

PRES. SUB. *tenga, tenga, tenga, teniamo, teniate, tengano*

### Togliere

to take away, to remove, to take from

P.P. *tolto*

PRES. *tolgo, togli, toglie, togliamo, togliete, tolgono*

P. DEF. *tolsi, togliesti, tolse, togliemmo, toglieste, tolsero*

FUT. *torrò, torrai, torrà, torremo, torrete, torranno*

COND. *torrei, torresti, torrebbe, torremmo, torreste, torrebbero*

NOTE: Both the future and the conditional have the regular forms in addition to those given above.

IMPV. *togli, tolga, togliamo, togliete, tolgano*

PRES. SUB. *tolga, tolga, tolga, togliamo, togliate, tolgano*

### Tradurre

to translate (from the old infinitive *traducere*; conjugated like *condurre*)

**Trarre**

to draw or pull out; to drag, to haul, to derive

P.P. *tratto*  
 PRES. GERUND. *traendo*  
 PRES. *traggo, trai, trae, traiamo, traete, traggono*  
 P. DEF. *trassi, traesti, trasse, traemmo, traeste, trassero*  
 IMPF. *traevo, traevi, traeva, traevamo, traevate, traevano*  
 FUT. *trarrò, trarrai, trarrà, trarremo, trarrete, trarranno*  
 COND. *trarrei, trarresti, trarrebbe, trarremmo, trarreste, trarrebbero*  
 IMPV. *trai, tragga, traiamo, traete, traggano*  
 PRES. SUB. *tragga, tragga, tragga, traiamo, traiate, traggano*  
 IMPF. SUB. *traessi, traessi, traesse, traessimo, traeste, traessero*

**Uccidere**

to kill

P.P. *ucciso*  
 P. DEF. *uccisi, uccidesti, uccise, uccidemmo, uccideste, uccisero*

**Udire**

to hear

PRES. *odo, odi, ode, udiamo, udite, odo*  
 FUT. *udirò, udrai, udrà, udremo, udrete, udranno*  
 COND. *udrei, udresti, udrebbe, udremmo, udreste, udrebbero*  
 NOTE: Both the future and the conditional have regular forms in addition to those given above.  
 IMPV. *odi, oda, udiamo, udite, odano*  
 PRES. SUB. *oda, oda, oda, udiamo, udiate, odano*

**Uscire**

to go out (takes the auxiliary *essere*)

PRES. *esco, esci, esce, usciamo, uscite, escono*  
 IMPV. *esci, esca, usciamo, uscite, escano*  
 PRES. SUB. *esca, esca, esca, usciamo, usciate, escano*

**Valere**

to be worth (takes the auxiliary *essere*)

P.P. *valso*  
 PRES. *valgo, vali, vale, valiamo, valete, valgono*  
 P. DEF. *valsi, valesti, valse, valemmo,*

*valeste, valsero*

FUT. *varrò, varrai, varrà, varremo, varrete, varranno*

COND. *varrei, varresti, varrebbe, varremmo, varrete, varrebbero*  
 IMPV. *vali, valga, valiamo, valete, valgano*

PRES. SUB. *valga, valga, valga, valiamo, valiate, valgano*

NOTE: Of this verb usually only the third person singular and the third person plural are used.

**Vedere**

to see

P.P. *visto* OR *veduto*

P. DEF. *vidi, vedesti, vide, vedemmo, vedeste, videro*

FUT. *vedrò, vedrai, vedrà, vedremo, vedrete, vedranno*

COND. *vedrei, vedresti, vedrebbe, vedremmo, vedreste, vedrebbero*

**Venire**

to come (conjugated with the auxiliary *essere*)

P.P. *venuto*

PRES. *vengo, vieni, viene, veniamo, venite, vengono*

P. DEF. *venni, venisti, venne, venimmo, veniste, vennero*

FUT. *verrò, verrai, verrà, verremo, verrete, verranno*

COND. *verrei, verresti, verrebbe, verremmo, verreste, verrebbero*

IMPV. *viene, venga, veniamo, venite, vengano*

PRES. SUB. *venga, venga, venga, veniamo, veniate, vengano*

**Vincere**

to win

P.P. *vinto*

P. DEF. *vinsi, vincesti, vinse, vincemmo, vinceste, vinsero*

**Vivere**

to live (not to reside)

NOTE: Takes the auxiliary *avere* if followed by a direct object, otherwise it takes the auxiliary *essere*.

P.P. *vissuto*

P. DEF. *vissi, vivesti, visse, vivemmo, viveste, vissero*

FUT. *vivrò, vivrai, vivrà, vivremo, vivrete, vivranno*

COND. *vivrei, vivresti, vivrebbe, vivremmo, vivreste, vivrebbero*

## 292 IRREGULAR VERBS

### **Volere**

to want, to be willing, to desire, to wish

PRES. *voglio, vuoi, vuole, vogliamo, volete, vogliono*

P. DEF. *vollì, volesti, volle, volemmo, voleste, vollero*

FUT. *vorrd, vorrai, vorrà, vorremo, vorrete, vorranno*

COND. *vorrei, vorresti, vorrebbe, vorremmo, vorreste, vorrebbero*

IMPV. (rarely used) *vogli, voglia,*

*vogliamo, vogliate, vogliono*

PRES. SUB. *voglia, voglia, voglia, vogliamo, vogliate, vogliono*

### **Volgere**

to turn, to revolve

P.P. *volto*

PRES. *volgo, volgi, volge, volgiamo, volgete, volgono*

P. DEF. *volsi, volgesti, volse, volgemo, volgeste, volsero*

**List of Common Italian Proverbs**

- Volere è potere.**  
Where there's a will there's a way.
- Dove c'è fumo c'è fuoco.**  
Where there's smoke there's fire.
- L'unione fa la forza.**  
In union there is strength.
- Uomo avvisato è mezzo salvato.**  
Forewarned is forearmed.
- Finchè c'è vita c'è speranza.**  
Where there is life there is hope.
- Scopa nuova scopa bene.**  
A new broom sweeps clean.
- Se son rose fioriranno.**  
Time will tell.
- Ride bene chi ride l'ultimo.**  
He laughs best who laughs last.
- Il riso abbonda in bocca degli sciocchi.**  
Laughter is abundant in the mouth of fools.
- La miglior vendetta è il perdono.**  
Forgiveness is the best revenge.
- L'ozio è il padre di tutti i vizi.**  
Idleness is the root of all evil.
- Paese che vai, usanze che trovi.**  
When in Rome do as the Romans do.
- Trova un amico e troverai un tesoro.**  
A good friend is a treasure.
- La notte porta consiglio.**  
Night brings counsel.
- Chi è causa del suo male piange se stesso.**  
He who has made his own bed must lie in it.
- Chi ama il suo lavoro lo fa bene.**  
He who loves his work does it well.
- Chi ben comincia è alla metà dell'opera.**  
Well begun is half done.
- Chi asino nasce asino muore.**  
He who is born a fool dies a fool.
- Chi cerca trova.**  
Seek and you shall find.
- Chi va piano, va sano e va lontano.**  
He who goes slowly, goes safely and goes far.

294 ITALIAN PROVERBS

**Chi prima non pensa in ultimo sospira.**  
Look before you leap.

**Chi troppo abbraccia nulla stringe.**  
He who grasps too much holds nothing.

**Chi tardi arriva male alloggia.**  
The latecomer finds bad lodging.

**Chi sa poco presto lo dice.**  
He who knows little soon reveals it.

**Chi si contenta gode.**  
Contentment is better than riches.

**Chi male fa male aspetti.**  
He who does evil must expect evil.

**Chi la dura la vince.**  
Perseverance brings success.

**Chi non semina non raccoglie.**  
As you sow, so shall you reap.

**Chi s'aiuta Dio l'aiuta.**  
God helps those who help themselves.

**Chi è paziente è sapiente.**  
He who is patient is wise.

**Chi dorme non piglia pesci.**  
You can't catch fish while you are sleeping.

**La bugia ha le gambe corte.**  
A lie is short lived.

**A buon intenditore poche parole.**  
A word to the wise is sufficient.

**Al bisogno si conosce l'amico.**  
A friend in need is a friend indeed.

**Bisogna battere il ferro quando è caldo.**  
Strike while the iron is hot.

**Ad ogni uccello il suo nido è bello.**  
There is no place like home.

**Non c'è rosa senza spine.**  
There is no rose without thorns.

**Oggi a me, domani a te.**  
Every dog has its day.

**Meglio tardi che mai.**  
Better late than never.

**La parola è d'argento, il silenzio è d'oro.**  
Speech is silver, silence is golden.

**Cosa rara, cosa cara.**  
Something rare, something dear.

**Contro la forza la ragion non vale.**  
 Might is stronger than right.

**Dimmi con chi vai e ti dirò chi sei.**  
 A man is known by the company he keeps.

**Giovane ozioso, vecchio bisognoso.**  
 Lazy youth makes needy old age.

**L'occhio del padrone ingrassa il cavallo.**  
 Under the master's eye everything prospers.

**Fra due litiganti il terzo gode.**  
 While two dogs strive for a bone, a third one runs away with it.

**Non tutto è oro quel che riluce.**  
 All that glitters is not gold.

**Una rondine non fa primavera.**  
 One swallow does not make a spring.

**Ogni bel gioco dura poco.**  
 All good things come to an end.

**Tutto è bene quel che finisce bene.**  
 All is well that ends well.

## Some Common Italian Idioms

<b>Andare a casa</b> To go home	<b>Avere voglia di</b> To feel like; to wish to
<b>Andare a passeggio</b> To go for a walk	<b>Avere caldo</b> To be (feel) warm, hot
<b>Andare a letto</b> To go to bed	<b>Avere freddo</b> To be (feel) cold
<b>Andare a teatro</b> To go to the theater	<b>Fare colazione</b> To have breakfast
<b>Andare a piedi</b> To go on foot; to walk (to)	<b>Fare un regalo</b> To give a gift
<b>Andare in automobile</b> To go by car	<b>Fare gli auguri</b> To express good wishes
<b>Andare in ferrovia</b> To go by railroad	<b>Fare una fotografia</b> To take a picture
<b>Andare per mare</b> To go by sea	<b>Fare una partita</b> To play a game
<b>Andare per terra</b> To go by land	<b>Fare un viaggio</b> To take a trip
<b>Andare in aereo</b> To go by plane	<b>Fare una passeggiata</b> To take a walk
<b>Andare in chiesa</b> To go to church	<b>Giocare a dama</b> To play checkers
<b>Andare via</b> To go away	<b>Giocare agli scacchi</b> To play chess
<b>Coll'andare del tempo</b> As time goes on	<b>Giocare a carte</b> To play cards
<b>Va bene</b> That's fine	<b>Voler bene a</b> To be fond of ( <i>lit.</i> , to wish well to)
<b>Avere da fare</b> To be busy	<b>Stare bene (male)</b> To be well (ill)
<b>Avere ragione</b> To be right	<b>Di buon'ora</b> Early
<b>Avere torto</b> To be wrong	<b>Essere in ritardo or fare tardi</b> To be late
<b>Avere sonno</b> To be sleepy	<b>Da ora in poi</b> From now on
<b>Avere bisogno di</b> To need	<b>Oggi ad otto</b> A week from today
<b>Avere sete</b> To be thirsty	<b>Di tanto in tanto</b> Once in a while

**Qualche volta**  
Sometimes

**Proprio ora**  
Just now

**Ad un tratto**  
Suddenly

**All'improvviso**  
Suddenly, unexpectedly

**Al contrario**  
On the contrary

**A poco a poco**  
Little by little

**Ad alta voce**  
Loudly

**Un biglietto di visita**  
A visiting card

**Dire di sì; dire di no**  
To say yes; to say no

**Questa è bella!**  
That's a good one!

**Vestire con gusto**  
To dress well, in good taste

**A buon mercato**  
Cheaply

**In fretta**  
In a hurry

**In campagna**  
In the country, to the country

**Stringere la mano (a)**  
To shake hands (with)

**Cercare di**  
To try to

**Gli affari vanno bene (male)**  
Business is good (bad)

**Buono a nulla**  
Good for nothing

**Stare in pensiero**  
To be worried

**Ingannare il tempo**  
To kill time

**Fare un buco nell'acqua**  
To accomplish nothing (*lit.*, to make a hole in the water)

**Di seconda mano**  
Second hand, used

**Di buon mattino**  
Early in the morning

**Volta per volta**  
Time after time

**Domandare scusa**  
To apologize

**Un mal di testa**  
A headache

**Meno male!**  
It's a good thing!

**Di male in peggio**  
From bad to worse

**Di bene in meglio**  
Better and better

**Di buon (mal) umore.**  
In a good (bad) humor

**Sano e salvo**  
Safe and sound

**Tale e quale**  
Exactly like, exactly alike

**Vale la pena**  
It's worth while

**Che vale?**  
What's the use?

**Fare un brindisi**  
To drink a toast

**Al solito**  
As usual

**Prima del tempo**  
Before time, ahead of time

**Guadagnarsi la vita**  
To earn a living

**Farlo apposta**  
To do it on purpose, for spite

**Peccato!**  
Too bad (*lit.*, sin)

**Ancora una volta**  
Once more

**Fare la coda**  
To stand on line; to wait on line



**A rotta di collo**

At breakneck speed

**In punta di piedi**

On tiptoe

**In fretta e furia**

In a great hurry

**A braccia aperte**

With open arms

**Un biglietto di andata e ritorno**

A round trip ticket

**Fare orecchio da mercante**

To turn a deaf ear (*lit.*, to make a merchant's ear)

**A quattr'occhi**

Privately; face to face (*lit.*, with four eyes)

**Fare finta di**

To pretend; to make believe

**Conoscere di vista**

To know by sight

**Detto, fatto**

No sooner said than done

**Dio me ne guardi!**

God forbid!

**Non c'è nulla di male!**

No harm done!

**Che c'è di nuovo?**

What's new?

**Che faccia tosta!**

What nerve (*lit.*, what a hard face)!

**Come se niente fosse**

As if nothing had happened

**Questo è un altro paio di maniche.**

That's a horse of another color (*lit.*, that's another pair of sleeves)

# Italian-English Dictionary\*

## A

- a to, at  
abbastanza enough  
abbondanza abundance  
abbracciare to embrace  
abitante *m.* inhabitant  
abitare to live, reside, dwell  
abito suit  
    ... a giacca tailored suit (for a woman)  
abituato accustomed  
abitudine *f.* habit  
accanto beside  
accettare to accept  
accendere to light  
accidempolil the deuce!  
accidente accident  
accogliere to receive, to welcome  
accomodarsi to make oneself comfortable  
accompagnare to accompany  
accontentato satisfied  
aceto vinegar  
acqua water  
acquaio kitchen sink  
acquazzone *m.* shower (rain)  
acquistare to acquire, to purchase  
addio goodbye, farewell  
addolorato grieved  
addormentarsi to fall asleep
- adesso now  
adorare to adore  
adorata beloved  
aereo, in by plane  
aeroplano airplane  
aeroporto airport  
affari *m. pl.* business  
    fare ... to do business  
affascinare to fascinate  
affatto at all  
affittare to rent  
affluenza influx  
affollato crowded  
affresco (*pl.* affreschi) fresco  
agente *m.* agent, policeman  
agenzia agency  
aggiungere to add  
agnello lamb  
ago needle  
agosto August  
agricoltura agriculture  
aiuto help  
albergo hotel  
albero tree  
alberato tree lined  
alcuni,-e some  
alba dawn  
alcuno,-a any  
allarmare to alarm  
    non si allarmi don't get alarmed

---

\*In the Italian-English and English-Italian dictionaries that follow, parts of speech are not indicated except in ambiguous cases. In the case of nouns, gender is indicated only where the form of the noun does not clearly indicate masculine (*m.*) or feminine (*f.*). Irregular plurals (*pl.*) of nouns are also given. The abbreviations *adj.* for adjective and *adv.* for adverb are used where it is necessary to distinguish these parts of speech. Familiar forms are abbreviated *fam.*, polite forms, *pol.*

**allegramente** cheerfully  
**allegrezza** cheerfulness  
**alloggiare** to stay, to lodge  
**alloggio** lodging  
**allora** then  
**almeno** at least  
**alquanto** somewhat, rather  
**alto** high, tall  
**altro** other, else  
**altrui** others, of others  
**alzare** to lift, raise  
**alzarsi** to get up  
**amante** lover  
**amare** to love  
**amaro** bitter  
**ambedue** both  
**americano** American  
**amicizia** friendship  
**amico** friend  
**ammalarsi** to get sick  
**ammirare** to admire  
**amministrare** to manage  
**ammiratore** *m.* admirer  
**ammobiliare** furnished  
**ammontare** amount  
**amore** love  
**amor mio** my love  
**analogo** matching  
**ananasso** pineapple  
**anatomico** anatomist  
**anche** also, too  
**ancora** yet, still  
**non . . .** not yet  
**andare** to go  
**andata e ritorno** round trip  
**angolo** corner  
**anima** soul  
**animale** *m.* animal  
**anno** year  
**annunciare** announce  
**ansia** anxiety  
**ansioso** anxious, eager  
**antichità** antiquity  
**anticipo, in** in advance  
**antico** ancient  
**antipasto** appetizer  
**apostolo** apostle  
**appagato** satisfied  
**apparecchiare** to set  
**apparire** to appear  
**appartamento** apartment  
**appassionato** full of feeling

**appena** as soon as  
**appetito** appetite  
**avere . . .** to be hungry  
**apprezzare** to appreciate  
**approvare** approve  
**appuntamento** appointment  
**aprile** *m.* April  
**aprire** to open  
**arachidi** peanuts  
**arancia** (*pl.* arance) orange  
**architetto** architect  
**architettura** architecture  
**ardere** to burn  
**argenteria** silverware  
**Argentina** Argentina  
**argento** silver  
**aria** air  
**corrente d' . . .** draft  
**un soffio d' . . .** a breath of air  
**arrabbiato** angry  
**arrivo** arrival  
**armadio** closet  
**arredare** to furnish  
**arrivare** to arrive  
**arrivederci** until we meet again  
*(fam.)*  
**arrivederla** until we meet again  
*(pol.)*  
**arrostito** roasted  
**arrosto** roast  
**arte** *f.* art  
**artista** *m. & f.* artist  
**articolo** article  
**artistico** artistic  
**ascensore** *m.* elevator  
**ascesa, in** rising  
**asciugamano** towel  
**aspettare** to wait  
**. . . oltre** to wait any longer  
**. . . a lungo** to wait a long time  
**assaggiare** to taste  
**asino** donkey  
**assediato** besieged  
**assegno** check  
**libretto di disegni** check book  
**assicurare** to assure, to insure  
**assistere** to attend  
**assolutamente** absolutely  
**assortimento** assortment  
**astronomo** astronomer  
**Atene** Athens  
**attento!** careful!

**atterrare** to land  
**attesa** waiting  
**attraente** attractive  
**attrazione** *f.* attraction  
**attuale** present, actual  
**audacia** audacity  
**augurare** to wish  
**auguri** *m. pl.* good wishes  
**autentico** authentic  
**autista** chauffeur, driver  
**autobus** *m.* bus  
**automobile** *f.* automobile, car  
**autorità** authority  
**autore** *m.* author  
**autunno** autumn, fall  
**avanti** forward, ahead  
**avere** to have  
**aviazione** *f.* aviation  
**avverarsi** to come true  
**avvertire** to warn  
**avvicinarsi** to draw near, approach  
**avvolgere** to wrap  
**azione** *f.* action  
**azzurro** blue

**B**

**baciare** to kiss  
**bacio** kiss  
**bagaglio** baggage  
**bagno** bathroom, bath  
     **fare il . . .** to bathe  
     **fare i bagni** to go bathing  
**ballo** dance  
     **da . . .** for dancing  
**bambino**, *a* child  
**banana** banana  
**banca** bank  
**bandiera** banner, flag  
**barca** boat  
**barometro** barometer  
**basilica** basilica  
**basso** low, short  
**battaglia** battle  
**battere** to strike, beat, knock  
**baule** *m.* trunk  
**bel, bella, bello** beautiful  
**belga** Belgian  
**Belgio** Belgium  
**bellezza** beauty  
**benchè** although

**bene** well  
     **sto . . .** I am well, I feel well  
**benedire** to bless  
**benedizione** *f.* blessing  
**beninteso** of course  
**benone** very well  
**bere** to drink  
**berretto** cap  
**biancheria** linens  
     **. . . intima** underwear  
**bianco** white  
**biblioteca** library  
**bicchiere** *m.* glass  
**bicicletta** bicycle  
**biglietteria** ticket window  
**biglietto** ticket  
     **. . . di visita** visiting card  
**biondo** blond  
**bisogna** *che* it is necessary  
**bisogno** need  
     **ho . . . di** I need  
**bistecca** steak  
**bizzarria** whim  
**bizzarro** whimsical  
**bollire** to boil  
**bollito** boiled  
**bollo** stamp, rubber stamp  
**bontà** kindness  
**bordo**, *a* on board  
**borsa** stock exchange, scholarship  
**borsetta** handbag  
**bosco** woods  
**bottega** (*pl.* botteghe) shop, store  
**bottiglia** bottle  
**bottone** *m.* button  
**braccio** (*pl.* le braccia) arm  
**Brasile** *m.* Brazil  
**bravo!** bravissimo! fine! excellent!  
**breve** brief, short  
     **a . . . scadenza** short term  
**brillante** brilliant, sparkling  
**brodo** soup  
**brutto** ugly  
**bugia** lie  
**bue** *m.* beef, ox  
**buio** dark  
**buono** good  
**buon'ora, di** early  
**burro** butter  
**busta** envelope

## C

- cabina** cabin  
**caduta** fall  
**caffè** coffee  
**caffelatte** coffee with milk  
**caffettiera** coffee pot  
**calamaio** inkwell  
**calcolo** calculation  
**caldo** hot, warm  
     fa . . . it is warm, hot  
**calendario** calendar  
**calosce** *f. pl.* overshoes, rubbers  
**calza** stocking  
**calzatura** footwear  
**calzino** sock  
**calzoni** *m. pl.* trousers, pants  
**cambio** rate of exchange  
**cameriere** *m.* waiter  
**camera** room, chamber  
     . . . da letto bedroom  
**camicetta** blouse  
**camicia** (*pl.* camicie) shirt  
**cammin facendo** on the way  
**cammino** path, walk  
**campanello** doorbell, small bell  
**campo** field  
**Canadà** *m.* Canada  
**canale** *m.* canal  
**cane** *m.* dog  
**canterellando** humming  
**cantare** to sing  
**canzone** *f.* song  
**canzonetta** popular song  
**capelli** hair  
**capire** to understand  
**capitale** *f.* capital (of a country)  
     *m.* capital (money)  
**capitano** captain  
**capo** head  
**capolavoro** masterpiece  
**cappella** chapel  
**cappello** hat  
**carabiniere** *m.* military policeman  
**caraffa** decanter, pitcher  
**carbone** *m.* coal  
**caricare** to load, to wind (a watch)  
**carne** *f.* meat  
**caro** dear, expensive  
**carriera** career  
**carrozza** railroad car, carriage
- carta** paper  
     **foglio di . . .** sheet of paper  
     . . . da lettere letter paper  
     . . . geografica map  
     . . . sugante blotter  
**cartoleria** stationary store  
**casa** house  
**caserma** barracks  
**cassettone** *m.* the bureau  
     (furniture)  
**cassiere** *m.* cashier  
**castagna** chestnut  
**castrato** mutton  
**catacombe** catacombs  
**cattedrale** *f.* cathedral  
**cattivo** bad  
     fa . . . tempo the weather is bad  
**cattolico** catholic  
**cavallo** horse  
**c'è** there is  
**Ceco-slovacchia** Czechoslovakia  
**cedere** to yield, to cede  
**celebrare** celebrate  
**celeste** blue  
**cena** supper  
**cenare** to have supper  
**centesimo** cent  
**centigrado** centigrade  
**centinaia** *f. pl.* hundreds  
**centinaio** about a hundred  
**cento** one hundred  
**centrale** central  
**centro** center  
**cera** appearance, look  
     **avere buona . . .** to look well  
**cercare** to look for, seek  
     . . . di to try to  
**cereale** *m.* cereal  
**certamente** certainly  
**certo** certain, certainly  
**cesta** basket  
**che** who, that, whom, which, what,  
     what a, than  
     **non (verb) . . .** only  
**che cosa?** what?  
**chi** who, whom  
**chiamare** to call  
**chiamarsi** to be called (name)  
**chiarore** *m.* light  
**chiave** *f.* key  
**chiedere** to ask  
**chiesa** church

- chilo** kilogram  
**chilogrammo** kilogram  
**chilometro** kilometer  
**chiudere** to close  
**chiunque** whoever  
**ci** there; us, to us  
**cibo** food  
**cima** summit, top  
**cimitero** cemetery  
**cinema** *m.* motion picture theater  
**cintura** belt, waist  
**cinquanta** fifty  
**cinque** five  
**ciò** that  
     **dopo di . . .** after that  
**cioccolata** chocolate  
**ciòè** that is, that is to say  
**cipria** powder  
**circa** about  
**circolazione** *f.* currency, circulation  
**città** city  
**civiltà** civilization  
**classe** *f.* class  
**clima** *m.* climate  
**clinica** doctor's office, clinic  
**cognata** sister-in-law  
**cognato** brother-in-law  
**colazione** *f.* breakfast  
**colle** *m.* hill  
**colletto** collar  
**collina** hill  
**collo** neck  
**colore** *m.* color  
**coltello** knife  
**comandante** *m.* commander  
**come** as, like  
**cominciare** to begin  
**comico** funny  
**commerciale** commercial  
**commerciante** *m.* merchant  
**commercio** trade, commerce  
**commosso** moved, touched  
**commovente** moving, touching  
**comodino** night table  
**comodo** comfortable  
     **quando le fa . . .** whenever it suits you  
**compagnia** company  
**completamente** completely  
**completo** complete  
**compone, si** is composed  
**compositore** *m.* composer  
**composto** composed  
**comprare** to buy  
**con** with  
**concedere** to grant  
     **ti sarà concesso** it will be granted to you  
**concerto** concert  
**conciliazione** *f.* conciliation  
**condimento** seasoning  
**condito** seasoned  
**condizione** *f.* condition  
**confessare** to confess  
**conforto** comfort  
**congelare** to freeze  
**connazionale** *m.* fellow countryman  
**conoscenza** acquaintance, knowledge  
     **fare la . . .** to make the acquaintance  
**conoscere** to know  
**conoscitore** *m.* connoisseur  
**consegnare** to deliver  
**conservare** to keep, preserve  
     **. . . agli atti** to keep on record  
**consigliare** to advise  
**consiglio** advice  
**consistere di** to consist of  
**contabilità** accounting  
**contadino** peasant  
**contanti, in** for cash  
**contare** to count  
**contento** glad  
**conto** check, bill  
**contorno** side dish  
**contrada** quarter, section, (of a city)  
**contrario** opposite, contrary  
     **al . . .** on the other hand, on the contrary  
**contro** against  
**controllo della dogana** customs inspection  
**convincere** to convince  
**conversazione** *f.* conversation  
**convinto** convinced  
**coperta** blanket  
     **sopra . . .** on deck  
**coperto** cover, place setting  
**copia** copy, duplicate  
     **in duplice . . .** in duplicate  
**coppia** couple  
**coprire** to cover  
**coraggio** courage

corpo body  
 correre to run  
 corrispondenza correspondence  
   sbrigare la . . . to write the  
   correspondence  
 corsa race  
   fare una . . . to run a race  
 corso boulevard, course  
 cortesia courtesy  
 cortile *m.* courtyard, inner court  
 corto short  
 così thus, so  
 cosparsa strewn  
 costa coast  
 costare to cost  
 costoletta chop  
 costruire to construct, build  
 costume *m.* costume, custom  
 cotone *m.* cotton  
 cotto cooked  
   ben . . . well done, well cooked  
 cravatta necktie  
 creatura creature  
 creazione *f.* creation  
 credenza buffet  
 credere to believe  
 credito credit  
   a . . . on credit  
 crema cream  
   . . . a base d'olio cold cream  
 crescere to grow  
 crespo crepe  
 cristianesimo Christianity  
 Cristo Christ  
 crollare to collapse, to fall to pieces  
 crudo raw  
 cucchiaino spoon  
 cucchiaino teaspoon  
 cucina kitchen  
 cucinare to cook  
 cucire to sew  
 cucitura seam, sewing  
 cugino,-a cousin  
 cultura culture  
 cuoio leather  
 cuore *m.* heart  
   nel . . . della città in the center of  
   the city  
 cupo deep dark (in ref. to a color)  
 cupola cupola  
 cuscino pillow

## D

da from  
 danaro money  
 dappertutto everywhere  
 dare to give  
   . . . su to face, open upon  
 davanti in front  
 davvero really  
 decadenza decadence  
 decidere to decide  
 decimo tenth  
 decisione *f.* decision  
 decollare to take off (aviation)  
 definire to define  
 delizioso delicious  
 denaro money  
 dente *f.* tooth  
 dentifricio toothpaste  
 dentista *m. & f.* dentist  
 dentro inside  
 depositare to deposit, check  
 deposito di bagagli checkroom  
   (for baggage)  
 descrivere to describe  
 descrizione *f.* description  
 desiderare to wish, to desire  
 desideroso desirous  
 destra, a to the right  
 destramente expertly, skillfully  
 detenuto prisoner  
 dettagliato detailed  
 devo I must  
 di of  
 diamante *m.* diamond  
 dicembre *m.* December  
 dichiarare to declare  
 diciotto eighteen  
 diciannove nineteen  
 diciassette seventeen  
 dieci ten  
 diecina about ten  
 dietro behind  
 differente different  
 differenza difference  
 difficile difficult  
 difficoltà difficulty  
 Dio God  
 dimenticare to forget  
 dimostrare to show  
 dipingere to paint  
 dire to say, tell

**direttamente** directly  
**direttore** *m.* director  
**dirigente** *m.* manager  
**disastro** disaster  
**discesa**, in dropping  
**discutere** to discuss  
**disopra**, al above  
**disotto**, al below  
**dispiacere** to displease  
**dispiace**, mi I am sorry  
**disposizione** *f.* disposition  
     a sua . . . at your service  
**disposto** disposed  
**distante** distant  
**distanza** distance  
**distinguere** to distinguish  
**disturbare** to bother, to disturb  
**disturbo** bother, disturbance  
**dito** (*pl.* le dita) finger  
**ditta** *f.* firm  
**divano** sofa  
**diventare** become  
**diversi** several  
**diverso** different  
     diverse volte several times  
**divertente** amusing  
**divertimento** amusement  
**dividere** divide  
**divinamente** divinely  
**dizionario** dictionary  
**doccia** shower (bath)  
**dodici** twelve  
**dogana** customs house  
**doganiere** *m.* customs officer  
**dolce** *adj.* sweet; *n. m.* dessert  
**dollaro** dollar  
**dolore** *m.* pain, ache  
**doloroso** painful  
**domandare** to ask  
**domani** tomorrow  
**domenica** Sunday  
**domestica** maid  
**domicilio**, a at home, to the house  
**dominare** dominate  
**donna** woman  
**dopodomani** the day after  
     tomorrow  
**doppio** *m.* double  
**dopo**, dopo di after  
**dormire** to sleep  
**dotto** learned  
**dottore** *m.* doctor

**dove** where  
**dov'è?** where is?  
**dovere** must, to have to, owe  
**dovere** *m.* duty  
**dovunque** anywhere, everywhere  
**dovuto** due  
**dozzina** dozen  
**dubbio** doubt  
**due** two  
**dunque** therefore  
**durante** during  
**durare** to last  
**duraturo** lasting  
**duro** tough, hard

**E**

**e**, ed and  
**ebreo** Jewish  
**eccellente** excellent  
**eccetto** except  
**ecco** here is, here are; there is,  
     there are  
**economico** economical  
**edificio** building  
**Egitto** Egypt  
**egli** he  
**eguale** equal, even, alike  
**elegante** elegant, stylish  
**elettricità** electricity  
**elettrico** electric  
**ella** she  
**entusiasmo** enthusiasm  
**entusiasta** *m. & f.* enthusiastic  
**entrare** to enter, come in  
**epoca** epoch, era  
**eppure** yet, nevertheless  
**eruzione** *f.* eruption  
**esagerare** exaggerate  
**esaminare** to examine  
**esattamente** exactly  
**esattezza** exactness  
**esatto** exact  
**esempio** example  
**esistere** exist  
**esplorare** to explore  
**esportare** to export  
**espressione** *f.* expression  
**essa** *f.* she, it  
**esse** *f.* they, them  
**essenziale** essential  
**essi** *m.* they, them  
**estasiato** ecstatic



estate *f.* summer  
 estero foreign  
 . . . , all' abroad  
 estivo *adj.* summer  
 età age (of a person)  
 eterno eternal  
 evento event  
 evitare to avoid

## F

fabbrica factory  
 fabbricazione *f.* manufacture  
 faccia face  
 facile easy  
 fame *f.* hunger  
 avere . . . to be hungry  
 famiglia family  
 famoso famous  
 fango mud  
 c'è . . . it's muddy  
 fare to do, to make  
 . . . colazione to have breakfast  
 farmacia drugstore, pharmacy  
 fascino charm  
 favorevole favorable  
 favoriscal come in!  
 fazzoletto handkerchief  
 febbraio February  
 febbre *f.* fever  
 fedele faithful  
 felice happy  
 felicità happiness  
 feltro felt  
 fermare to stop  
 fermato stopped  
 ferrovia railroad  
 fervente burning, fervent  
 festa festival, holiday  
 fiamma flame  
 fianco (*pl.* fianchi) hip  
 fico (*pl.* fichi) fig  
 fidanzato fiancé  
 figlia daughter  
 figlio son  
 figuri, sil of course! you can  
 imaginel  
 fila row, line  
 in . . . on line  
 filetto filet, filet mignon  
 film *m.* film, motion picture  
 filo thread

finalmente finally  
 finestra window  
 finire to finish  
 fino a up to, until, as far as  
 fiore *m.* flower  
 firmare to sign  
 fisico physicist  
 fiume *m.* river  
 flannel flannel  
 folla crowd  
 fontana fountain  
 fonografo phonograph  
 forbici *f. pl.* scissors  
 forchetta fork  
 forestiero foreigner  
 formaggio cheese  
 formalità formality  
 formato format, shape  
 forse maybe, perhaps  
 forte loud, strong  
 fortuna luck  
 per . . . luckily  
 fortunato fortunate, lucky  
 fotografia photograph  
 fare una . . . to take a picture  
 fra between, among  
 francese *m. & f.* French  
 Francia France  
 fratello brother  
 frattempo, nel in the meantime  
 freddo cold  
 fa . . . it is cold  
 frequentemente frequently  
 fresco *adj.* fresh, cool  
 fa . . . it is cool  
 fretta hurry  
 ho . . . I am in a hurry  
 friggere to fry  
 frigorifero refrigerator  
 frittata omelet  
 fritto fried  
 frutta fruit (at the table)  
 frutto fruit  
 fumare to smoke  
 funicolare *f.* funicular, cable railway  
 funziona, non it is out of order

## G

gabbia cage  
 gabinetto toilet  
 galante gallant

galanteria gallantry  
 galosce *f. pl.* overshoes, rubbers  
 gamba leg  
 gas *m.* gas  
 gatto cat  
 gelato ice cream  
 gelo frost  
     *si* gela it's freezing  
 geloso jealous  
 generalmente ordinarily, generally,  
     usually  
 genio genius  
 genitore *m.* parent  
 gennaio January  
 gentile kind  
 gentilezza kindness  
 geologo geologist  
 ghiaccio ice  
 già already  
 giacca jacket, coat  
     ... *lenta* loose jacket  
     ... *aderente* close fitting jacket  
 giacchè inasmuch as, since  
 giallo yellow  
 giardino garden  
 gigantesco gigantic  
 giocare to play  
 giocatore *m.* player  
 giocattolo toy  
 giogo yoke  
 gioia joy  
 giornale *m.* newspaper, journal  
     (*business*)  
 giornata day (in its duration)  
 giorno day  
 giovane young  
 giovedì *m.* Thursday  
 gita trip  
 giugno June  
 giustizia justice  
     palazzo di ... court house  
 gloria glory  
 golfo gulf  
 gomma rubber, eraser  
 gonnella skirt  
 governare to govern, rule  
 gradevole agreeable  
 grado degree  
 grande big, large  
 grano wheat  
 grasso fat

grato grateful  
 gratis free  
 grave serious, grave  
 gravità gravity  
 grazie thank you  
 grazioso pretty  
 Grecia Greece  
 gridare to shout, cry  
 grido scream  
 grigio gray  
 grillo cricket  
 gruppo group  
 guadagno profit, gain  
 guanto glove  
 guarnizioni *f. pl.* trimmings  
 guasto *n.* damage, something out  
     of order  
 guerra war  
 guida guide  
 guidare drive  
 gusto taste

## H

ha you (*pol. sing.*) have, he has,  
     she has  
 hai you (*fam. sing.*) have  
 hanno you (*polite pl.*) have, they  
     have  
 ho I have

## I

idea idea  
 ideare to conceive  
 immensamente immensely  
 incantevole enchanting  
 incontrare to meet  
 incontro meeting  
 indossare wear  
 indubbiamente undoubtedly  
 ieri yesterday  
 ignorante ignorant  
 ignoranza ignorance  
 illustrazione *f.* illustration  
 illustre illustrious  
 imbarcarsi to embark, sail  
 immaginare to imagine  
 immediatamente immediately,  
     at once  
 immortale immortal  
 imparare to learn

**impermeabile** *m.* raincoat  
**Impero Romano** Roman Empire  
**impiegato** employed; *n.* employee  
**imponente** imposing  
**importa, non** it doesn't matter  
**importare** to import; to be of consequence  
**impossibile** impossible  
**impossibilità** impossibility  
**impressione** *f.* impression  
**in** in  
**incantevole** enchanting  
**inchiostro** ink  
**inciso** engraved  
**includere** include  
**indescrivibilmente** indescribably  
**indicare** to indicate, point  
**indietro** behind  
**va . . .** it is slow (of a watch)  
**indimenticabile** unforgettable  
**indirizzo** address, direction  
**indovinare** to guess  
**indubbiamente** undoubtedly  
**industria** industry  
**industriale** industrial  
**inestimabile** incalculable  
**infanzia** childhood  
**infatti** in fact  
**infinito** infinite  
**informare** inform  
**ingegnere** *m.* engineer  
**Inghilterra** England  
**inglese** *m. & f.* English  
**ingrosso, all'** wholesale  
**iniziare** to start  
**innegabile** undeniable  
**insalata** salad  
**insegnare** to teach  
**insieme** together  
**insipido** tasteless  
**intanto** meanwhile  
**intellettuale** intellectual  
**intelligente** intelligent  
**intende, s'-** of course, it's understood  
**interessante** interesting  
**intero** entire  
**interrogazione** *f.* question  
**interrompere** interrupt  
**intimo** intimate  
**intrepido** intrepid, fearless  
**intrusione** *f.* intrusion  
**inutile** useless

**invano** in vain  
**introduzione** *f.* introduction  
**invaso** taken hold, invaded  
**invasore** *m.* invader  
**invece** instead  
**inventore** *m.* inventor  
**inverno** winter  
**invitare** to invite  
**invitato** guest  
**invocante** invoking  
**io** I  
**isola** island  
**isoletta** small island  
**ispirazione** *f.* inspiration  
**Italia** Italy  
**italiano** Italian  
**itinerario** itinerary

## L

**là** there  
**labirinto** labyrinth  
**laborioso** hard working  
**laggiù** down there  
**lagnarsi** to complain  
**lago** lake  
**lagrima** tear  
**laguna** lagoon  
**lametta** razor blade  
**lampada** lamp  
**lampadina** lamp bulb  
**lampo** lighting  
**lampeggia** it's lighting  
**lana** wool  
**lancetta** hand (of a watch or clock)  
**lanciare** to throw  
**lapis** *m.* pencil  
**largo** wide, large  
**lasciare** to leave, to let, allow  
**lassù** up there  
**lato** side  
**latte** *m.* milk  
**lattuga** lettuce  
**lava** lava  
**lavabo** wash basin  
**lavanderia** laundry  
**lavarsi** to wash oneself  
**legale** legal  
**legalizzare** legalize  
**legge** *f.* law  
**legno** wood  
**legumi** *m. pl.* vegetables, legumes

lei you (*pol. sing.*)  
 lento slow  
 lenzuolo (*pl. le lenzuola*) bed sheet  
 leone *m.* lion  
 lettera letter  
 ... di cambio letter of exchange  
 letteratura literature  
 letto bed  
 lezione *f.* lesson  
 lì there  
 liberazione *f.* liberation  
 libero free, unoccupied  
 libro book  
 ... di cassa cash book  
 ... mastro ledger  
 lido seashore  
 lieto glad  
 limone *m.* lemon  
 lingua language, tongue  
 lino linen  
 liscio smooth  
 non se la passa liscia you won't  
 get away with it  
 lista list  
 ... delle vivande menu  
 ... dei vini wine list  
 logico logical  
 Londra London  
 lontano far  
 loro you (*pol. pl.*), they, them  
 luce *f.* light  
 ... elettrica electric light  
 luglio July  
 luminoso bright  
 luna moon  
 ... di miele honeymoon  
 lunedì *m.* Monday  
 lungo long  
 a ... for a long time  
 luogo (*pl. luoghi*) place  
 lupo wolf  
 lusso luxury  
 lussureggiante luxurious,  
 luxuriant

M

ma but, however  
 macchina machine, car  
 ... cinematografica movie camera  
 ... da cucire sewing machine

... da scrivere typewriter  
 ... fotografica camera  
 madre *f.* mother  
 maestro teacher  
 maggio May  
 maggiore major  
 la maggior parte most, the  
 majority  
 magnifico magnificent, wonderful  
 mai never  
 non ... (verb) ... mai never  
 maiale *m.* pork  
 mal di testa headache  
 malamente badly  
 malato ill  
 male bad  
 non c'è ... not bad  
 sto ... I am ill, I feel sick  
 mamma mother  
 mancia tip  
 mangiare to eat  
 manica (*pl. maniche*) sleeve  
 mantenere to keep  
 marciapiede *m.* sidewalk  
 mare *m.* sea  
 marina navy  
 marito husband  
 marmellata jam  
 marmo marble  
 martedì *m.* Tuesday  
 martello hammer  
 marzo March  
 massimo maximum  
 matematico mathematician  
 materasso mattress  
 matita pencil  
 mattina morning  
 di or la ... in the morning  
 mattino morning  
 me me  
 meccanismo movement (of a watch)  
 medicina medicine  
 medico doctor, physician  
 medioevale medieval  
 medio evo Middle Ages  
 meglio better  
 mela apple  
 melodioso melodious  
 meno less  
 a ... che unless

mensilmente monthly  
 mente *f.* mind  
 mentire to lie  
 mentre while  
 meraviglia marvel, wonder  
 meravigliosamente marvelously  
 meraviglioso wonderful, marvelous  
 mercato market  
   a buon . . . cheap, inexpensive  
 merce *f.* merchandise  
 mercoledì Wednesday  
 meritare to deserve  
 merletto lace  
 mese *m.* month  
 messa Mass  
 messaggio message  
 metà half  
 mettere to put, put on  
 metro meter  
 mezzanotte *f.* midnight  
 mezzo middle, half, means  
   non c'è altra via di . . . there is no  
   other way  
 mezzogiorno noon  
 miei *m. pl.* my, mine  
 microscopio microscope  
 miei my, mine  
 miele *m.* honey  
 migliaia *f. pl.* thousands  
 migliorare to get better  
 migliore better  
 mila (*pl.* mille) one thousand  
 milione *m.* million  
 milite *m.* soldier  
   Milite Ignoto Unknown Soldier  
 minacciare to threaten  
 minestrone *m.* minestrone, thick  
   vegetable soup  
 minuto minute  
 minuto, al retail  
 mio my, mine  
 mischiare mix  
 misura measurement, measure, size  
   prendere la . . . to take the  
   measurement  
 mite mild  
 mobile *adj.* movable; *n. m.* piece of  
   furniture  
 mobilia furniture

modello pattern, model  
 moderato moderate, reasonable  
 moda fashion  
 moderazione *f.* moderation  
 moderno modern  
 modesto modest  
 modo manner  
   in ispecial . . . especially  
 mogano mahogany  
 moglie *f.* wife  
 molla spring  
 molo pier  
 moltissimo very much  
 molto *adj.* much, a great deal;  
   *adv.* very  
 momento moment  
   . . . , al at present  
 mondiale of the world  
 mondo world  
 montagna mountain  
 monumento monument  
 moro Moor  
 morso bite  
 mostrare to show  
 motocicletta motorcycle  
 motore *m.* motor  
 municipio city hall  
 muovere move  
 muro wall  
 museo museum  
 musica music  
 musicista *m. & f.* musician  
 mutande *f. pl.* underwear, shorts

## N

nacque was born  
 nascere to be born  
 nascita birth  
 napoletano Neapolitan  
 nastro ribbon  
 naturalmente naturally  
 Natale *m.* Christmas  
 naturale natural  
 naturalmente naturally  
 nazione *f.* nation  
 nazionalità *f.* nationality  
 nè . . . nè neither . . . nor

**nebbia** fog  
 c'è . . . it's foggy  
**necessità** necessity  
**negare** to deny  
**negozio** store  
**nemico** (*pl. nemici*) enemy  
**nemmeno** not even  
**nero** black  
**nessuno** nobody  
**neve** *f.* snow  
**nevica** it is snowing  
**niente** nothing  
 . . . affatto not at all  
**nipote** *m.* nephew; *f.* niece  
**no** no  
**nobile** *m.n.* nobleman; *adj.* noble  
**noce** nut (*tree m.*; *fruit f.*)  
 . . . di cocco coconut  
**noi** we  
**noleggìo, prendere in** to rent  
**nome** *m.* name  
**nonna** grandmother  
**nonno** grandfather  
**nono** ninth  
**nord** *m.* north  
**normalmente** usually, normally  
**nostalgia** nostalgia, longing  
**nota** note  
**notare** to note, notice  
**notaio** notary  
**notte** *f.* night  
**novanta** ninety  
**nove** nine  
**novella** short story  
**novembre** *m.* November  
**nulla** nothing  
**numero** number, size  
**nuotare** to swim  
**nuovamente** again  
**nuovo** new  
**nutriente** nutritious  
**nuvola** cloud  
**nuvoloso** cloudy

## O

**o** or  
**occasione** *f.* occasion  
 colgo questa . . . I take this  
 occasion

**occupare** occupy  
**occupato** busy, occupied  
**odiare** to hate  
**odorare** to smell  
**offerta** *n.* offer  
**offrire** to offer  
**oggetto** object  
**oggi** today  
 al giorno d' . . . nowadays  
 . . . ad otto a week from today  
 . . . stesso this very day  
**ogni** each, every  
**ognuno** everyone, everybody  
**Olanda** Holland  
**olio** oil  
**oliva** olive  
**olivo** olive tree  
**oltre** more, beside  
**ombra** shade, shadow  
**ombrello** umbrella  
**onda** wave  
**onesto** honest  
**onorario** fee  
**onore** *m.* honor  
 fare . . . to honor  
**opera** opera, work  
 . . . d'arte work of art  
**opinione** *f.* opinion  
**oppure** or, otherwise  
**opuscolo** pamphlet  
**ora** *n.* hour, time  
 che . . . è? what time is it?  
**ora** *adv.* now  
 da . . . in poi from now on  
**proprio** . . . just now  
 fin da . . . as of now  
**orario** timetable  
 in . . . on time  
**orecchio** ear  
**orgoglio** pride  
**orgoglioso** proud  
**origine** *f.* origin  
**orlo** edge  
**ormai** (*oramai*) by now  
**oro** gold  
**orologeria** watchmaker's shop  
**orologiaio** watchmaker

orologio watch  
 ... a pendolo wall clock  
 ... a sveglia alarm clock  
 ... da polso wrist watch  
 ... da tasca pocket watch  
 orrendo horrendous, horrible  
 oscillazione *f.* oscillation, swinging  
 oscurità darkness  
 ospedale *m.* hospital  
 ospitale hospitable  
 ospitalità hospitality  
 ospite *m. & f.* guest  
 ottanta eighty  
 ottavo eighth  
 ottimo excellent  
 otto eight  
 ottobre *m.* October  
 ovest west  
 ovunque anywhere, everywhere

## P

pacco package  
 pacchetto little package  
 pace *f.* peace  
 padre *m.* father  
 paese *m.* country  
 Paesi Bassi Low Countries  
 pagamento payment  
 pagare to pay  
 paio pair  
 palazzo building, palace  
 palma palm tree, palm  
 panciera girdle  
 panciotto vest  
 pane *m.* bread  
 panino roll (bread)  
 panorama *m.* panorama, view  
 pantofola slipper  
 Papa *m.* Pope  
 paradiso paradise  
 paralume *m.* lamp shade  
 parapioggia *m.* umbrella  
 parata parade  
 parco (*pl.* parchi) park  
 parente *m. & f.* relative  
 pari even  
 Parigi Paris  
 parlare to speak  
 parola word  
 parte *f.* part

la maggior ... the larger part,  
 most  
 da questa ... this way  
 partenza departure  
 partire to leave, to depart  
 partita *n.* game, contest  
 Pasqua Easter  
 passaporto passport  
 passare to pass, to spend (time)  
 passatempo pastime  
 passeggiata walk  
 passeggio *n.* walk, walking  
 da ... for walking  
 pasticcino pastry  
 pasto meal  
 patata potato  
 purè di patate mashed potatoes  
 patria homeland, mother country  
 patriottico patriotic  
 paura fear  
 ho ... I am afraid  
 pecora sheep  
 pedone *m.* pedestrian  
 peggio worse  
 pelle *f.* leather, skin  
 pellicola film, motion picture  
 pena pain  
 non vale la ... it is not worthwhile  
 pendolo pendulum  
 penicillina penicillin  
 penna pen  
 ... stilografica fountain pen  
 pensare to think  
 pensatore *f.* thinker  
 pensiero thought  
 pensione *f.* board, boarding house  
 pentirsi to repent, regret  
 pepe *m.* pepper  
 per for  
 per cento per cent  
 perchè because  
 perché? why?  
 perdere to lose  
 perdonare to forgive, pardon  
 peregrinazione *f.* wandering  
 perenne perennial, everlasting  
 perfettamente perfectly  
 perfetto perfect  
 perfezione *f.* perfection  
 pericolo danger  
 pericoloso dangerous  
 periferia suburbs

**periodo** period  
**permanenza** stay  
**permettere** to permit, allow  
**però** however  
**persona** person  
**personale** personal  
**pesante** heavy  
**pesare** to weigh  
**pesarsi** to weigh oneself  
**pesca, la** fishing  
**pescare** to fish  
**pesce** *m.* fish  
**peso** weight  
**petrolio** petroleum  
**pettine** *m.* comb  
**pezzo** piece  
**piacere** to like; *n.m.* pleasure, favor  
**per . . . please**  
**piacevole** pleasant, agreeable  
**piangere** to cry, weep  
**piano** floor, story (of a house)  
**pianura** plain  
**pianta** map, plant  
**pianterreno** ground floor  
**piatto** dish, plate  
**piattino** saucer  
**piazza** square  
**piccante** sharp, spicy  
**piccolo** small  
**piede** *f.* foot  
**piacevole** agreeable  
**pietanza** course (of a dinner)  
**pigliare** to catch  
**pigione** *f.* rent  
**pillola** pill  
**pioggia** rain  
**piove** it is raining  
**piroscafo** ship, steamer, liner  
**pittore** *m.* painter  
**pittresco** picturesque  
**più** more  
**pitturare** to paint  
**po', un** a little, some  
**pochino** a very little bit  
**poco** (*pl.* pochi) little, some  
**. . . fa** a while ago  
**poesia** poem  
**poi** after, then  
**poichè** since, inasmuch as

**politico** political  
**polizia** police  
**polizza di carico** bill of lading  
**pollo** chicken  
**. . . arrosto** roast chicken  
**. . . alla cacciatora** chicken fricassee  
**Polonia** Poland  
**polino** cuff (of a shirt)  
**polso** pulse, wrist  
**poltrona** armchair  
**pomeriggio** afternoon  
**pomodoro** tomato  
**salsa di pomodori** tomato sauce  
**pompelmo** grapefruit  
**ponte** *m.* bridge  
**popolare** popular  
**popolo** people  
**porgere** to give, to hand  
**porta** door  
**portamonete** *m.* change purse  
**portare** to carry, to bring  
**porto** port  
**possibile** possible  
**posso** I can  
**posta** post office, mail  
**. . . aerea** air mail  
**posto** place  
**potente** powerful  
**potere** to be able to  
**povero** poor  
**pranzare** to dine  
**pranzo** dinner  
**a . . . at dinner, for dinner**  
**precisamente** precisely, exactly  
**preciso** precise; sharp (of hours)  
**prediletto** cherished  
**preferenza** preference  
**preferire** to prefer  
**pregare** to pray, beg  
**prego** don't mention it (in reply to *grazie*)  
**prendere** to take  
**prenotare** to reserve  
**prenotazione** *f.* reservation  
**preoccupazione** *f.* worry  
**preparare** to prepare  
**prepararsi** to get ready  
**presentare** to introduce, present  
**presente** present



## 314 THE CORTINA METHOD

**presenza** presence  
**press'a poco** just about  
**prestare** to lend  
**presto** soon, early  
     a . . . see you soon  
**prezioso** precious  
**prezzo** price  
**prigioniero** prisoner  
**prima** before  
     . . . di tutto before everything else  
**primavera** spring  
**primo** first  
**principe** *m.* prince  
**probabilmente** probably  
**procedere** to proceed  
**procura** power of attorney  
**prodotto** product  
**professore** *m.* professor  
**profondità** depth  
**profumeria** perfume shop  
**profumo** perfume  
**programma** *m.* program  
**prolungare** prolong  
**promessa** promise  
**pronto** ready  
**pronunzia** pronunciation  
**proposito**, a by the way  
**propriamente** exactly  
**proprio** own, real, really  
**prosatore** *m.* prose writer  
**prosciutto** Italian ham  
**prossimo** next  
**protesta** protest  
**provare** to try, try on  
**pubblico** public  
**pulire** to clean  
**punto** point; period; stitch  
**puntuale** punctual  
**può** can  
     si . . . may I come in?  
**purtroppo** unfortunately

### Q

**quaderno** notebook  
**quadrante** *m.* face (of a watch)  
**quadro** picture  
**qualche cosa** something  
**quale?** which?  
**qualcuno** somebody  
**qualità** quality

**qualora** whenever  
**qualsiasi** any, no matter which  
**qualunque** any  
**quando** when  
**quanto** as, as much, how much?  
     a . . . mi è stato detto from what I  
     have been told  
**quaranta** forty  
**quartiere** *m.* quarter (of a city)  
**quarto** fourth, quarter  
**quasi** nearly, almost  
**quattordici** fourteen  
**quattro** four  
**questo** this  
**qui** here  
**quindi** therefore  
**quindici** fifteen  
**quindicina** about fifteen, a fortnight  
**quinto** fifth  
**quotidiano** daily

### R

**raccolta** collection  
**rada** bay, road  
**radio** *f.* radio  
**radunarsi** to go together  
**raffreddore** *m.* cold  
     prendere un . . . to catch a cold  
**ragazza** girl  
**ragazzino** little boy  
**ragazzo** boy  
**raggiungere** to reach  
**ragione** *f.* reason  
     avere . . . to be right  
**rammentare** to remind  
**ramo** branch (of a tree)  
**rapido** rapid  
**rappresaglia** reprisal  
**rappresentante** *m.* representative,  
     agent  
**rappresentazione** *f.* performance  
**raro** rare  
**rasoio** razor  
**rata** rate  
**re** *m.* king  
**recente** recent  
**recentemente** recently  
**redigere** to draw up  
**reggipetto** brassiere  
**regina** queen

**regione** *f.* region  
**registro** register  
**regno** kingdom  
**religione** *f.* religion  
**religioso** religious  
**reliquia** relic  
**repubblica** republic  
**repentino** sudden  
**residenziale** residential  
**restaurato** restored  
**resto** remainder, change, rest  
**restrizione** *f.* restriction  
**ricamo** embroidery  
**ricchezza** wealth  
**ricco** (*m.pl.* ricchi; *f.pl.* ricche) rich  
**ricetta** prescription  
**ricevere** to receive  
**ricevuta** receipt  
**ricoscente** grateful  
**ricoscere** recognize  
**ricordare** to remember; to record  
**ricordarsi** to remember  
**ricordo** souvenir  
**ridere** to laugh  
**riempire** to fill  
**rifutare** to refuse  
**rifugiarsi** to seek refuge  
**riga** ruler  
**rimanere** to remain  
**Rinascimento** Renaissance  
**ringraziare** to thank  
**riparare** to repair, fix  
**ripetere** to repeat  
**riposarsi** to rest  
**riposo** rest  
**riscaldamento** heat  
     ... centrale central heating  
**riscuotere** to cash  
**riso** laughter, rice  
**risorto** resurrected  
**risparmiare** to save  
**rispondere** to answer  
**ristorante** *m.* restaurant  
**risurrezione** resurrection  
**ritornare** to return  
**riunirsi** to gather, to meet  
**rivedere** to see again  
**rivelare** reveal  
**rivincita** return match  
**roccioso** rocky  
**romanzo** novel  
**rompere** to break, tear

**rosa** rose  
**rosso** red  
**rotto** broken  
**rovinato** ruined, damaged  
**rubare** to rob, steal  
**rubino** ruby, jewel (of a watch)  
**ruderi** *m.pl.* ruins  
**rullo** roll  
**Rumenia** or **Romania** Rumania  
**ruota** wheel  
**Russia** Russia  
**russo** Russian

**S**

**sabato** Saturday  
**sacrificio** sacrifice  
**sala** room, hall  
     ... da pranzo dining room  
     ... d'aspetto waiting room  
**salato** salted, salty  
**sale** *m.* salt  
**salire** to go up, climb  
**salotto** living room  
**salsa** sauce  
**saltare** to jump  
**salutare** to greet  
**saluto** greeting  
**salute** *f.* health  
**San Giovanni** St. John  
**sangue** *m.* blood  
     al ... rare (meat)  
**sanguinoso** bloody  
**San Paolo** St. Paul  
**San Pietro** St. Peter  
**Santa Maria** St. Mary  
**Santa Sede** *f.* Holy See  
**santo** *adj.* holy, saintly; *n.* saint  
**santuario** sanctuary  
**sapere** to know  
**sapone** *m.* soap  
**sarta** dressmaker  
**sarto** tailor  
**sartoria** tailor shop  
**sasso** stone  
**sbagliarsi** to be mistaken  
**sbaglio** mistake, error  
     se non mi ... if I am not mistaken  
**sbalzato** embossed  
**sbrigare** to settle, regulate  
**sbrigarsi** to get through  
**sbrighiamoci** let's hurry

scacchi *m. pl.* chess  
 scala stairway, ladder  
 scale stairs  
 scambio exchange  
 scarpa shoe  
 scatola box  
 scavi *m. pl.* excavations  
 scegliere to choose  
 scelto chosen  
 scena scene  
 scendere to descend  
 scherzare to joke, jest  
 scienza science  
 scienziato scientist  
 scivolare to slip, glide  
 scolpito sculptured  
 scommettere to bet, wager  
 scompartimento compartment  
 scoprire to discover  
 scoraggiato discouraged  
 scorretto incorrect  
 scritto written  
 scrittoio desk  
 scrittore *m.* writer  
 scrivere to write  
     ... a macchina to typewrite  
 scultore *m.* sculptor  
 scuola school  
 scusare to excuse  
     scusil excuse me  
 se if  
 sebbene although  
 secco dry  
 secolo century  
 secondo second; according to  
 sedano celery  
 sede *f.* office  
     ... centrale main office  
 sedersi to sit  
 sedia chair  
 sedici sixteen  
 sedile *m.* seat  
 segno sign  
 segretamente secretly  
 seguire to follow  
 sei six  
 sembrare to seem  
     mi sembra it seems to me  
 semplice simple  
 semplicemente simply, just  
 sempre always

sentire feel, hear  
 senza without  
 senz'altro without fail  
 sepolto buried  
 sera evening  
 serata evening (in its duration)  
 servire to serve  
 servirla, al at your service  
 sessanta sixty  
 sesto sixth  
 seta silk  
 sete *f.* thirst  
     avere ... to be thirsty  
 settanta seventy  
 sette seven  
 settembre *m.* September  
 settimana week  
     ... prossima next week  
     ... scorsa last week  
 settimo seventh  
 sfuggire escape  
 sfuggita, di hastily  
 si one, people, they  
     ... dice they say  
 sì yes  
 siccome since, inasmuch as  
 sicuro sure, certain  
     di ... for sure  
 sigaretta cigarette  
 sigaro cigar  
 significato meaning  
 signor mister  
 signora Mrs., madam, lady, wife  
 signore sir, gentleman  
 signorina miss, young lady  
 silenzio silence  
 silenziosamente silently  
 simile similar  
 simpatico charming, nice  
 sindaco mayor  
 sinistra, a to the left  
 sintomo symptom  
 sistemarsi to get settled  
 sito situated, located  
 soffocante suffocating, stifling  
 sognare to dream  
 sogno dream  
 sole *m.* sun  
     il ... brilla the sun is shining  
     il ... tramonta the sun is setting

**solito** usual  
 più del . . . more than usual  
**solo** *adv.* only; *adj.* alone, only, single  
**soltanto** only  
**sono, ci** there are  
**suntuoso** sumptuous  
**sopra** on, over  
**soprabito** overcoat  
**soprascarpe** *f.pl.* overshoes, rubbers  
**sorella** sister  
**sorgere** to rise  
**sostituire** to replace  
**sottana** slip, petticoat  
**sottile** thin  
**sotto** beneath, under  
**sottomarino** submarine  
**spaghetti** *m. pl.* spaghetti  
**Spagna** Spain  
**spagnuolo** Spanish, Spaniard  
**spalancare** to open wide  
**spalla** shoulder  
**sparire** to disappear  
**spaventarsi** to get frightened  
**spazzola** brush  
**spazzolare** to brush  
**spazzolino** tooth brush  
**specchio** mirror  
**speciale** special  
**specialmente** especially  
**spedire** to send  
**spedizione** *m.* expedition  
**spegnere** to extinguish  
**sperare** to hope  
**spesso** often  
**spettacolo** spectacle  
**spiaggia** beach  
**spiccioli** *m. pl.* change (money)  
**spiegare** to explain, unfold  
**spiegarsi** to make oneself clear  
**spinaci** *m. pl.* spinach  
**spinto** driven, pushed  
**splendore** *m.* splendor  
**sporco** dirty  
**sportello** window, pay window  
 (of a bank)  
**sposa** bride, wife  
**sposare** to marry  
**sposina** dear little wife  
**sposini** newlyweds  
**sprecare** to waste  
**spugna** sponge

**squadra** team  
**squillare** ring out  
**squisito** delicious, exquisite  
**stabile** *m.* building, house  
**stabilire** to establish  
**stagione** *f.* season  
**stagno** tin  
**stanco** tired  
**stare** to stay  
 . . . a pennello to fit perfectly  
 . . . in piedi to stand up  
 . . . per to be about to  
**stasera** tonight  
**Stati Uniti** *m. pl.* United States  
**stato** state  
**statua** statue  
**stazione** *m.* station  
 . . . balneare *f.* bathing resort  
**sterlina** pound sterling  
**sternutare** to sneeze  
**stesso** same  
**stile** *m.* style  
**stizzito** angry  
**stoffa** material, cloth  
**stomaco** stomach  
**storia** history, story  
**storico** historical  
**strada** street, road  
**strage** *f.* slaughter  
**strano** strange  
**stretto** tight, narrow  
**studente** *m.* student  
**studio** study  
**stufa** stove  
**stupendo** stupendous  
**stupido** stupid  
**sua** *f.* his, her, hers, your, yours  
**subito** at once; quickly  
**sublime** sublime  
**successore** *m.* successor  
**succursale** *f.* branch (of a firm)  
**sud** *m.* south  
**sudare** to perspire  
**sudore** *m.* perspiration  
**sigillo** seal  
**suo** his, her, hers, your, yours  
**suoi** *pl.* his, her, hers, your, yours  
**suola** sole (of a shoe)  
**suonare** to ring; strike (the hour);  
 to play (an instrument)  
**superfluo** superfluous  
**supporre** to suppose

svegliarsi to wake up  
 svestirsi to undress  
 sviluppo development  
 svizzero Swiss

## T

tabacco tobacco  
 tacco (*pl.* tacchi) heel  
 tanti, tante many  
 tanto so, so much  
 tappeto rug  
 tardi late  
 più . . . later  
 tasca pocket  
 tassa tax, duty  
 tassi *m.* taxi  
 tavola table  
 tazza cup  
 tè *m.* tea  
 teatro theater  
 tedesco (*pl.* tedeschi) German  
 telefonare to telephone  
 telefono telephone  
 telegramma *m.* telegram  
 telegrafare to telegraph  
 telescopio telescope  
 televisione *f.* television  
 temperatura temperature  
 tempesta storm  
 tempo time, weather  
 in or a . . . on time  
 fa bel . . . the weather is fine  
 . . . disponibile free time  
 tendina curtain  
 tenere to hold, keep  
 . . . il resto to keep the change  
 tenero tender  
 termometro thermometer  
 terra earth  
 terribile terrible  
 terzo third  
 tesoro treasure  
 tessuto cloth, fabric  
 testa head  
 testimonianza witness  
 titolo title, security  
 toccare to touch  
 ci toccherà we shall have to  
 togliere to take away from  
 toletta dressing table

tomba tomb  
 Torre Pendente *f.* Leaning Tower  
 torrenti, a pouring  
 torta cake  
 totale *n.m. & adj.* total  
 tovaglia tablecloth  
 tovagliolo napkin  
 tra between, among  
 tracciare trace, outline  
 tracciato outlined  
 tradurre to translate  
 traffico traffic  
 tramonto sunset  
 transazione *f.* transaction  
 trasportare to transport  
 trasporto transportation  
 tratta draft  
 trattenersi to remain  
 tre three  
 tredici thirteen  
 treno train  
 trenta thirty  
 tromba horn (of a car)  
 troppo too, too much  
 trovare to find  
 trovarsi to be; to be located; to find  
 oneself  
 trucidato slaughtered  
 truppe *f. pl.* troops  
 tu you (*jam. sing.*)  
 tuono thunder  
 tuona it is thundering  
 Turchia Turkey  
 turista *m.* tourist  
 tutt'altrol on the contrary, anything  
 but!  
 tuttavia nevertheless  
 tutto all, everything

## U

uccello bird  
 udienza audience  
 udire to hear  
 ufficio office  
 . . . postale post office  
 uguale alike, equal  
 ultimo last  
 umidità humidity, dampness  
 umido humid, damp  
 umile humble

undici eleven  
 unito united  
 università university  
 uno one  
 uomo (*pl. gli uomini*) man  
 uovo (*pl. le uova*) egg  
 uragano hurricane  
 urgente urgent  
 usanza custom  
 usare to use, employ  
 uscita exit  
 uso use, usage  
 utile useful  
 uva grape

V

va bene all right  
 vacanza vacation  
 valido valid  
 valigia (*pl. valigie*) valise, suitcase  
 valore *m.* value, security  
 vano room (empty, unfurnished)  
 vapore *m.* steamboat  
 varietà variety  
 vasca washtub  
 vasellame *m.* china  
 vasto large, vast  
 Vaticano Vatican  
 vecchio old  
 vedere to see  
 veduta view  
 veicolo vehicle  
 velluto velvet  
 veloce fast  
 vendere to sell  
 venerdì Friday  
 venire to come  
 venti twenty  
 ventina about twenty  
 vento wind  
     tira . . . it is windy  
 venturo next  
 venuta *n.* coming  
 veramente really, truly  
 verde green

verdura green vegetables  
 verità truth  
 vero true, real  
 vertigini *f. pl.* dizziness  
     avere le . . . to be dizzy  
 veste *f.* dress  
 vestiario clothing  
 vestirsi to dress (oneself)  
 vestito suit  
     confezionare un . . . to make a suit  
 vetro glass, crystal  
 vettura car (of a train); carriage  
 via *n.* street, avenue; *adv.* away  
     per . . . aerea by the mail  
 viaggiare to travel  
 viaggiatore *m.* traveler  
 viaggio trip, voyage  
     . . . di nozze honeymoon trip  
 vicino near; *n.* neighbor  
 vigilia eve  
 vino wine  
 visibile visible  
 visita visit  
 visitare to visit  
 vita waistline, life  
 vitella veal  
 vittoria victory  
 vocabolario vocabulary  
 voce *f.* voice  
 voi you (*fam. pl.*)  
 volentieri willingly  
 volere to want, wish  
 volta turn; way; road  
     una . . . once  
     qualche . . . sometimes  
     delle volte at times  
 voltare turn over  
 vulcano volcano  
 vuoto empty

Z

zero zero  
 zia aunt  
 zio uncle  
 zonzò, andare a to wander about  
 zuccheriera sugar bowl  
 zucchero sugar

# English-Italian Dictionary

## A

- a, an uno, una, un  
able, to be potere, essere capace  
about circa  
above sopra, al disopra  
abroad all'estero  
absolutely assolutamente  
accept, to accettare  
accident accidente  
accompany, to accompagnare  
according, to secondo  
accustomed abituato  
ache dolore  
acquaintance conoscenza  
action azione  
add, to aggiungere  
address indirizzo  
admire, to ammirare  
advance, in in anticipo  
advice consiglio  
advise, to consigliare  
afraid, I am ho paura  
after dopo, poi  
afternoon pomeriggio  
again nuovamente  
against contro  
age età (of a person)  
agency agenzia  
agent agente *m.*, rappresentante *m.*  
agreeable gradevole, piacevole  
agriculture agricoltura  
ahead avanti  
air aria  
air mail posta aerea  
airplane aeroplano  
airport aeroporto  
alarm, to allarmare  
alike uguale, eguale, simile  
all tutto, tutti, tutte  
allow, to permettere  
all right va bene  
almost quasi  
alone solo  
already già  
also anche, pure  
although benchè, sebbene  
always sempre  
American americano  
among fra, tra  
amount ammontare *n. (m.) & v.*  
amusement divertimento  
amusing divertente  
ancient antico  
and e, ed  
angry adirato, stizzito, arrabbiato,  
in collera  
animal animale *m.*  
announce, to annunziare  
answer, to rispondere  
answer riscontro, risposta  
anxious ansioso  
any alcuno  
anyone chiunque, ognuno  
anywhere dovunque, ovunque  
apartment appartamento  
appear, to apparire  
appetite appetito  
appetizer antipasto  
apple mela  
appointment appuntamento  
appreciate, apprezzare  
approach, to avvicinarsi  
approve, to approvare  
April aprile *m.*  
arm braccio (*pl.* le braccia)

armchair poltrona  
 arrival arrivo  
 arrive, to arrivare  
 art arte *f.*  
 article articolo  
 artist artista *m. & f.*  
 as come  
 ask, to chiedere, domandare  
 asleep, to fall addormentarsi  
 assure, to assicurare, accertare  
 at a  
 at all affatto  
 at once subito  
 attend, to assistere  
 attraction attrazione *f.*  
 attractive attraente  
 August agosto  
 aunt zia  
 authentic autentico  
 author autore *m.*  
 authority autorità  
 automobile automobile *f.*  
 autumn autunno  
 avenue via  
 aviation aviazione *f.*  
 avoid, to evitare  
 away via  
 awaken, to svegliarsi

**B**

bad cattivo *m.*  
 not . . . non c'è male  
 badly malamente  
 baggage bagaglio  
 bank banca  
 basket cesta, paniero  
 bath bagno  
 bathe, to fare il bagno  
 bathroom bagno, stanza da bagno  
 bathtub vasca  
 battle battaglia  
 be, to essere, trovarsi, stare  
 beach spiaggia  
 beat battere  
 beautiful bel, bella, bello  
 beauty bellezza  
 because perchè  
 become, to diventare  
 bed letto  
 bedroom camera da letto  
 bed sheet lenzuolo (*pl.* le lenzuola)

beef bue *m.*  
 before prima  
 begin, to cominciare, incominciare  
 behind dietro, indietro  
 Belgium Belgio  
 believe, to credere  
 bell campanello  
 below sotto, al disotto  
 belt cintura  
 beneath sotto  
 beside accanto, oltre  
 bet, to scommettere  
 better migliore *adj.*; meglio *adv.*  
 to get . . . migliorare  
 between tra, fra  
 bicycle bicicletta  
 big grande  
 bill conto  
 bird uccello  
 birth nascita  
 bite morso  
 bitter amaro  
 black nero  
 blanket coperta  
 bless, to benedire  
 blond biondo  
 blood sangue *m.*  
 blouse camicetta  
 blue azzurro, celeste  
 boarding house pensione *f.*  
 boat barca  
 body corpo  
 boil, to bollire  
 book libro  
 born, to be nascere  
 both ambedue, tutti e due  
 bottle bottiglia  
 box scatola  
 boy ragazzo, fanciullo  
 brassiere reggipetto  
 Brazil Brasile *m.*  
 bread pane *m.*  
 break, to rompere  
 breakfast colazione *f.*  
 to have . . . fare colazione  
 bride sposa  
 bridge ponte *m.*  
 brief breve  
 bright luminoso  
 brilliant brillante  
 bring, to portare  
 broad largo



brother fratello  
 brother-in-law cognato  
 brown bruno,-a, marrone  
 brunette brunetta  
 brush spazzola  
 brush, to spazzolare  
 build, to costruire  
 building palazzo, edificio, stabile *m.*  
 to burn ardere, bruciare  
 bus autobus  
 business affari  
   to do . . . fare affari  
 busy occupato  
 but ma, però  
 butcher shop macelleria  
 butter burro  
 button bottone *m.*  
 buy, to comprare  
 by per  
 by means of mediante, per mezzo di  
 by chance per caso

## C

cabin cabina  
 cake torta  
 calendar calendario  
 call, to chiamare  
 called, to be (name) chiamarsi  
 camera macchina fotografica  
 Canada Canada *m.*  
 cap berretto  
 captain capitano  
 car (railroad) carrozza, vagone  
   (automobile) macchina,  
   automobile  
 card biglietto visita,  
   carta da gioco  
 career carriera  
 carry, to portare, trasportare  
 cash, to riscuotere  
 cashier cassiere  
 cat gatto  
 catch, to pigliare, prendere  
 cathedral cattedrale *f.*  
 catholic cattolico, cattolici *m.pl.*,  
   cattoliche *f.pl.*  
 celebrate, to celebrare  
 cemetery cimitero  
 cent centesimo, soldo

center centro  
 centigrade centigrado  
 central centrale  
 century secolo  
 cereal cereale  
 certain certo, sicuro  
 certainly certamente  
 chair sedia  
 change (money) spiccioli *m. pl.*  
 charm fascino  
 charming simpatico  
 chauffeur autista *m.*  
 cheap a buon mercato  
 check (bill) conto  
   (money) assegno  
 check room (for baggage) deposito  
   (di) bagagli  
 cheerfully allegramente  
 cheese formaggio  
 chestnut castagna  
 chicken pollo  
 child bambino,-a  
 childhood infanzia  
 chocolate cioccolata  
 choose, to scegliere  
 Christmas Natale *m.*  
 church chiesa  
 cigar sigaro  
 cigarette sigaretta  
 city città  
 city hall municipio  
 civilization civiltà  
 class classe *f.*  
 clean to, pulire  
 climate clima *m.*  
 climb salire  
 close, to chiudere  
 closet armadio  
 cloth tessuto, stoffa  
 clothing vestiario  
 cloud nuvola  
 cloudy nuvoloso  
 coal carbone *m.*  
 coast costa  
 coat giacca  
 coffee caffè *m.*  
 collapse, to crollare  
 cold freddo *n. & adj.*  
   (illness) raffreddore *m.*  
 collar colletto

**collection** raccolta  
**color** colore *m.*  
**comb** pettine *m.*  
**come, to** venire  
**come in, to** entrare  
**come in!** favoriscia!  
**comfort** conforto  
**comfortable** comodo  
     to make oneself . . . accomodarsi  
**commerce** commercio  
**commercial** commerciale  
**company** compagnia  
**complain, to** lagnarsi  
**complete** completo  
**completely** completamente  
**concert** concerto  
**condition** condizione *f.*  
**confess, to** confessare  
**consist of, to** consistere di  
**construct, to** costruire  
**contrary** contrario, opposto  
     on the . . . al contrario  
**conversation** conversazione *f.*  
**convince, to** convincere  
**cook, to** cucinare, cuocere  
**cooked** cotto  
**cool** fresco  
**copy** copia  
**corner** angolo  
**correspondence** corrispondenza  
**cost, to** costare  
**cotton** cotone *m.*  
**count, to** contare  
**country** paese *m.*, campagna  
**couple** paio, coppia  
**courage** coraggio  
**course (of a dinner)** pietanza  
**course, of** si figuri, beninteso,  
     s'intende  
**courtesy** cortesia  
**cousin** cugino, -a  
**cover, to** coprire  
**cream** crema  
**credit** credito  
**cry, to** gridare (shout), piangere  
     (weep)  
**cuff (of a shirt)** polsino  
**cup** tazza  
**curtain** tendina  
**custom** usanza, costume *m.*

**customs** dogana  
     . . . inspection controllo della  
     dogana  
     . . . officer doganiere *m.*  
**cut, to** tagliare  
**Czechoslovakia** Ceco-slovacchia

## D

**daily** quotidiano  
**damage** guasto  
**damp** umido  
**dance** ballo  
     to . . . ballare  
**danger** pericolo  
**dangerous** pericoloso  
**dark** scuro, buio  
**darkness** oscurità  
**date** appuntamento, data, dattero  
**daughter** figlia  
**dawn** alba  
**day** giorno, giornata  
**dear** caro  
**December** dicembre *m.*  
**decide, to** decidere  
**decision** decisione  
**declare, to** dichiarare  
**deep** cupo, profondo  
**degree** grado  
**delicious** delizioso, squisito  
**deliver, to** consegnare  
**demand, to** domandare  
**dentist** dentista *m. & f.*  
**deny, to** negare  
**depart, to** partire  
**departure** partenza  
**deposit, to** depositare  
**descend, to** scendere, andar giù  
**describe, to** descrivere  
**description** descrizione *f.*  
**deserve, to** meritare  
**desire, to** desiderare  
**desk** scrittoio, scrivania  
**dessert** dolce *m.*  
**diamond** diamante *m.*  
**dictionary** dizionario  
**difference** differenza  
**different** differente, diverso  
**difficult** difficile  
**difficulty** difficoltà  
**dine, to** pranzare

dining room sala da pranzo  
 dinner pranzo  
 direction indirizzo, direzione *f.*  
 directly direttamente  
 dirty sporco, sudicio  
 disappear, to sparire  
 discover, to scoprire  
 discuss, to discutere  
 dish piatto  
 distance distanza  
 distant distante  
 disturb, to disturbare  
 divide, to dividere  
 do, to fare  
 doctor dottore *m.*, medico  
 dog cane *m.*  
 dollar dollaro  
 donkey asino  
 door porta  
 doorbell campanello  
 double doppio  
 doubt dubbio  
     to . . . dubitare  
 dozen dozzina  
 draft corrente d'aria; (commercial)  
     tratta  
 dream sogno  
 dream, to sognare  
 dress veste *f.*  
 dressmaker sarta  
 dress (oneself), to vestirsi  
 drink, to bere  
 drive, to guidare  
 driver autista *m.*  
 drugstore farmacia  
 dry secco  
 during durante  
 dwell abitare

## E

each ogni  
 eager ansioso  
 ear orecchio  
 early di buon'ora, presto  
 earth terra  
 Easter Pasqua  
 easy facile  
 eat, to mangiare  
 egg uovo, *pl.* le uova  
 eight otto

eighteen diciotto  
 eighty ottanta  
 electric elettrico  
 electricity elettricità  
 elegant elegante  
 elevator ascensore *m.*  
 eleven undici  
 embark, to imbarcarsi  
 embrace, to abbracciare  
 embroidery ricamo  
 empty vuoto  
 enchanting incantevole  
 enemy nemico, nemici *pl.*  
 engineer ingegnere *m.*  
 England Inghilterra  
 English Inglese *m.&f.*  
 enough abbastanza  
 enter, to entrare  
 enthusiasm entusiasmo  
 enthusiastic entusiasta  
 entire intero  
 envelope busta  
 epoch epoca  
 equal eguale  
 error sbaglio, errore *m.*  
 escape, to fuggire, scappare  
     especially in ispecial modo,  
     specialmente  
 essential essenziale  
 establish, to stabilire  
 eternal eterno  
 even pari  
 evening sera, serata  
 event evento  
 every ogni  
 everyone ognuno  
 everything tutto  
 everywhere dappertutto, dovunque,  
     ovunque  
 exact esatto  
 exactly propriamente, precisamente,  
     esattamente  
 exaggerate esagerare  
 examine, to esaminare  
 example esempio  
 excellent eccellente, ottimo  
 except eccetto  
 excuse me! scusi!  
 excuse, to scusare  
 exist, to esistere  
 exit uscita  
 expensive caro

explain, to spiegare  
 export, to esportare  
 expression espressione *f.*  
 extinguish, to spegnere

## F

fabric tessuto  
 face faccia  
 factory fabbrica  
 faithful fedele  
 fall caduta  
 family famiglia  
 famous famoso  
 far lontano, distante  
   as ... as fino a  
 farm podere *m.*  
 farmer contadino, agricoltore *m.*  
 fashion moda  
 fast veloce  
 fat grasso  
 father padre *m.*  
 favorable favorevole  
 fear paura  
 February febbraio  
 feel sentire  
 festival festa  
 fever febbre *f.*  
 field campo  
 fifth quinto  
 fifteen quindici  
 fifty cinquanta  
 fill, to riempire  
 film film *m.*, pellicola  
 finally finalmente  
 find, to trovare  
 finger dito (*pl.* le dita)  
 finish, to finire  
 first primo  
 first class prima classe  
 fish pesce *m.*  
 fish, to pescare  
 five cinque  
 flame fiamma  
 floor (of a house) piano  
 flower fiore *m.*  
 fly, to volare  
 fog nebbia  
 follow, to seguire  
 food cibo

foot piede *m.*  
 footwear calzature *f. pl.*  
 for per  
 foreign estero  
 foreigner straniero, forestiero  
 forget, to dimenticare  
 forgive, to perdonare  
 fork forchetta  
 fortunate fortunato  
 forty quaranta  
 forward avanti  
 fountain fontana  
 four quattro  
 fourteen quattordici  
 fourth quarto  
 France Francia  
 free gratis, libero  
 freeze, to congelare  
 French francese *m. & f.*  
 frequently frequentemente  
 fresh fresco  
 Friday venerdì *m.*  
 fried fritto  
 friend amico  
 friendship amicizia  
 frightened, to be spaventarsi  
 from da  
 front, in davanti  
 frost gelo  
 fruit la frutta (at the table), frutto  
 fry, to friggere  
 funny comico, buffo  
 furnish, to arredare  
 furnished ammobiliato, arredato  
 furniture mobilia  
   piece of ... mobile *m.*

## G

game partita  
 garage rimessa, autorimessa, garage  
 garden giardino  
 gas gas *m.*  
 gather, to radunarsi, riunirsi  
 gentleman signore *m.*  
 German tedesco, tedeschi *pl.*  
 get up, to alzarsi  
 girdle panciera  
 girl ragazza, fanciulla  
 give, to dare, porgere  
 glad lieto, contento

glass bicchiere *m.*, vetro  
 glove guanto  
 go, to andare  
 go up, to salire  
 God Dio  
 gold oro  
 good buono  
 goodbye addio  
 granddaughter nipote *f.*  
 grandfather nonno  
 grandmother nonna  
 grandson nipote *m.*  
 grapefruit pompelmo  
 grape uva  
 grateful grato, riconoscente  
 grave grave  
 gray grigio  
 Greece Grecia  
 green verde  
 greet, to salutare  
 greeting saluto  
 group gruppo  
 grow, to crescere  
 guess, to indovinare  
 guest invitato  
 guide guida

## H

hair capello, *pl.* capelli; pelo  
 half metà, mezzo  
 hall sala  
 ham (Italian) prosciutto  
 hammer martello  
 hand mano *f.*, lancetta (of a watch  
 or clock)  
 handbag borsetta  
 handkerchief fazzoletto  
 happiness felicità  
 happy felice  
 hard duro  
 hat cappello  
 hate, to odiare  
 have, to avere  
 have to, to dovere  
 he egli  
 head testa, capo  
 health salute *f.*  
 hear, to udire  
 heart cuore *m.*  
 heat riscaldamento, calore *m.*

heavy pesante  
 heel tacco (*pl.* tacchi)  
 help aiuto  
 her, hers il suo, la sua, i suoi, le sue  
 here qui, qua  
 here is ecco, c'è  
 high alto  
 hill colle *m.*, collina  
 his, il suo, la sua, i suoi, le sue  
 history storia  
 hold, to tenere  
 holiday festa  
 Holland Olanda  
 holy santo  
 homeland patria  
 honest onesto  
 honey miele *m.*  
 honeymoon luna di miele  
 honeymoon trip viaggio di nozze  
 honor onore *m.*  
 hope speranza  
 hope, to sperare  
 horn (of a car) tromba  
 horse cavallo  
 hospital ospedale *m.*  
 hospitality ospitalità  
 hot caldo  
 hotel albergo  
 hour ora  
 house casa, stabile *m.*  
 how come, quanto  
 how much? quanto?  
 however però, ma, tuttavia  
 humidity umidità  
 hundred cento  
 hunger fame *f.*  
 hungry, to be avere appetito, avere  
 fame  
 hurry fretta  
 husband marito

## I

I io  
 ice ghiaccio  
 ice cream gelato  
 idea idea  
 if se  
 ignorance ignoranza  
 ignorant ignorante  
 ill malato, ammalato  
 I am . . . sto male

**imagine, to** immaginare  
**immediately** immediatamente  
**import, to** importare  
**important** importante  
**impression** impressione *f.*  
**impossible** impossibile  
**impossibility** impossibilità  
**in in**  
**inasmuch as** siccome, poichè,  
 dato che  
**include, to** includere  
**incorrect, scorretto, sbagliato**  
**indeed in** verità  
**indicate, to** indicare  
**industrial** industriale  
**industry** industria  
**inexpensive a** buon mercato  
**inform, to** informare  
**inhabitant** abitante *m.*  
**ink** inchiostro  
**inside** dentro  
**instead** invece  
**insure, to** assicurare  
**intelligent** intelligente  
**interesting** interessante  
**interrupt, to** interrompere  
**intimate** intimo  
**introduce, to** presentare  
**introduction** introduzione *f.*  
**invite, to** invitare  
**island** isola  
**Italian** italiano  
**Italy** Italia  
**itinerary** itinerario

## J

**jacket** giacca  
**jam** marmellata  
**January** gennaio  
**jealous** geloso  
**Jewish** ebreo  
**joke, to** scherzare  
**joy** gioia  
**July** luglio  
**jump, to** saltare  
**June** giugno

## K

**keep, to** tenere, conservare,  
 mantenere

**key** chiave *f.*  
**kilogram** chilo, chilogrammo  
**kilometer** chilometro  
**kind** buono, gentile *adj.*  
**kind** specie *f.*  
**kindness** bontà, gentilezza  
**king** re *m.*  
**kiss** bacio  
**kitchen** cucina  
**knife** coltello  
**knock, to** battere, bussare  
**know, to** conoscere, sapere  
**knowledge** sapienza, conoscenza

## L

**lady** signora  
**lake** lago  
**lamb** agnello  
**lamp** lampada  
**lamp bulb** lampadina  
**language** lingua  
**large** largo, grande, vasto  
**last** ultimo  
**last, to** durare  
**last week** la settimana scorsa  
**late** tardi  
**later** più tardi  
**laugh, to** ridere  
**laughter** riso, ilarità  
**laundry** lavanderia  
**lavatory** gabinetto  
**law** legge *f.*  
**Leaning Tower** Torre Pendente *f.*  
**learn, to** imparare  
**least, at** almeno  
**leather** pelle *f.*, cuoio  
**leave, to** lasciare (permit), partire  
 (depart)  
**left** sinistra  
**leg** gamba  
**legal** legale  
**lemon** limone *m.*  
**lend, to** prestare  
**less** meno  
**lesson** lezione *f.*  
**let, to** lasciare, permettere  
**letter** lettera  
**lettuce** lattuga  
**library** biblioteca

lie bugia  
 lie, to mentire, dire bugie  
 life vita  
 lift, to alzare  
 light, to accendere  
 lightning lampo  
 like, to piacere  
 line fila, linea  
 linen lino  
 linens biancheria  
 lion leone *m.*  
 list lista  
 literature letteratura  
 little poco, piccolo  
 live, to abitare, vivere  
 living room salotto  
 load, to caricare  
 located, to be trovarsi  
 lodging alloggio  
 logical logico  
 London Londra  
 loud forte, ad alta voce  
 longing nostalgia  
 look for, to cercare  
 lose, to perdere  
 loud forte, alto  
 love amore  
 love, to amare  
 lover amante  
 low basso  
 luck fortuna  
 lunch colazione *f.*  
 lunch, to have fare colazione  
 luxury lusso

## M

machine macchina  
 madam signora  
 magnificent magnifico  
 mahogany mogano  
 maid domestica  
 mail posta  
 mailbox buca delle lettere  
 major maggiore  
 majordomo maggiordomo  
 make, to fare  
 man uomo (*pl.*, uomini)  
 manage, to dirigere, amministrare  
 manager dirigente *m.*  
 amministratore *m.*

manner modo, maniera  
 many tanti, e  
 map pianta, carta geografica  
 marble marmo  
 March marzo  
 market mercato  
 marry, to sposare  
 marvel meraviglia  
 marvelous meraviglioso  
 marvelously meravigliosamente  
 Mass Messa  
 mathematician matematico  
 material stoffa, materiale *m.*  
 mattress materasso  
 maximum massimo  
 May maggio  
 maybe forse  
 mayor sindaco  
 me me  
 meal pasto  
 meaning significato  
 means mezzo  
 meantime, in the nel frattempo  
 meanwhile intanto  
 measure misura  
 measurement misura  
 meat carne *f.*  
 medicine medicina  
 medieval medioevale  
 meet, to incontrare, riunirsi  
 melodious melodioso  
 menu lista della vivande  
 merchandise merce *f.*  
 merchant commerciante *m.*  
 message messaggio  
 meter metro  
 microscope microscopio  
 midday mezzogiorno  
 middle mezzo  
 Middle Ages medio evo  
 midnight mezzanotte *f.*  
 mild mite  
 milk latte *m.*  
 million milione *m.*  
 mine il mio, la mia, i miei, le mie  
 minute minuto (*n. & adj.*)  
 mirror specchio  
 Miss signorina  
 mistake sbaglio, errore *m.*  
 mistaken, to be sbagliarsi  
 mister signor  
 mix, to mischiare, mescolare

**model** modello  
**moderate** moderato  
**moderation** moderazione *f.*  
**modern** moderno  
**modest** modesto  
**Monday** lunedì *m.*  
**money** denaro, danaro  
**month** mese *m.*  
**monthly** mensilmente  
**monument** monumento  
**moon** luna  
**moor** moro  
**more** più  
**morning** mattina  
**most** la maggior parte  
**mother** madre, mamma  
**motion picture, motion picture**  
 theatre cinema *m.*  
**motor** motore *m.*  
**motorcycle** motocicletta  
**mountain** montagna, monte *m.*  
**movable** mobile  
**move, to** muovere  
**movement (of a watch)** meccanismo  
**movie** camera macchina  
 cinematografica  
**Mrs.** signora  
**much** molto  
**mud** fango  
**museum** museo  
**music** musica  
**musician** musicista *m. & f.*  
**must** dovere  
**mutton** castrato  
**my** il mio, la mia, i miei, le mie  
**myself** me

**N**

**name** nome *m.*  
**napkin** tovagliolo  
**narrow** stretto  
**nation** nazione *f.*  
**national** nazionale  
**nationality** nazionalità *f.*  
**natural** naturale  
**naturally** naturalmente  
**navy** marina  
**near** vicino  
**necessary** necessario  
 it is . . . è necessario, bisogna che  
**necessity** bisogno, necessità

**neck** collo  
**necktie** cravatta  
**need** bisogno  
**needle** ago  
**neighbor** vicino  
**neither . . . nor** nè . . . nè  
**nephew** nipote *m.*  
**never** mai, non . . . (*verb*) . . . mai  
**nevertheless** tuttavia, eppure  
**new** nuovo  
**newlyweds** sposini, novelli sposi  
**newspaper** giornale *m.*  
**next** prossimo, venturo  
 . . . week la settimana prossima  
**niece** nipote  
**night** notte *f.*  
**nine** nove  
**nineteen** diciannove  
**ninety** novanta  
**no** no  
**nobody** nessuno  
**noon** mezzogiorno  
**no one** nessuno  
**north** nord *n.*, settentrionale *adj.*  
**note** nota  
**notebook** quaderno  
**nothing** niente, nulla  
**notice, to** notare  
**November** novembre *m.*  
**now** adesso, ora  
**number** numero  
**nut** noce (tree *m.*, fruit *f.*)  
**nylon** nylon

**O**

**object** oggetto  
**occasione** occasione *f.*  
**occupy, to** occupare  
**occur, to** accadere, avvenire,  
 capitare  
**October** ottobre *m.*  
**of** di  
**offer, to** offrire  
**office** sede *f.* ufficio  
 main . . . sede centrale  
 branch . . . succursale *f.*  
**often** spesso  
**oil** olio  
**old** vecchio  
**olive** oliva  
**on** sopra, su



once una volta  
 one uno, a  
 only solo, soltanto, solamente  
 open, to aprire  
 opinion opinione *f.*  
 opposite contrario, opposto  
 or oppure, o  
 orange arancia (*pl.* arance)  
 other altro  
 otherwise oppure, altrimenti  
 our, ours nostro, nostra, nostri,  
 nostre  
 ourselves noi stessi  
 out of order guasto  
 over sopra  
 overcoat soprabito  
 overshoes soprascarpe, calosce,  
 galosce  
 owe, to dovere  
 own proprio  
 ox bue *m.*

## P

package pacco  
 pain dolore *m.*, pena  
 paint pittura  
 paint, to dipingere, pitturare  
 painting pittura, quadro  
 pair paio (*pl.*, le paia)  
 palace palazzo  
 paper carta  
 parent genitore *m.*  
 Paris Parigi *f.*  
 park parco  
 part parte *f.*  
 pass, to passare  
 passport passaporto  
 pastime passatempo  
 path cammino  
 pattern modello  
 pay, to pagare  
 payment pagamento  
 peace pace *f.*  
 peasant contadino  
 pen penna  
 fountain . . . penna stilografica  
 pencil matita, lapis *m.*  
 penicillin penicillina  
 people popolo, gente *f.*  
 pepper pepe *m.*

per cent per cento  
 perfect perfetto  
 perfectly perfettamente  
 performance rappresentazione *f.*  
 perfume profumo  
 perhaps chissà, forse  
 period periodo  
 person persona  
 personal personale  
 perspire, to sudare  
 perspiration sudore *m.*  
 petticoat sottana  
 phonograph fonografo  
 photograph fotografia  
 physician medico  
 picture quadro, fotografia  
 piece pezzo  
 pillow cuscino  
 pineapple ananasso  
 pitcher caraffa  
 place luogo, posto  
 plane, by in aereo  
 plant pianta  
 plate piatto  
 play, to giocare  
 play, to (an instrument) suonare  
 pleasant piacevole  
 please per piacere  
 pocket tasca  
 point punto  
 point, to indicare  
 Poland Polonia  
 police polizia  
 policeman agente *m.*  
 poor povero  
 Pope Papa *m.*  
 popular popolare  
 pork maiale *m.*  
 port porto  
 possible possibile  
 post office ufficio postale, posta  
 potato patata  
 powder cipria, polvere  
 powerful potente  
 pray, to pregare  
 precise preciso  
 prefer, to preferire  
 prepare, to preparare  
 prescription ricetta  
 present attuale (now)  
 at . . . al momento

**present**, to presentare  
**preserve**, to conservare  
**pretty** grazioso, carino  
**price** prezzo  
**prince** principe *m.*  
**probably** probabilmente  
**proceed**, to procedere  
**profit** guadagno  
**promise** promessa  
**pronunciation** pronuncia,  
 pronunzia  
**protest** protesta  
**protest**, to protestare  
**public** pubblico  
**punctual** puntuale  
**purchase** acquisto, compra  
**purchase**, to acquistare, comprare  
**put**, to mettere  
**put on**, to mettersi, indossare

## Q

**quality** qualità  
**quarter** (of a city) contrada,  
 quartiere *m.*  
**queen** regina  
**question** domanda  
**quick** presto, subito  
**quickly** presto, subito

## R

**race** corsa  
**radio** radio *f.*  
**railroad** ferrovia  
**rain** pioggia  
**rain**, to piovare  
**raincoat** impermeabile *m.*  
**raise**, to alzare  
**rapid** rapido  
**rare** raro  
**rare** (meat) al sangue  
**rate** rata  
**rather** alquanto, piuttosto  
**raw** crudo  
**rayon** rayon  
**razor** rasoio  
**razor blade** lametta  
**ready** pronto  
**real** proprio, vero

**really** proprio, propriamente,  
 veramente, davvero  
**reason** ragione *f.*  
**reasonable** moderato, ragionevole  
**receipt** ricevuta  
**receive**, to ricevere, accogliere  
**recent** recente  
**recently** recentemente  
**red** rosso  
**refrigerator** frigorifero  
**refuse**, to rifiutare  
**region** regione *f.*  
**regret**, to pentirsi  
**relative** parente *m. & f.*  
**religion** religione *f.*  
**religious** religioso  
**remain**, to rimanere, trattenersi,  
 restare  
**remainder** resto  
**remember**, to ricordare,  
 rammentare  
**remind**, to ricordare, rammentare  
**Renaissance** Rinascimento  
**rent** pigione *f.*  
**rent**, to prendere in affitto,  
 prendere in noleggio  
**repair**, to riparare  
**repeat**, to ripetere  
**replace**, to sostituire  
**representative** rappresentante *m.*  
**republic** repubblica  
**reserve**, to prenotare  
**reservation** prenotazione *f.*  
**rest**, to riposarsi  
**restaurant** ristorante *m.*  
**retail** al minuto  
**return**, to ritornare  
**ribbon** nastro  
**rice** riso  
**rich** ricco  
**right**, to the a destra  
**ring**, to (the hour) suonare  
**rise**, to sorgere, alzarsi  
**river** fiume *m.*  
**road** strada  
**roast** arrosto  
**roast beef** arrosto di bue  
**rob**, to rubare  
**roll** rullino (film); rullo panino  
 (bread)  
**room** camera, stanza, vano (empty),  
 sala

rose rosa  
 round rotondo  
 round trip andata e ritorno  
 row fila  
 rubbers calosce, galosce, soprascarpe  
 rug tappeto  
 ruins rovine, ruderi  
 rule, to governare  
 Rumania Rumenia  
 run, to correre  
 Russia Russia  
 Russian russo

## S

sacrifice sacrificio  
 sail imbarcarsi  
 saint santo  
 salad insalata  
 salt sale *m.*  
 salty salato  
 same stesso  
 satisfy, to soddisfare  
 Saturday sabato  
 sauce salsa  
 saucer piattino  
 save, to risparmiare  
 say, to dire  
 scene scena  
 school scuola  
 science scienza  
 scientist scienziato  
 scissors forbici *f.pl.*  
 scream grido  
 sea mare *m.*  
 seashore lido  
 season stagione *f.*  
 seasoning condimento  
 seat sedile *m.*  
 second secondo  
 section (of a city) quartiere *m.*  
   contrada  
 see, to vedere  
 seek, to cercare  
 seem, to sembrare  
 sell, to vendere  
 send, to spedire, mandare, inviare  
 September settembre *m.*  
 serious grave  
 serve, to servire  
 set, to apparecchiare

seven sette  
 seventeen diciassette  
 seventh settimo  
 seventy settanta  
 several diversi, diverse *f.*  
 sew, to cucire  
 sewing machine macchina da  
   cucire  
 shade ombra  
 shadow ombra  
 sharp piccante  
 shave, to radere, farsi la barba  
 she ella, essa  
 ship piroscafo, vapore *m.*, nave *f.*  
 shirt camicia (*pl.* camicie)  
 shoe scarpa  
 shop bottega (*pl.* botteghe)  
 short breve, corto, basso  
 shorts mutande *f. pl.*  
 show, to mostrare, dimostrare,  
   far vedere  
 shower doccia, acquazzone  
   (rain) *m.*  
 shoulder spalla  
 shout, to gridare  
 sick ammalato  
   I feel . . . sto male  
   to get . . . ammalarsi  
 side lato, parte *f.*  
 sidewalk marciapiede *m.*  
 sign segno, cartello  
 silence silenzio  
 silver argento  
 silk seta  
 similar simile  
 simple semplice  
 simply semplicemente  
 since siccome, poichè, giacchè  
 sing, to cantare  
 single solo, unico  
 sister sorella  
 sister-in-law cognata  
 sit, to sedersi  
 six sei  
 sixteen sedici  
 sixth sesto  
 sixty sessanta  
 size misura, numero  
 skin pelle *f.*  
 skirt gonnella

sleep, to dormire  
 to go to . . . addormentarsi  
 sleeve manica (*pl.* maniche)  
 slip sottana  
 slip, to scivolare  
 slow lento  
 small piccolo  
 smell, to odorare  
 smile, to sorridere  
 smoke, to fumare  
 smooth liscio  
 sneeze, to starnutire, starnutare  
 snow neve *f.*  
 so così (therefore, thus)  
 . . . much tanto  
 soap sapone *m.*  
 sock calzino  
 sofa divano  
 soldier soldato, milite *m.*  
 some alcuni, e  
 some un po', un po' di  
 somebody qualcuno  
 someone qualcuno  
 sometimes qualche volta  
 something qualche cosa  
 somewhat alquanto  
 son figlio  
 song canzone *f.*  
 soon presto  
 as . . . as appena  
 soup brodo, zuppa  
 south sud *n.*, meridionale *adj.*  
 souvenir ricordo  
 spaghetti spaghetti  
 Spain Spagna  
 Spaniard Spagnuolo  
 Spanish spagnuolo  
 speak, to parlare  
 special speciale  
 spend, to (time) passare,  
 (money) spendere  
 sponge spugna  
 spoon cucchiaino  
 spring molla, primavera  
 square piazza  
 stairs scale  
 stairway scala  
 stamp francobollo, bollo  
 stand up, to stare in piedi  
 state stato  
 start, to iniziare, incominciare  
 station stazione *f.*

stay permanenza  
 stay, to alloggiare, stare  
 steak bistecca  
 steal, to rubare  
 steamboat vapore *m.*  
 steward maggiordomo  
 still ancora  
 stocking calza  
 stomach stomaco  
 stone pietra, sasso  
 stop, to fermare  
 store negozio bottega  
 storm tempesta  
 story storia  
 story (of a house) piano, (tale) storia  
 straight diritto, dritto  
 strange strano  
 street via, strada  
 strike, to battere  
 strong forte  
 study studio  
 study, to studiare  
 stove stufa  
 student studente *m.*, studentessa *f.*  
 stupid stupido  
 style stile *m.*  
 sublime sublime  
 sudden repentino, improvviso  
 sugar zucchero  
 suit abito, vestito  
 suitcase valigia (*pl.* valigie)  
 summer estate *f.*, estivo *adj.*  
 sun sole *m.*  
 Sunday domenica  
 sunset tramonto  
 supper cena  
 supper, to have cenare  
 suppose, to supporre  
 sure sicuro  
 sweet dolce  
 swim, to nuotare  
 Swiss svizzero

T

table tavola  
 tablecloth tovaglia  
 tailor sarto  
 tailor shop sartoria  
 take, to prendere  
 . . . the measurement prendere  
 la misura

take off, to (aviation) decollare	ticket biglietto
tall alto	ticket window biglietteria
taste gusto	tight stretto
taste, to assaggiare, gustare	time ora, tempo
tax tassa	on . . . a tempo, in tempo
taxi tassì <i>m.</i>	timetable orario
teach, to insegnare	tip mancia, punta
teacher maestro	tired stanco
tear lagrima	to a
tear, to lacerare, stracciare	tobacco tabacco
teaspoon cucchiaino	today oggi
telegraph to, telegrafare	together insieme, assieme
telegram telegramma <i>m.</i>	toilet gabinetto
telephone telefono	tomato pomodoro
telephone, to telefonare	tomb tomba
television televisione <i>f.</i>	tomorrow domani
tell, to dire, narrare	tongue lingua
temperature temperatura	tonight stasera
ten dieci	too anche, pure
tenth decimo	too much troppo
than che, di	tooth dente <i>m.</i>
thank, to ringraziare	toothbrush spazzolino
thank you grazie	toothpaste dentrificio
that che <i>conj.</i> , quello <i>pro. &amp; adj.</i>	top cima
the il, lo, la, i, gli, le	total totale
theater teatro	touch, to toccare
them loro, essi, esse, li, le	tough duro
then poi, allora	tourist turista <i>m.</i>
there là, ci, vi	towel asciugamano
there are ci sono, ecco	trade commercio
there is c'è, ecco	traffic traffico
therefore quindi, perciò, dunque	train treno
thermometer termometro	translate, to tradurre
they loro, essi, esse	transport, to trasportare
thin sottile, magro	transportation trasporto
think, to pensare	travel, to viaggiare
third terzo	traveler viaggiatore
thirteen tredici	tree albero
thirst sete <i>f.</i>	trip viaggio, gita
thirty trenta	trousers calzoni <i>m.pl.</i>
this questo	truck autocarro, camion
thought pensiero	true vero
thousand ( <i>pl.</i> mila)	trunk baule <i>m.</i>
thousands migliaia	truth verità
thread filo	try, to provare
threaten, to minacciare	try on, to provare
three tre	Tuesday martedì
throw, to lanciare, gettare, buttare	Turkey Turchia
thunder tuono	turn off the light, to spegnere la
Thursday giovedì	luce
thus così	turn over, to voltare
	typewriter macchina da scrivere

typewrite, to scrivere a macchina  
 twelve dodici  
 twenty venti  
 two due

## U

ugly brutto  
 umbrella ombrello, parapigioggia *m.*  
 uncle zio  
 under sotto  
 understand, to capire  
 underwear biancheria intima,  
 mutande  
 undoubtedly indubbiamente  
 undress, to svestirsi, spogliarsi  
 unfortunately purtroppo  
 united unito  
 United States Stati Uniti *m. pl.*  
 university università  
 unless a meno che  
 until fino a  
 up, to go salire, andar su  
 upon sopra  
 urgent urgente  
 us ci  
 use uso  
 use, to usare  
 useful utile  
 useless inutile  
 usual solito  
 usually generalmente, di solito

## V

vacation vacanza  
 vain, in invano  
 valid valido  
 value valore *m.*  
 variety varietà  
 Vatican Vaticano  
 vegetables legumi *m. pl.*, verdura  
 vehicle veicolo  
 very molto  
 vest panciotto  
 victory vittoria  
 view veduta, panorama *m.*  
 visit visita  
 visit, to visitare  
 voice voce *f.*  
 voyage viaggio

## W

waist cintura, vita  
 waistline vita  
 wait, to aspettare  
 waiter cameriere *m.*  
 waiting room sala d'aspetto  
 wake up, to svegliarsi  
 walk passeggiata, passeggio  
 walk, to passeggiare, camminare  
 wall muro  
 want, to volere  
 war guerra  
 warm caldo  
 warn, to avvertire  
 wash, to lavare  
 wash oneself, to lavarsi  
 wash basin lavabo  
 waste, to sprecare  
 watch orologio  
 watchmaker orologiaio  
 water acqua  
 wave onda  
 way, this da questa parte  
 we noi  
 wealth ricchezza  
 weather tempo  
 Wednesday mercoledì  
 week settimana  
 weigh, to pesare  
 weigh oneself, to pesarsi  
 weight peso  
 welcome! benvenuto!  
 welcome, to accogliere  
 well bene  
 west ovest *m.*, ponente *m.*  
 what che, ciò che (that which)  
 what? che cosa?  
 whatever qualunque cosa  
 wheat grano  
 wheel ruota  
 when quando  
 whenever qualora  
 where dove  
 . . . is? dov'è?  
 which che, quale  
 which? quale?  
 while mentre  
 white bianco  
 who che  
 who? chi  
 whoever chiunque

336 THE CORTINA METHOD

wholesale all'ingrosso  
 whom che, chi  
 why? perchè?  
 wide largo  
 wife sposa, moglie, signora  
 wind vento  
 wind, to caricare  
 window finestra  
 wine vino  
 winter inverno  
 wish desiderio, augurio  
 wish, to augurare, desiderare, volere  
 with con  
 within dentro  
 without senza  
 wolf lupo  
 woman donna  
 wonder meraviglia  
 wonderful meraviglioso, magnifico  
 wood legno  
 woods bosco  
 wool lana  
 word parola  
 work lavoro, opera  
 . . . of art opera d'arte  
 world mondo  
 of the . . . mondiale

worry preoccupazione *f.*  
 worse peggiore, *adj.* peggio *adv.*  
 wrap, to avvolgere  
 wrist polso  
 write, to scrivere  
 writer scrittore *m.*, scrittrice *f.*

Y Z

year anno  
 yellow giallo  
 yes sì  
 yesterday ieri  
 yet ancora  
 you tu, lei, voi, loro  
 young giovane  
 young lady signorina  
 your il suo, la sua, i suoi, le sue  
     (*pol. sing.*)  
     il loro, la loro, i loro, le loro  
     (*pol. pl.*)  
     il tuo, la tua, i tuoi, le tue  
     (*fam. sing.*)  
     il vostro, la vostra, i vostri,  
     le vostre (*fam. pl.*)  
 zero zero